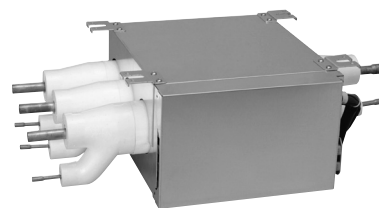


# Service Manual

## Multi-Split 8-Zone Heat Pump Systems RMXS-L Series



[Applied Models]

● Inverter Multi : Heat Pump



# Multi-Split 8-Zone Heat Pump Systems RMXS-L Series

## ●Heat Pump

### Outdoor Unit

RMXS48LVJU

### Branch Provider (BP) Unit

BPMKS048A2U

BPMKS049A3U

### Indoor Unit

CTXS07LVJU

CTXS07JVJU

CTXS09HVJU

CTXS12HVJU

FTXS15LVJU

FTXS18LVJU

FTXS24LVJU

FDXS09LVJU

FDXS12LVJU

CDXS15LVJU

CDXS18LVJU

CDXS24LVJU

FFQ09LVJU

FFQ12LVJU

FFQ15LVJU

FFQ18LVJU



The removal procedure for each model is separately bound. Refer to page 239 for the booklet number of applicable model.



**Safety Considerations ..... vii****Part 1 List of Functions ..... 1**

- 1. Functions.....2
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit..... 2
  - 1.2 Indoor Unit..... 3

**Part 2 Specifications ..... 5**

- 1. Specifications .....6
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit..... 6
  - 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 6
  - 1.3 Indoor Unit..... 7

**Part 3 Printed Circuit Board****Connector Wiring Diagram ..... 13**

- 1. Outdoor Unit..... 14
  - 1.1 RMXS48LVJU ..... 14
- 2. Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 17
  - 2.1 BPMKS048A2U, BPMKS049A3U ..... 17
- 3. Indoor Unit..... 18
  - 3.1 CTXS07LVJU ..... 18
  - 3.2 CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU ..... 20
  - 3.3 FTXS15/18/24LVJU ..... 22
  - 3.4 FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU ..... 24
  - 3.5 FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU ..... 26
- 4. Wired Remote Controller.....27
  - 4.1 BRC1E72 ..... 27
- 5. Wireless Remote Controller .....28
  - 5.1 BRC7E830 ..... 28

**Part 4 Refrigerant Circuit..... 30**

- 1. Refrigerant Circuit .....31
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit..... 31
  - 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 32
- 2. Functional Parts Layout ..... 33
- 3. Refrigerant Flow for Each Operation Mode..... 35
  - 3.1 Cooling Operation ..... 35
  - 3.2 Heating Operation ..... 36
  - 3.3 Cooling Oil Return Operation ..... 37
  - 3.4 Heating Oil Return Operation & Defrost Operation ..... 38



|                                                                       |           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Part 5 Function .....</b>                                          | <b>39</b> |
| 1. Operation Mode .....                                               | 41        |
| 2. Basic Control.....                                                 | 42        |
| 2.1 Normal Operation .....                                            | 42        |
| 2.2 Compressor PI Control.....                                        | 42        |
| 2.3 Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control.....                        | 43        |
| 2.4 Cooling Operation Fan Control.....                                | 44        |
| 3. Special Control.....                                               | 45        |
| 3.1 Startup Control .....                                             | 45        |
| 3.2 Oil Return Operation .....                                        | 46        |
| 3.3 Defrosting Operation .....                                        | 48        |
| 3.4 Pump-down Residual Operation .....                                | 48        |
| 3.5 Restart Standby.....                                              | 49        |
| 3.6 Stopping Operation .....                                          | 49        |
| 4. Protection Control .....                                           | 50        |
| 4.1 High Pressure Protection Control.....                             | 50        |
| 4.2 Low Pressure Protection Control.....                              | 51        |
| 4.3 Discharge Pipe Temperature Protection Control.....                | 52        |
| 4.4 Inverter Protection Control .....                                 | 53        |
| 4.5 Freeze-up Protection Control .....                                | 54        |
| 4.6 Dew Condensation Prevention Control .....                         | 55        |
| 5. Other Control.....                                                 | 56        |
| 5.1 Demand Control .....                                              | 56        |
| 5.2 Heating Operation Prohibition Control.....                        | 56        |
| 6. Branch Provider (BP) Unit Control .....                            | 57        |
| 6.1 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Command Conversion .....                | 57        |
| 6.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Electronic Expansion Valve Control..... | 58        |
| 6.3 SH Control in Cooling Operation .....                             | 60        |
| 6.4 SC Control in Heating Operation.....                              | 61        |
| 6.5 Heat Exchanger Isothermal Control in Heating Operation .....      | 61        |
| 7. Function of CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series.....                     | 62        |
| 7.1 Temperature Control .....                                         | 62        |
| 7.2 Airflow Direction Control (CTXS/FTXS Series Only) .....           | 63        |
| 7.3 Fan Speed Control for Indoor Unit .....                           | 65        |
| 7.4 Program Dry Operation .....                                       | 66        |
| 7.5 Automatic Operation.....                                          | 67        |
| 7.6 Thermostat Control.....                                           | 68        |
| 7.7 NIGHT SET Mode .....                                              | 69        |
| 7.8 ECONO Operation .....                                             | 69        |
| 7.9 HOME LEAVE Operation .....                                        | 70        |
| 7.10 INTELLIGENT EYE Operation .....                                  | 72        |
| 7.11 Inverter POWERFUL Operation .....                                | 73        |
| 7.12 Clock Setting .....                                              | 74        |
| 7.13 WEEKLY TIMER Operation .....                                     | 75        |
| 7.14 Other Functions.....                                             | 81        |
| 8. Function of FFQ Series .....                                       | 82        |
| 8.1 Drain Pump Control.....                                           | 82        |



|     |                                                     |    |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|----|
| 8.2 | Thermostat Sensor in Remote Controller .....        | 84 |
| 8.3 | Freeze Prevention Control .....                     | 86 |
| 8.4 | Hot Start Control (In Heating Operation Only) ..... | 86 |

## **Part 6 Test Operation and Field Settings ..... 87**

|     |                                                     |     |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1.  | Test Operation .....                                | 88  |
| 1.1 | Procedure and Outline .....                         | 88  |
| 1.2 | Operation when Power is Turned On .....             | 90  |
| 1.3 | Branch Provider (BP) Unit .....                     | 91  |
| 1.4 | RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series ..... | 93  |
| 1.5 | SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series .....                    | 94  |
| 2.  | Field Settings .....                                | 96  |
| 2.1 | Outdoor Unit .....                                  | 96  |
| 2.2 | RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series ..... | 110 |
| 2.3 | SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series .....                    | 113 |

## **Part 7 Remote Controller ..... 121**

|     |                                             |     |
|-----|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1.  | CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU .....             | 122 |
| 2.  | CTXS07LVJU, FTXS15/18/24LVJU .....          | 124 |
| 3.  | FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU .....       | 126 |
| 4.  | FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU .....                    | 128 |
| 4.1 | <BRC1E72> Wired Remote Controller .....     | 128 |
| 4.2 | <BRC7E830> Wireless Remote Controller ..... | 134 |

## **Part 8 Troubleshooting..... 136**

|     |                                                                |     |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1.  | Troubleshooting with LED .....                                 | 138 |
| 1.1 | Outdoor Unit .....                                             | 138 |
| 1.2 | Branch Provider (BP) Unit .....                                | 143 |
| 1.3 | Indoor Unit .....                                              | 144 |
| 2.  | Service Check Function .....                                   | 145 |
| 2.1 | CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....                            | 145 |
| 2.2 | FFQ Series .....                                               | 148 |
| 3.  | Error Codes and Description .....                              | 154 |
| 4.  | Troubleshooting for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....        | 156 |
| 4.1 | Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality .....                              | 156 |
| 4.2 | Freeze-up Protection Control or Heating Peak-cut Control ..... | 158 |
| 4.3 | Fan Motor or Related Abnormality .....                         | 160 |
| 4.4 | Thermistor or Related Abnormality .....                        | 164 |
| 4.5 | Check for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....                  | 165 |
| 5.  | Troubleshooting for FFQ Series .....                           | 167 |
| 5.1 | Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality .....                              | 167 |
| 5.2 | Drain Level Control System Abnormality .....                   | 168 |
| 5.3 | Fan Motor or Related Abnormality .....                         | 169 |
| 5.4 | Drain System Abnormality .....                                 | 170 |
| 5.5 | Thermistor or Related Abnormality .....                        | 171 |
| 5.6 | Remote Controller Thermistor Abnormality .....                 | 172 |



|      |                                                                                                  |     |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 5.7  | Signal Transmission Error between Remote Controller and Indoor Unit..                            | 173 |
| 5.8  | Signal Transmission Error between MAIN Remote Controller and<br>SUB Remote Controller.....       | 174 |
| 5.9  | Field Setting Abnormality .....                                                                  | 175 |
| 6.   | Troubleshooting for Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....                                               | 176 |
| 6.1  | Electronic Expansion Valve Abnormality .....                                                     | 176 |
| 6.2  | Branch Provider (BP) Unit PCB Abnormality.....                                                   | 177 |
| 6.3  | Branch Provider (BP) Liquid or Gas Pipe Thermistor Abnormality.....                              | 178 |
| 6.4  | Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and<br>Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....              | 179 |
| 6.5  | Transmission Error between Outdoor Unit and<br>Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....                    | 181 |
| 6.6  | Check for Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....                                                         | 182 |
| 7.   | Troubleshooting for Outdoor Unit.....                                                            | 183 |
| 7.1  | Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality.....                                                                | 183 |
| 7.2  | Actuation of High Pressure Switch .....                                                          | 184 |
| 7.3  | Actuation of Low Pressure Sensor .....                                                           | 186 |
| 7.4  | Compressor Motor Lock .....                                                                      | 188 |
| 7.5  | Outdoor Fan Motor Abnormality .....                                                              | 189 |
| 7.6  | Moving Part of Electronic Expansion Valve (Y1E, Y3E) Abnormality.....                            | 190 |
| 7.7  | Discharge Pipe Temperature Abnormality .....                                                     | 192 |
| 7.8  | Refrigerant Overcharged.....                                                                     | 193 |
| 7.9  | Outdoor Temperature Thermistor (R1T) Abnormality .....                                           | 194 |
| 7.10 | Discharge Pipe Thermistor (R2T) Abnormality.....                                                 | 195 |
| 7.11 | Suction Pipe Thermistor (R3T, R5T) Abnormality .....                                             | 196 |
| 7.12 | Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor (R4T) Abnormality .....                                        | 197 |
| 7.13 | Outdoor Liquid Pipe Thermistor (R7T) Abnormality .....                                           | 198 |
| 7.14 | Subcooling Heat Exchanger Gas Pipe Thermistor (R6T) Abnormality.....                             | 199 |
| 7.15 | High Pressure Sensor Abnormality .....                                                           | 200 |
| 7.16 | Low Pressure Sensor Abnormality .....                                                            | 201 |
| 7.17 | Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality.....                                                                | 202 |
| 7.18 | Radiation Fin Temperature Rise .....                                                             | 203 |
| 7.19 | Inverter Compressor Abnormality.....                                                             | 204 |
| 7.20 | Inverter Current Abnormality .....                                                               | 205 |
| 7.21 | Compressor Start-up Error .....                                                                  | 206 |
| 7.22 | High Voltage of Capacitor in Main Inverter Circuit .....                                         | 207 |
| 7.23 | Radiation Fin Thermistor Abnormality .....                                                       | 208 |
| 7.24 | Low Pressure Drop due to Refrigerant Shortage or Electronic Expansion<br>Valve Abnormality ..... | 209 |
| 7.25 | Power Supply Insufficient or Instantaneous Failure .....                                         | 211 |
| 7.26 | Check Operation is not Conducted .....                                                           | 212 |
| 7.27 | Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit in the Same<br>System .....       | 213 |
| 7.28 | Excessive Number of Indoor Units .....                                                           | 214 |
| 7.29 | Address Duplication of Central Remote Controller.....                                            | 215 |
| 7.30 | Transmission Error between Centralized Remote Controller<br>and Indoor Unit.....                 | 216 |
| 7.31 | System is not Set yet.....                                                                       | 218 |
| 7.32 | System Abnormality, Refrigerant System Address Undefined .....                                   | 219 |



|                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 7.33 Check for Outdoor Unit.....                                 | 220 |
| 8. Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics .....     | 224 |
| 9. Pressure Sensor .....                                         | 226 |
| 10.Method of Replacing Inverter's Power Transistors Modules..... | 227 |

## **Part 9 Appendix ..... 229**

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Piping Diagrams.....                  | 230 |
| 1.1 Outdoor Unit.....                    | 230 |
| 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....       | 231 |
| 1.3 Indoor Unit.....                     | 232 |
| 2. Wiring Diagrams.....                  | 234 |
| 2.1 Outdoor Unit.....                    | 234 |
| 2.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....       | 235 |
| 2.3 Indoor Unit.....                     | 236 |
| 3. Removal Procedure (Booklet No.) ..... | 239 |


### **Legends**


|      |                                                                                                   |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ta   | Outdoor temperature                                                                               |
| Tb   | Outdoor heat exchanger temperature                                                                |
| Tc   | High pressure equivalent saturation temperature                                                   |
| Tdi  | Discharge pipe temperature                                                                        |
| Te   | Low pressure equivalent saturation temperature                                                    |
| Tfin | Radiation fin temperature                                                                         |
| TI   | Liquid pipe temperature                                                                           |
| Tp   | Value of compressor port temperature calculated by Tc and Te, and suction superheated degree      |
| Tr   | Room thermistor temperature                                                                       |
| Ts   | Set temperature                                                                                   |
| Ts1  | Suction pipe temperature 1                                                                        |
| Ts2  | Suction pipe temperature 2                                                                        |
| Tsh  | Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe temperature                                                    |
| Tt   | Target temperature                                                                                |
| HTdi | Value of discharge pipe temperature (Tdi) compensated with outdoor temperature                    |
| SC   | Difference between the heat exchanger temperature and liquid pipe temperature of each indoor unit |
| SH   | Difference between the heat exchanger temperature and gas pipe temperature of each indoor unit    |
| Pc   | High pressure sensor detection value                                                              |
| Pe   | Low pressure sensor detection value                                                               |





# 1. Safety Considerations

Read these **SAFETY CONSIDERATIONS** carefully before repairing air conditioners and heat pumps. After completing repairs, check if the unit operates properly. All electrical repairs and work must be carried out by qualified personnel in accordance local, state, and national regulations. Follow all instructions that are listed under each hazard sign (**DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTE**) as they are important for ensuring safety.

 **DANGER** ..... Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

 **WARNING** ..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION** ..... Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

 **NOTE** ..... Indicates situations that may result in equipment or property-damage accidents only.

## 1.1 During Repairs

### WARNING

- Disconnect power before disassembling the equipment for repairs. Working on the equipment that is connected to a power supply could cause an electric shock. If it is necessary to supply power to the equipment to conduct repairs or to inspect the circuits, do not touch any electrically charged sections of the equipment.
- Prior to disconnecting the suction or discharge pipe of the compressor at welded sections, pump-down the refrigerant gas completely. If there is gas or oil remaining inside the compressor, the refrigerant gas or oil can discharge when the pump is being disconnected and it could cause an injury.
- If refrigerant gas is discharges during repair work, do not touch the discharged refrigerant gas. The refrigerant gas could cause frostbites.
- If refrigerant gas leaks during repair or service, ventilate the area immediately. Refrigerant gas could produce toxic gas if it comes into contact with flames.
- The step-up capacitor supplies high-voltage electricity to the electrical components of the outdoor unit. Discharge the capacitor completely before conducting repair work. A charge capacitor could cause an electrical shock.

- Do not start or stop the air conditioner or heat pump operation by plugging or unplugging the power cord. Plugging or unplugging the power cord to operate or disconnect the equipment could cause an electrical shock or fire.
- Wear a safety helmet, gloves, and a safety belt when working at an elevated height of more than 6.5ft (2m). Insufficient safety measures could cause a fall resulting in a injury.
- Use only pipes, flare nuts, tools, and the other materials designed specifically for R410A refrigerant systems. Never use tools or materials designed for R22 refrigerant systems on an R410A refrigerant system. Doing so could cause a serious accident or an equipment failure.
- If the installation platform or frame has corroded, have it replaced. A corroded platform or frame could cause electrical shock or fire.
- When relocating equipment, make sure that the new installation site has sufficient strength to withstand the weight of the equipment. If the installation site does not have sufficient strength and if the installation work is not conducted securely, the equipment could fall and cause injury.
- When relocating equipment, keep the refrigerant circuit free from all substances other than the specified refrigerant, such as air. Any presence of air or other foreign substance in the refrigerant circuit could cause an abnormal pressure rise or rupture, resulting in injury.
- Check the unit foundation for damage on a continual basis, especially if it has been in use for a long time. If left in a damaged condition, the unit could fall and cause injury.

### CAUTION

- Do not repair the electrical components with wet hands. Working on the equipment with wet hands may cause an electrical shock.
- Do not clean the air conditioner or heat pump by splashing water on it. Washing the unit with water may cause an electrical shock.
- Equipment must be grounded when carrying out repairs in a humid or wet place to avoid electrical shocks.
- Turn off the power when cleaning the equipment to prevent internal fans (that rotate at high speed) from starting suddenly, as they may cause injury.
- Do not tilt the unit when removing it. The condensate water inside the unit may spill and wet furniture and floors.



- Do not touch the refrigerant pipes during and immediately after operation for any repair work as the refrigerant pipes may be hot or cold, depending on the condition of the refrigerant flowing through the refrigerant piping, compressor, and other refrigerant cycle parts. Your hands may suffer burns
- All welding and cutting operations must be done in a well-ventilated place. Welding and cutting operations done in an enclosed room may cause deficiency in oxygen in the enclosed room.
- Dismantling of the unit, disposal of refrigerant, oil, and additional parts, should be done in accordance with the relevant local, state, and national regulations.

## 1.2 After Repairs

### ⚠ WARNING

- Use an exclusive power circuit for the equipment. Insufficient circuit amperage capacity could cause an electrical shock or fire.
- Use specified cable to connect indoor and outdoor units. Make the connections securely, and route the cable properly so that there is no force pulling the cable at the connection terminals. Improper connections could cause excessive heat generation or fire.
- Securely fasten the outdoor unit terminal cover (panel). If the terminal cover/panel is not fastened properly, dust or water could enter the outdoor unit causing fire or electric shock.
- Do not damage or modify the power cable. Damaged or modified power cables could cause an electrical shock or fire. Placing heavy items on the power cable could damage the cable.
- Do not charge air or gas other than the specified refrigerant to the refrigerant system. If air enters the refrigerant system, it could cause excessive high pressure resulting in equipment damage and injury.
- If refrigerant gas leaks, locate the leaking point and repair it before charging refrigerant. After charging the refrigerant, check for refrigerant leaks. If the leaking point cannot be located and the repair work must be stopped, perform a pump-down. Close the service valve to prevent the refrigerant gas from leaking into the room. the refrigerant gas itself is harmless, but it could generate toxic gases if it comes into contact with flames.
- After replacing the battery in the remote controller, dispose of the old battery to prevent children from swallowing it. If a child swallows the battery, consult with a doctor immediately.

## 1.3 Inspections after Repairs

### ⚠ WARNING

- If the unit has a power cable plug and it is dirty, clean the plug before securely inserting it into a power outlet. If the plug has a loose connection, tighten it or it could cause electrical shock or fire.
- If the power cable and lead wires have scratches or are deteriorated, replace them. Damaged cable and wires could cause an electrical shock, excessive heat generation, or fire.
- Do not use a joined power cable or extension cable, or share the same power outlet with other electrical appliances as it could cause an electrical shock, excessive heat generation, or fire.
- Check if parts and wires are mounted and connected properly and if the connections at the soldered or crimped terminals are secure. Improper installation and connection could cause an electrical shock, excessive heat generation, or fire.
- Measure the insulation resistance after the repair. The resistance must be 1M  $\Omega$  or higher. Faulty insulation could cause an electrical shock.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Check the drainage of the indoor unit after the repair. Faulty drainage may cause the water to enter the room resulting in wet floors and furniture.

## 1.4 Safety for Users

### ⚠ DANGER

- Never attempt to modify the equipment. Doing so will cause electrical shock, excessive heat generation, or fire.

### ⚠ WARNING

- Never remove the fan guard of the unit while the unit is operating. A fan rotating at high speed without the fan guard is very dangerous.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Before cleaning the unit, stop the operation of the unit by turning the power off or by pulling the power cord out from its socket. Otherwise, an electrical shock or injury may result.

### ⚠ NOTE

- Do not wipe the controller operation panel with benzene, thinner, chemical dust cloths, or similar. The panel may get discolored or the coating can peel off. If it is extremely dirty, soak a cloth in a water-diluted neutral detergent, squeeze it well, and wipe the panel clean. Then wipe it with another dry cloth.







# Part 1

# List of Functions

1. Functions.....2

    1.1 Outdoor Unit.....2

    1.2 Indoor Unit.....3



# 1. Functions

## 1.1 Outdoor Unit

| Category              | Functions                               | RMXS48LVJU    | Category                              | Functions                                                      | RMXS48LVJU |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Basic Function        | Inverter (with inverter power control)  | ●             | Health & Clean                        | Air-purifying filter                                           | —          |
|                       | Operation limit for cooling (°CDB)      | —5<br>~ 46    |                                       | Photocatalytic deodorizing filter                              | —          |
|                       | Operation limit for cooling (°FDB)      | 23<br>~ 115   |                                       | Air-purifying filter with photocatalytic deodorizing function  | —          |
|                       | Operation limit for heating (°CWB)      | —15<br>~ 15.5 |                                       | Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter           | —          |
|                       | Operation limit for heating (°FWB)      | 5<br>~ 60     |                                       | Longlife filter                                                | —          |
|                       | PAM control                             | —             |                                       | Air filter (prefilter)                                         | —          |
| Compressor            | Oval scroll compressor                  | ●             |                                       | Wipe-clean flat panel                                          | —          |
|                       | Swing compressor                        | —             |                                       | Washable grille                                                | —          |
|                       | Rotary compressor                       | —             |                                       | Filter cleaning indicator                                      | —          |
|                       | Reluctance DC motor                     | ●             |                                       | Good-sleep cooling operation                                   | —          |
| Comfortable Airflow   | Power-airflow louver (horizontal blade) | —             | Timer                                 | WEEKLY TIMER operation                                         | —          |
|                       | Power-airflow dual louvers              | —             |                                       | 24-hour ON/OFF timer                                           | —          |
|                       | Power-airflow diffuser                  | —             |                                       | 72-hour ON/OFF timer                                           | —          |
|                       | Wide-angle fins (vertical blades)       | —             |                                       | NIGHT SET mode                                                 | —          |
|                       | Vertical auto-swing (up and down)       | —             | Worry Free (Reliability & Durability) | Auto-restart (after power failure)                             | —          |
|                       | Horizontal auto-swing (right and left)  | —             |                                       | Self-diagnosis (digital, LED) display                          | ●          |
|                       | 3-D airflow                             | —             |                                       | Wiring error check function                                    | ●          |
|                       | COMFORT AIRFLOW operation               | —             |                                       | Automatic test operation                                       | ●          |
| Comfort Control       | Auto fan speed                          | —             | Flexibility                           | Memory function                                                | ●          |
|                       | Indoor unit quiet operation             | —             |                                       | Anti-corrosion treatment of outdoor heat exchanger             | ●          |
|                       | NIGHT QUIET mode (automatic)            | ●             |                                       | Multi-split / split type compatible indoor unit                | —          |
|                       | OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation (manual)   | ●             |                                       | Flexible power supply correspondence                           | —          |
|                       | INTELLIGENT EYE operation               | —             |                                       | High ceiling application                                       | —          |
|                       | Quick warming function                  | ●             |                                       | Chargeless                                                     | —          |
|                       | Hot-start function                      | —             |                                       | Either side drain (right or left)                              | —          |
|                       | Automatic defrosting                    | ●             |                                       | Power selection                                                | —          |
| Operation             | Automatic operation                     | —             | Remote Control                        | °F/°C changeover R/C temperature display (factory setting: °F) | —          |
|                       | Program dry function                    | —             |                                       | 5-room centralized controller (option)                         | —          |
|                       | Fan only                                | —             |                                       | Remote control adaptor (normal open pulse contact) (option)    | —          |
| Lifestyle Convenience | New POWERFUL operation (non-inverter)   | —             | Remote Controller                     | Remote control adaptor (normal open contact) (option)          | —          |
|                       | Inverter POWERFUL operation             | —             |                                       | DIII-NET compatible (adaptor) (option)                         | —          |
|                       | Priority-room setting                   | —             |                                       | Wireless                                                       | —          |
|                       | COOL / HEAT mode lock                   | —             |                                       | Wired                                                          | —          |
|                       | HOME LEAVE operation                    | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |
|                       | ECONO operation                         | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |
|                       | Indoor unit ON/OFF button               | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |
|                       | Signal receiving sign                   | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |
|                       | R/C with back light                     | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |
|                       | Temperature display                     | —             |                                       |                                                                |            |

**Note:** ● : Available  
— : Not Available



## 1.2 Indoor Unit

| Category              | Functions                               | CTXS07LVJU | CTXS07JVJU<br>CTXS09/12HVJU | FTXS15/18/24LVJU | FDXS09/12LVJU | CDXS12/18/24LVJU | FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Basic Function        | Inverter (with inverter power control)  | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                       | Operation limit for cooling (°CDB)      | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Operation limit for cooling (°FDB)      | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Operation limit for heating (°CWB)      | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Operation limit for heating (°FWB)      | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | PAM control                             | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Compressor            | Oval scroll compressor                  | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Swing compressor                        | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Rotary compressor                       | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Reluctance DC motor                     | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Comfortable Airflow   | Power-airflow louver (horizontal blade) | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Power-airflow dual louvers              | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Power-airflow diffuser                  | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Wide-angle fins (vertical blades)       | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Vertical auto-swing (up and down)       | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | ●                  |
|                       | Horizontal auto-swing (right and left)  | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | 3-D airflow                             | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | COMFORT AIRFLOW operation               | ●          | —                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Comfort Control       | Auto fan speed                          | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                       | Indoor unit quiet operation             | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                       | NIGHT QUIET mode (automatic)            | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation (manual)   | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                       | INTELLIGENT EYE operation               | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Quick warming function                  | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Hot-start function                      | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                       | Automatic defrosting                    | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Operation             | Automatic operation                     | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                       | Program dry function                    | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                       | Fan only                                | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
| Lifestyle Convenience | New POWERFUL operation (non-inverter)   | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | Inverter POWERFUL operation             | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                       | Priority-room setting                   | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | COOL / HEAT mode lock                   | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | HOME LEAVE operation                    | —          | ●                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                       | ECONO operation                         | ●          | —                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                       | Indoor unit ON/OFF button               | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●★1                |
|                       | Signal receiving sign                   | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●★1                |
|                       | R/C with back light                     | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●★2                |
|                       | Temperature Display                     | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |

**Note:** ● : Available

— : Not Available



| Category                              | Functions                                                      | CTXS07LVJU | CTXS07JVJU<br>CTXS09/12HVJU | FTXS15/18/24LVJU | FDXS09/12LVJU | CDXS12/18/24LVJU | FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Health & Clean                        | Air-purifying filter                                           | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Photocatalytic deodorizing filter                              | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Air-purifying filter with photocatalytic deodorizing function  | —          | ●                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Titanium apatite photocatalytic air-purifying filter           | ●          | —                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Longlife filter (option)                                       | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | ●                  |
|                                       | Air filter (prefilter)                                         | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                                       | Wipe-clean flat panel                                          | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Washable grille                                                | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | ●                  |
|                                       | Filter cleaning indicator                                      | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | ●                  |
|                                       | Good-sleep cooling operation                                   | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Timer                                 | WEEKLY TIMER operation                                         | ●          | —                           | ●                | —             | —                | ●★2                |
|                                       | 24-hour ON/OFF TIMER                                           | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                                       | 72-hour ON/OFF TIMER                                           | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | ●★1                |
|                                       | NIGHT SET mode                                                 | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
| Worry Free (Reliability & Durability) | Auto-restart (after power failure)                             | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                                       | Self-diagnosis (digital, LED) display                          | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                                       | Wiring error check function                                    | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Automatic test operation                                       | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Memory function                                                | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Anticorrosion treatment of outdoor heat exchanger              | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
| Flexibility                           | Multi-split / split type compatible indoor unit                | —          | —                           | ●                | ●             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Flexible power supply correspondence                           | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | High ceiling application                                       | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Chargeless                                                     | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Either side drain (right or left)                              | ●          | ●                           | ●                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | Power selection                                                | —          | —                           | —                | —             | —                | —                  |
|                                       | °F/°C changeover R/C temperature display (factory setting: °F) | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●★2                |
| Remote Control                        | 5-room centralized controller (option)                         | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                                       | Remote control adaptor (normal open pulse contact) (option)    | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                                       | Remote control adaptor (normal open contact) (option)          | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | —                  |
|                                       | DIII-NET compatible (adaptor) (option)                         | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
| Remote Controller                     | Wireless                                                       | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |
|                                       | Wired (option)                                                 | ●          | ●                           | ●                | ●             | ●                | ●                  |

**Note:** ● : Available  
 — : Not Available

★1: With wireless remote controller  
 ★2: With wired remote controller



# Part 2

# Specifications

- 1. Specifications ..... 6
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit ..... 6
  - 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit ..... 6
  - 1.3 Indoor Unit..... 7



# 1. Specifications

## 1.1 Outdoor Unit

60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                  |                                |                    | RMXS48LVJU                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Cooling Capacity ★     | Btu/h                          |                    | 48,000                                          |
| Heating Capacity ★     | Btu/h                          |                    | 54,000                                          |
| Casing Color           |                                |                    | Ivory White                                     |
| Heat Exchanger         |                                |                    | Cross Fin Coil                                  |
| Compressor             | Type                           |                    | Hermetically Sealed Scroll Type                 |
|                        | Piston Displacement            | ft <sup>3</sup> /h | 791.5                                           |
|                        | Number of Revolutions          | r.p.m              | 6,480                                           |
|                        | Motor Output (2.2 kW / 60 rps) | kW                 | 3.0                                             |
|                        | Starting Method                |                    | Direct on line                                  |
| Refrigerant Oil        | Model                          |                    | DAPHNE FVC68D                                   |
|                        | Charge                         | L (fioz)           | 1.7 (57.5)                                      |
| Refrigerant            | Type                           |                    | R-410A                                          |
|                        | Charge                         | Lbs (kg)           | 8.8 (4.0)                                       |
|                        | Control                        |                    | Electronic Expansion Valve                      |
| Fan                    | Type                           |                    | Propeller Fan                                   |
|                        | Motor Output                   | kW                 | 0.070 × 2                                       |
|                        | Airflow rate                   | cfm                | 3,740                                           |
|                        | Drive                          |                    | Direct Drive                                    |
| Dimensions (H × W × D) | in. (mm)                       |                    | 52-15/16 × 35-7/16 × 12-5/8 (1,345 × 900 × 320) |
| Weight (Mass)          | Lbs (kg)                       |                    | 283 (129)                                       |
| Piping Connection      | Liquid                         | in. (mm)           | ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5) C1220T (Flare Connection)         |
|                        | Gas                            | in. (mm)           | ϕ 3/4 (ϕ 19.1) C1220T (Brazing Connection)      |
| Defrost Method         |                                |                    | Reverse Cycle Defrosting                        |
| Drawing No.            |                                |                    | 4D080735                                        |

**Note:** ★ The data are based on the conditions shown in the table below.

|               |                                                                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cooling       | Indoor ; 80°FDB (26.7°CDB) / 67°FWB (19.4°CWB)<br>Outdoor ; 95°FDB (35°CDB)         |
| Heating       | Indoor ; 70°FDB (21.1°CDB)<br>Outdoor ; 47°FDB (8.3°CDB) / 43°FWB (6.1°CWB)         |
| Piping Length | O.U. – BP : 16.4 ft (5 m), BP – I.U. : 9.8 ft (3 m)<br>Level Difference: 0 ft (0 m) |

Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
Btu/h = kW × 3412  
cfm = m<sup>3</sup>/min × 35.3

## 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit

60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |              |           | BPMKS048A2U                                                    | BPMKS049A3U        |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Power Consumption               | W            |           | 10                                                             | 10                 |
| Running Current                 | A            |           | 0.05                                                           | 0.05               |
| Refrigerant Type                |              |           | R-410A                                                         |                    |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          | in. (mm)     |           | 7-1/16 × 11-9/16 [26-11/16]* × 13-3/4 (180 × 294 [678]* × 350) |                    |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) | in. (mm)     |           | 10-1/8 × 29-1/16 × 16-13/16 (257 × 738 × 427)                  |                    |
| Weight (Mass)                   | Lbs (kg)     |           | 18 (8)                                                         | 20 (9)             |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       | Lbs (kg)     |           | 27 (12)                                                        | 29 (13)            |
| Number of Wiring Connections    | Power Supply |           | 3 (including ground wiring)                                    |                    |
|                                 | O.U. – BP    |           | 2 (for DIII transmission)                                      |                    |
|                                 | BP – I.U.    |           | 4 (including ground wiring)                                    |                    |
| Piping Connection (Flare)       | Liquid       | O.U. side | in. (mm)                                                       | ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5) × 1  |
|                                 |              | I.U. side |                                                                |                    |
|                                 | Gas          | O.U. side | in. (mm)                                                       | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4) × 3  |
|                                 |              | I.U. side |                                                                |                    |
|                                 | Drain        |           |                                                                | ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 15.9) × 1 |
| Heat Insulation                 |              |           | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                                      |                    |
| Min. Combination                | Btu/h        |           | 7,000                                                          |                    |
| Max. Combination                | Btu/h        |           | 48,000                                                         | 62,000             |
| Drawing No.                     |              |           | 4D080441                                                       |                    |

**Note:** [ ]\* : including auxiliary piping length

Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
Btu/h = kW × 3412  
cfm = m<sup>3</sup>/min × 35.3



# 1.3 Indoor Unit

## CTXS, FTXS Series

60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |                |                              | CTXS07LVJU                                    |                   | CTXS07JVJU                                  |                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------|
|                                 |                |                              | Cooling                                       | Heating           | Cooling                                     | Heating          |
| Rated Capacity                  |                |                              | 7 kBtu/h Class                                |                   | 7 kBtu/h Class                              |                  |
| Front Panel Color               |                |                              | White                                         |                   | White                                       |                  |
| Airflow Rate                    | H              | cfm<br>(m <sup>3</sup> /min) | 332 (9.4)                                     | 350 (9.9)         | 388 (11.0)                                  | 400 (11.3)       |
|                                 | M              |                              | 261 (7.4)                                     | 290 (8.2)         | 335 (9.5)                                   | 357 (10.1)       |
|                                 | L              |                              | 194 (5.5)                                     | 233 (6.6)         | 283 (8.0)                                   | 314 (8.9)        |
|                                 | SL             |                              | 145 (4.1)                                     | 219 (6.2)         | —                                           | —                |
| Fan                             | Type           |                              | Cross Flow Fan                                |                   | Cross Flow Fan                              |                  |
|                                 | Motor Output   | W                            | 23                                            |                   | 40                                          |                  |
|                                 | Speed          | Steps                        | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                          |                   | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                        |                  |
| Air Direction Control           |                |                              | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward             |                   | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward           |                  |
| Air Filter                      |                |                              | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof           |                   | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof         |                  |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                | A                            | 0.09 - 0.08                                   | 0.11 - 0.10       | 0.18                                        | 0.2              |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                | W                            | 18 - 18                                       | 21 - 21           | 40                                          | 45               |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |                | %                            | 96.2 - 97.8                                   | 91.8 - 91.3       | 96.6                                        | 97.8             |
| Temperature Control             |                |                              | Microcomputer Control                         |                   | Microcomputer Control                       |                  |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          |                | in. (mm)                     | 11-5/8 × 31-1/2 × 8-7/16 (295 × 800 × 215)    |                   | 11-7/16 × 31-5/16 × 9-3/8 (290 × 795 × 238) |                  |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) |                | in. (mm)                     | 14-7/16 × 34-1/4 × 10-13/16 (366 × 870 × 274) |                   | 13-5/16 × 33-1/16 × 11 (338 × 840 × 280)    |                  |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                | Lbs (kg)                     | 20 (9)                                        |                   | 20 (9)                                      |                  |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                | Lbs (kg)                     | 29 (13)                                       |                   | 29 (13)                                     |                  |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L / SL | dB(A)                        | 38 / 32 / 25 / 22                             | 38 / 33 / 28 / 25 | 44 / 40 / 35 / —                            | 44 / 39 / 34 / — |
| Sound Power Level               |                | dB                           | 54                                            | 54                | —                                           | —                |
| Heat Insulation                 |                |                              | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                     |                   | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                   |                  |
| Piping Connection               | Liquid         | in. (mm)                     | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                                 |                   | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                               |                  |
|                                 | Gas            | in. (mm)                     | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                                 |                   | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                               |                  |
|                                 | Drain          | in. (mm)                     | φ 5/8 (φ 16.0)                                |                   | φ 11/16 (φ 18.0)                            |                  |
| Drawing No.                     |                |                              | 3D075490                                      |                   | 3D066156A                                   |                  |

| Model                           |              |                              | CTXS09HVJU                                  |              | CTXS12HVJU                                  |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------|
|                                 |              |                              | Cooling                                     | Heating      | Cooling                                     | Heating      |
| Rated Capacity                  |              |                              | 9 kBtu/h Class                              |              | 12 kBtu/h Class                             |              |
| Front Panel Color               |              |                              | White                                       |              | White                                       |              |
| Airflow Rate                    | H            | cfm<br>(m <sup>3</sup> /min) | 388 (11.0)                                  | 400 (11.3)   | 388 (11.0)                                  | 400 (11.3)   |
|                                 | M            |                              | 335 (9.5)                                   | 357 (10.1)   | 335 (9.5)                                   | 357 (10.1)   |
|                                 | L            |                              | 283 (8.0)                                   | 314 (8.9)    | 283 (8.0)                                   | 314 (8.9)    |
|                                 |              |                              |                                             |              |                                             |              |
| Fan                             | Type         |                              | Cross Flow Fan                              |              | Cross Flow Fan                              |              |
|                                 | Motor Output | W                            | 40                                          |              | 40                                          |              |
|                                 | Speed        | Steps                        | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                        |              | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                        |              |
| Air Direction Control           |              |                              | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward           |              | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward           |              |
| Air Filter                      |              |                              | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof         |              | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof         |              |
| Running Current (Rated)         |              | A                            | 0.18                                        | 0.2          | 0.18                                        | 0.2          |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |              | W                            | 40                                          | 45           | 40                                          | 45           |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |              | %                            | 96.6                                        | 97.8         | 96.6                                        | 97.8         |
| Temperature Control             |              |                              | Microcomputer Control                       |              | Microcomputer Control                       |              |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          |              | in. (mm)                     | 11-7/16 × 31-5/16 × 9-3/8 (290 × 795 × 238) |              | 11-7/16 × 31-5/16 × 9-3/8 (290 × 795 × 238) |              |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) |              | in. (mm)                     | 13-5/16 × 33-1/16 × 11 ( 338 × 840 × 280)   |              | 13-5/16 × 33-1/16 × 11 ( 338 × 840 × 280)   |              |
| Weight (Mass)                   |              | Lbs (kg)                     | 20 (9)                                      |              | 20 (9)                                      |              |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |              | Lbs (kg)                     | 29 (13)                                     |              | 29 (13)                                     |              |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L    | dB(A)                        | 44 / 40 / 35                                | 44 / 39 / 34 | 45 / 41 / 36                                | 45 / 40 / 35 |
| Heat Insulation                 |              |                              | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                   |              | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                   |              |
| Piping Connection               | Liquid       | in. (mm)                     | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                               |              | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                               |              |
|                                 | Gas          | in. (mm)                     | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                               |              | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                               |              |
|                                 | Drain        | in. (mm)                     | φ 11/16 (φ 18.0)                            |              | φ 11/16 (φ 18.0)                            |              |
| Drawing No.                     |              |                              | 3D062870A                                   |              | 3D062871A                                   |              |

## Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
 Btu/h = kW × 3412  
 cfm = m<sup>3</sup>/min × 35.3



60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |                |                 | FTXS15LVJU                                   |                   | FTXS18LVJU                                   |                   |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                                 |                |                 | Cooling                                      | Heating           | Cooling                                      | Heating           |
| Rated Capacity                  |                |                 | 15 kBtu/h Class                              |                   | 18 kBtu/h Class                              |                   |
| Front Panel Color               |                |                 | White                                        |                   | White                                        |                   |
| Airflow Rate                    | H              | cfm<br>(m³/min) | 568 (16.1)                                   | 593 (16.8)        | 583 (16.5)                                   | 625 (17.7)        |
|                                 | M              |                 | 477 (13.5)                                   | 505 (14.3)        | 484 (13.7)                                   | 526 (14.9)        |
|                                 | L              |                 | 385 (10.9)                                   | 417 (11.8)        | 385 (10.9)                                   | 431 (12.2)        |
|                                 | SL             |                 | 360 (10.2)                                   | 371 (10.5)        | 360 (10.2)                                   | 399 (11.3)        |
| Fan                             | Type           |                 | Cross Flow Fan                               |                   | Cross Flow Fan                               |                   |
|                                 | Motor Output   | W               | 48                                           |                   | 48                                           |                   |
|                                 | Speed          | Steps           | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                         |                   | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                         |                   |
| Air Direction Control           |                |                 | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward            |                   | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward            |                   |
| Air Filter                      |                |                 | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof          |                   | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof          |                   |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                | A               | 0.31 - 0.29                                  | 0.31 - 0.29       | 0.32 - 0.30                                  | 0.32 - 0.30       |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                | W               | 38 - 38                                      | 38 - 38           | 38 - 38                                      | 38 - 38           |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |                | %               | 58.9 - 57.0                                  | 58.9 - 57.0       | 57.1 - 55.1                                  | 57.1 - 55.1       |
| Temperature Control             |                |                 | Microcomputer Control                        |                   | Microcomputer Control                        |                   |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          |                | in. (mm)        | 13-3/8 × 41-5/16 × 9-3/4 (340 × 1,050 × 248) |                   | 13-3/8 × 41-5/16 × 9-3/4 (340 × 1,050 × 248) |                   |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) |                | in. (mm)        | 16-7/8 × 45-11/16 × 13 (429 × 1,160 × 331)   |                   | 16-7/8 × 45-11/16 × 13 (429 × 1,160 × 331)   |                   |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                | Lbs (kg)        | 31 (14)                                      |                   | 31 (14)                                      |                   |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                | Lbs (kg)        | 44 (20)                                      |                   | 44 (20)                                      |                   |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L / SL | dB(A)           | 45 / 40 / 35 / 32                            | 43 / 38 / 33 / 30 | 46 / 41 / 36 / 33                            | 45 / 40 / 35 / 32 |
| Sound Power Level               |                | dB              | 61                                           | 59                | 62                                           | 61                |
| Heat Insulation                 |                |                 | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                    |                   | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                    |                   |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid         | in. (mm)        | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                |                   | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                |                   |
|                                 | Gas            | in. (mm)        | ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)                               |                   | ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)                               |                   |
|                                 | Drain          | in. (mm)        | ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 16.0)                               |                   | ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 16.0)                               |                   |
| Drawing No.                     |                |                 | 3D075043                                     |                   | 3D075044                                     |                   |

| Model                                 |              |                 | FTXS24LVJU                                   |                   |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                                       |              |                 | Cooling                                      | Heating           |
| Rated Capacity                        |              | Btu/h           | 24 kBtu/h Class                              |                   |
| Front Panel Color                     |              |                 | White                                        |                   |
| Airflow Rate                          | H            | cfm<br>(m³/min) | 643 (18.2)                                   | 699 (19.8)        |
|                                       | M            |                 | 494 (14.0)                                   | 572 (16.2)        |
|                                       | L            |                 | 350 (9.9)                                    | 445 (12.6)        |
|                                       | SL           |                 | 328 (9.3)                                    | 403 (11.4)        |
| Fan                                   | Type         |                 | Cross Flow Fan                               |                   |
|                                       | Motor Output | W               | 48                                           |                   |
|                                       | Speed        | Steps           | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                         |                   |
| Air Direction Control                 |              |                 | Right, Left, Horizontal, Downward            |                   |
| Air Filter                            |              |                 | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof          |                   |
| Running Current (Rated)               |              | A               | 0.57 - 0.51                                  | 0.57 - 0.51       |
| Power Consumption (Rated)             |              | W               | 69 - 68                                      | 69 - 68           |
| Power Factor (Rated)                  |              | %               | 58.2 - 58.0                                  | 58.2 - 58.0       |
| Temperature Control                   |              |                 | Microcomputer Control                        |                   |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)                |              | in. (mm)        | 13-3/8 × 41-5/16 × 9-3/4 (340 × 1,050 × 248) |                   |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D)       |              | in. (mm)        | 16-7/8 × 45-11/16 × 13 (429 × 1,160 × 331)   |                   |
| Weight (Mass)                         |              | Lbs (kg)        | 31 (14)                                      |                   |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)             |              | Lbs (kg)        | 46 (21)                                      |                   |
| Sound Pressure Level (H / M / L / SL) |              | dB(A)           | 51 / 44 / 37 / 34                            | 48 / 42 / 37 / 34 |
| Sound Power Level                     |              | dBA             | 67                                           | 64                |
| Heat Insulation                       |              |                 | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                    |                   |
| Piping Connections                    | Liquid       | in. (mm)        | ϕ 1/4 (6.4)                                  |                   |
|                                       | Gas          | in. (mm)        | ϕ 5/8 (15.9)                                 |                   |
|                                       | Drain        | in. (mm)        | ϕ 5/8 (16.0)                                 |                   |
| Drawing No.                           |              |                 | 3D075045                                     |                   |

## Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
 Btu/h = kW × 3412  
 cfm = m³/min × 35.3



## CDXS, FDXS Series

60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |              |                 | FDXS09LVJU                                       |              | FDXS12LVJU                                       |              |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|
|                                 |              |                 | Cooling                                          | Heating      | Cooling                                          | Heating      |
| Rated Capacity                  |              |                 | 9 kBtu/h Class                                   |              | 12 kBtu/h Class                                  |              |
| External Static Pressure        |              | inAq (Pa)       | 0.12 (30)                                        |              | 0.12 (30)                                        |              |
| Airflow Rate                    | H            | cfm<br>(m³/min) | 305 (8.6)                                        | 305 (8.6)    | 305 (8.6)                                        | 305 (8.6)    |
|                                 | M            |                 | 280 (7.9)                                        | 280 (7.9)    | 280 (7.9)                                        | 280 (7.9)    |
|                                 | L            |                 | 260 (7.4)                                        | 260 (7.4)    | 260 (7.4)                                        | 260 (7.4)    |
|                                 | SL           |                 | 235 (6.7)                                        | 235 (6.7)    | 235 (6.7)                                        | 235 (6.7)    |
| Fan                             | Type         |                 | Sirocco Fan                                      |              | Sirocco Fan                                      |              |
|                                 | Motor Output | W               | 62                                               |              | 62                                               |              |
|                                 | Speed        | Steps           | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                             |              | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                             |              |
| Air Filter                      |              |                 | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof              |              | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof              |              |
| Running Current (Rated)         |              | A               | 0.58 - 0.52                                      | 0.58 - 0.52  | 0.58 - 0.52                                      | 0.58 - 0.52  |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |              | W               | 72 - 72                                          | 72 - 72      | 72 - 72                                          | 72 - 72      |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |              | %               | 59.7 - 60.2                                      | 59.7 - 60.2  | 59.7 - 60.2                                      | 59.7 - 60.2  |
| Temperature Control             |              |                 | Microcomputer Control                            |              | Microcomputer Control                            |              |
| Dimensions (H x W x D)          |              | in. (mm)        | 7-7/8 x 27-9/16 x 24-7/16 (200 x 700 x 620)      |              | 7-7/8 x 27-9/16 x 24-7/16 (200 x 700 x 620)      |              |
| Packaged Dimensions (H x W x D) |              | in. (mm)        | 10-13/16 x 36-5/16 x 30-1/4 (274 x 923 x 768)    |              | 10-13/16 x 36-5/16 x 30-1/4 (274 x 923 x 768)    |              |
| Weight (Mass)                   |              | Lbs (kg)        | 47 (21)                                          |              | 47 (21)                                          |              |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |              | Lbs (kg)        | 64 (29)                                          |              | 64 (29)                                          |              |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L    | dB(A)           | 35 / 33 / 31                                     | 35 / 33 / 31 | 35 / 33 / 31                                     | 35 / 33 / 31 |
| Sound Power Level               |              | dB              | 51                                               | 51           | 51                                               | 51           |
| Heat Insulation                 |              |                 | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                        |              | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                        |              |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid       | in. (mm)        | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                                    |              | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                                    |              |
|                                 | Gas          | in. (mm)        | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                                    |              | φ 3/8 (φ 9.5)                                    |              |
|                                 | Drain        | in. (mm)        | VP20 (O.D. φ 1-1/32 (φ 26), I.D. φ 25/32 (φ 20)) |              | VP20 (O.D. φ 1-1/32 (φ 26), I.D. φ 25/32 (φ 20)) |              |
| Drawing No.                     |              |                 | 3D075493                                         |              | 3D075494                                         |              |

| Model                           |                |                 | CDXS15LVJU                                       |                   | CDXS18LVJU                                       |                   |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                                 |                |                 | Cooling                                          | Heating           | Cooling                                          | Heating           |
| Rated Capacity                  |                |                 | 15 kBtu/h Class                                  |                   | 18 kBtu/h Class                                  |                   |
| External Static Pressure        |                | inAq (Pa)       | 0.16 (40)                                        |                   | 0.16 (40)                                        |                   |
| Airflow Rate                    | H              | cfm<br>(m³/min) | 424 (12.0)                                       | 424 (12.0)        | 424 (12.0)                                       | 424 (12.0)        |
|                                 | M              |                 | 388 (11.0)                                       | 388 (11.0)        | 388 (11.0)                                       | 388 (11.0)        |
|                                 | L              |                 | 353 (10.0)                                       | 353 (10.0)        | 353 (10.0)                                       | 353 (10.0)        |
|                                 | SL             |                 | 297 (8.4)                                        | 297 (8.4)         | 297 (8.4)                                        | 297 (8.4)         |
| Fan                             | Type           |                 | Sirocco Fan                                      |                   | Sirocco Fan                                      |                   |
|                                 | Motor Output   | W               | 130                                              |                   | 130                                              |                   |
|                                 | Speed          | Steps           | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                             |                   | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                             |                   |
| Air Filter                      |                |                 | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof              |                   | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof              |                   |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                | A               | 0.79                                             | 0.79              | 0.79                                             | 0.79              |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                | W               | 172                                              | 172               | 172                                              | 172               |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |                | %               | 94.4                                             | 94.4              | 94.4                                             | 94.4              |
| Temperature Control             |                |                 | Microcomputer Control                            |                   | Microcomputer Control                            |                   |
| Dimensions (H x W x D)          |                | in. (mm)        | 7-7/8 x 35-7/16 x 24-7/16 (200 x 900 x 620)      |                   | 7-7/8 x 35-7/16 x 24-7/16 (200 x 900 x 620)      |                   |
| Packaged Dimensions (H x W x D) |                | in. (mm)        | 10-1/2 x 43-9/16 x 29-9/16 (266 x 1,106 x 751)   |                   | 10-1/2 x 43-9/16 x 29-9/16 (266 x 1,106 x 751)   |                   |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                | Lbs (kg)        | 60 (27)                                          |                   | 60 (27)                                          |                   |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                | Lbs (kg)        | 75 (34)                                          |                   | 75 (34)                                          |                   |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L / SL | dB(A)           | 37 / 35 / 33 / 31                                | 37 / 35 / 33 / 31 | 37 / 35 / 33 / 31                                | 37 / 35 / 33 / 31 |
| Heat Insulation                 |                |                 | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                        |                   | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                        |                   |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid         | in. (mm)        | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                                    |                   | φ 1/4 (φ 6.4)                                    |                   |
|                                 | Gas            | in. (mm)        | φ 1/2 (φ 12.7)                                   |                   | φ 1/2 (φ 12.7)                                   |                   |
|                                 | Drain          | in. (mm)        | VP20 (O.D. φ 1-1/32 (φ 26), I.D. φ 25/32 (φ 20)) |                   | VP20 (O.D. φ 1-1/32 (φ 26), I.D. φ 25/32 (φ 20)) |                   |
| Drawing No.                     |                |                 | C: 3D075721                                      |                   | C: 3D075722                                      |                   |

## Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
 Btu/h = kW × 3412  
 cfm = m³/min × 35.3



60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |                |                              | CDXS24LVJU                                       |                   |
|---------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                                 |                |                              | Cooling                                          | Heating           |
| Rated Capacity                  |                |                              | 24 kBtu/h Class                                  |                   |
| External Static Pressure        |                | inAq (Pa)                    | 0.16 (40)                                        |                   |
| Airflow Rate                    | H              | cfm<br>(m <sup>3</sup> /min) | 565 (16.0)                                       | 565 (16.0)        |
|                                 | M              |                              | 523 (14.8)                                       | 523 (14.8)        |
|                                 | L              |                              | 477 (13.5)                                       | 477 (13.5)        |
|                                 | SL             |                              | 395 (11.2)                                       | 395 (11.2)        |
| Fan                             | Type           |                              | Sirocco Fan                                      |                   |
|                                 | Motor Output   | W                            | 130                                              |                   |
|                                 | Speed          | Steps                        | 5 Steps, Quiet, Auto                             |                   |
| Air Filter                      |                |                              | Removable / Washable / Mildew Proof              |                   |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                | A                            | 0.79                                             | 0.79              |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                | W                            | 160                                              | 160               |
| Power Factor (Rated)            |                | %                            | 90.3                                             | 92.8              |
| Temperature Control             |                |                              | Microcomputer Control                            |                   |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          |                | in. (mm)                     | 7-7/8 × 43-5/16 × 24-7/16 (200 × 1,100 × 620)    |                   |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) |                | in. (mm)                     | 10-1/2 × 52-1/16 × 30-1/4 (266 × 1,323 × 768)    |                   |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                | Lbs (kg)                     | 66 (30)                                          |                   |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                | Lbs (kg)                     | 84 (38)                                          |                   |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / M / L / SL | dB(A)                        | 38 / 36 / 34 / 32                                | 38 / 36 / 34 / 32 |
| Heat Insulation                 |                |                              | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                        |                   |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid         | in. (mm)                     | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                    |                   |
|                                 | Gas            | in. (mm)                     | ϕ 5/8 (ϕ 15.9)                                   |                   |
|                                 | Drain          | in. (mm)                     | VP20 (O.D. ϕ 1-1/32 (ϕ 26), I.D. ϕ 25/32 (ϕ 20)) |                   |
| Drawing No.                     |                |                              | 3D080590                                         |                   |



## FFQ Series 60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |                        |          | FFQ09LVJU                                         |             | FFQ12LVJU                                         |             |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                                 |                        |          | Cooling                                           | Heating     | Cooling                                           | Heating     |
| Rated Capacity                  |                        |          | 9 kBtu/h Class                                    |             | 12 kBtu/h Class                                   |             |
| Remote Controller               | Wired                  |          | BRC1E72                                           |             | BRC1E72                                           |             |
|                                 | Wireless               |          | BRC7E830                                          |             | BRC7E830                                          |             |
| Decoration Panel                | Model                  |          | BYFQ60B8W1U                                       |             | BYFQ60B8W1U                                       |             |
|                                 | Color                  |          | White                                             |             | White                                             |             |
|                                 | Dimensions (H × W × D) |          | 2-5/32 × 27-9/16 × 27-9/16 (55 × 700 × 700)       |             | 2-5/32 × 27-9/16 × 27-9/16 (55 × 700 × 700)       |             |
|                                 | Weight (Mass)          | Lbs (kg) | 6 (2.7)                                           |             | 6 (2.7)                                           |             |
| Airflow Rate                    | H                      | cfm      | 318 (9.0)                                         | 318 (9.0)   | 353 (10.0)                                        | 353 (10.0)  |
|                                 | L                      | (m³/min) | 230 (6.5)                                         | 230 (6.5)   | 230 (6.5)                                         | 230 (6.5)   |
| Fan                             | Type                   |          | Turbo Fan                                         |             | Turbo Fan                                         |             |
|                                 | Motor Output           | W        | 55                                                |             | 55                                                |             |
|                                 | Speed                  | Steps    | 2 Steps                                           |             | 2 Steps                                           |             |
| Air Direction Control           |                        |          | Horizontal, Downward                              |             | Horizontal, Downward                              |             |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                        | A        | 0.44                                              | 0.38        | 0.47                                              | 0.42        |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                        | W        | 87                                                | 76          | 98                                                | 89          |
| Power Factor                    |                        | %        | 85.8                                              | 87.0        | 91.3                                              | 91.8        |
| Temperature Control             |                        |          | Microcomputer Control                             |             | Microcomputer Control                             |             |
| Dimensions (H × W × D)          |                        | in. (mm) | 11-1/4 × 22-5/8 × 22-5/8 (285 × 575 × 575)        |             | 11-1/4 × 22-5/8 × 22-5/8 (285 × 575 × 575)        |             |
| Packaged Dimensions (H × W × D) |                        | in. (mm) | 14-9/16 × 27-1/16 × 26-9/16 (370 × 687 × 674)     |             | 14-9/16 × 27-1/16 × 26-9/16 (370 × 687 × 674)     |             |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                        | Lbs (kg) | 38.6 (17.5)                                       |             | 38.6 (17.5)                                       |             |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                        | Lbs (kg) | 46 (21)                                           |             | 46 (21)                                           |             |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / L                  | dB(A)    | 36.0 / 29.5                                       | 36.0 / 29.5 | 38.5 / 29.0                                       | 38.5 / 29.0 |
| Heat Insulation                 |                        |          | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                         |             | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                         |             |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid                 | in. (mm) | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                     |             | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                     |             |
|                                 | Gas                    | in. (mm) | ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)                                     |             | ϕ 3/8 (ϕ 9.5)                                     |             |
|                                 | Drain                  | in. (mm) | VP20 (O.D. ϕ 1-1/32 (ϕ 26) / I.D. ϕ 25/32 (ϕ 20)) |             | VP20 (O.D. ϕ 1-1/32 (ϕ 26) / I.D. ϕ 25/32 (ϕ 20)) |             |
| Drawing No.                     |                        |          | 3D080626                                          |             | 3D080627                                          |             |

## Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
 Btu/h = kW × 3412  
 cfm = m³/min × 35.3



60 Hz, 208 - 230 V

| Model                           |                        |                       | FFQ15LVJU                                         |             | FFQ18LVJU                                         |             |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                                 |                        |                       | Cooling                                           | Heating     | Cooling                                           | Heating     |
| Rated Capacity                  |                        |                       | 15 kBtu/h Class                                   |             | 18 kBtu/h Class                                   |             |
| Remote Controller               | Wired                  |                       | BRC1E72                                           |             | BRC1E72                                           |             |
|                                 | Wireless               |                       | BRC7E830                                          |             | BRC7E830                                          |             |
| Decoration Panel                | Model                  |                       | BYFQ60B8W1U                                       |             | BYFQ60B8W1U                                       |             |
|                                 | Color                  |                       | White                                             |             | White                                             |             |
|                                 | Dimensions (H x W x D) |                       | 2-5/32 x 27-9/16 x 27-9/16 (55 x 700 x 700)       |             | 2-5/32 x 27-9/16 x 27-9/16 (55 x 700 x 700)       |             |
|                                 | Weight (Mass)          | Lbs (kg)              | 6 (2.7)                                           |             | 6 (2.7)                                           |             |
| Airflow Rate                    | H                      | cfm                   | 424 (12.0)                                        | 424 (12.0)  | 530 (15.0)                                        | 530 (15.0)  |
|                                 | L                      | (m <sup>3</sup> /min) | 283 (8.0)                                         | 283 (8.0)   | 353 (10.0)                                        | 353 (10.0)  |
| Fan                             | Type                   |                       | Turbo Fan                                         |             | Turbo Fan                                         |             |
|                                 | Motor Output           | W                     | 55                                                |             | 55                                                |             |
|                                 | Speed                  | Steps                 | 2 Steps                                           |             | 2 Steps                                           |             |
| Air Direction Control           |                        |                       | Horizontal, Downward                              |             | Horizontal, Downward                              |             |
| Running Current (Rated)         |                        | A                     | 0.57                                              | 0.52        | 0.71                                              | 0.65        |
| Power Consumption (Rated)       |                        | W                     | 112                                               | 103         | 140                                               | 130         |
| Power Factor                    |                        | %                     | 86.1                                              | 86.0        | 85.5                                              | 86.2        |
| Temperature Control             |                        |                       | Microcomputer Control                             |             | Microcomputer Control                             |             |
| Dimensions (H x W x D)          |                        | in. (mm)              | 11-1/4 x 22-5/8 x 22-5/8 (285 x 575 x 575)        |             | 11-1/4 x 22-5/8 x 22-5/8 (285 x 575 x 575)        |             |
| Packaged Dimensions (H x W x D) |                        | in. (mm)              | 14-9/16 x 27-1/16 x 26-9/16 (370 x 687 x 674)     |             | 14-9/16 x 27-1/16 x 26-9/16 (370 x 687 x 674)     |             |
| Weight (Mass)                   |                        | Lbs (kg)              | 38.6 (17.5)                                       |             | 38.6 (17.5)                                       |             |
| Gross Weight (Gross Mass)       |                        | Lbs (kg)              | 46 (21)                                           |             | 46 (21)                                           |             |
| Sound Pressure Level            | H / L                  | dB(A)                 | 42.5 / 31.5                                       | 42.5 / 31.5 | 46.0 / 37.5                                       | 46.0 / 37.5 |
| Heat Insulation                 |                        |                       | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                         |             | Both Liquid and Gas Pipes                         |             |
| Piping Connections              | Liquid                 | in. (mm)              | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                     |             | ϕ 1/4 (ϕ 6.4)                                     |             |
|                                 | Gas                    | in. (mm)              | ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)                                    |             | ϕ 1/2 (ϕ 12.7)                                    |             |
|                                 | Drain                  | in. (mm)              | VP20 (O.D. ϕ 1-1/32 (ϕ 26) / I.D. ϕ 25/32 (ϕ 20)) |             | VP20 (O.D. ϕ 1-1/32 (ϕ 26) / I.D. ϕ 25/32 (ϕ 20)) |             |
| Drawing No.                     |                        |                       | 3D080628                                          |             | 3D080629                                          |             |

## Conversion Formulae

kcal/h = kW × 860  
 Btu/h = kW × 3412  
 cfm = m<sup>3</sup>/min × 35.3



# Part 3

## Printed Circuit Board Connector Wiring Diagram

|                                           |    |
|-------------------------------------------|----|
| 1. Outdoor Unit.....                      | 14 |
| 1.1 RMXS48LVJU .....                      | 14 |
| 2. Branch Provider (BP) Unit.....         | 17 |
| 2.1 BPMKS048A2U, BPMKS049A3U .....        | 17 |
| 3. Indoor Unit.....                       | 18 |
| 3.1 CTXS07LVJU .....                      | 18 |
| 3.2 CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU .....       | 20 |
| 3.3 FTXS15/18/24LVJU .....                | 22 |
| 3.4 FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU ..... | 24 |
| 3.5 FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU .....              | 26 |
| 4. Wired Remote Controller.....           | 27 |
| 4.1 BRC1E72 .....                         | 27 |
| 5. Wireless Remote Controller .....       | 28 |
| 5.1 BRC7E830 .....                        | 28 |



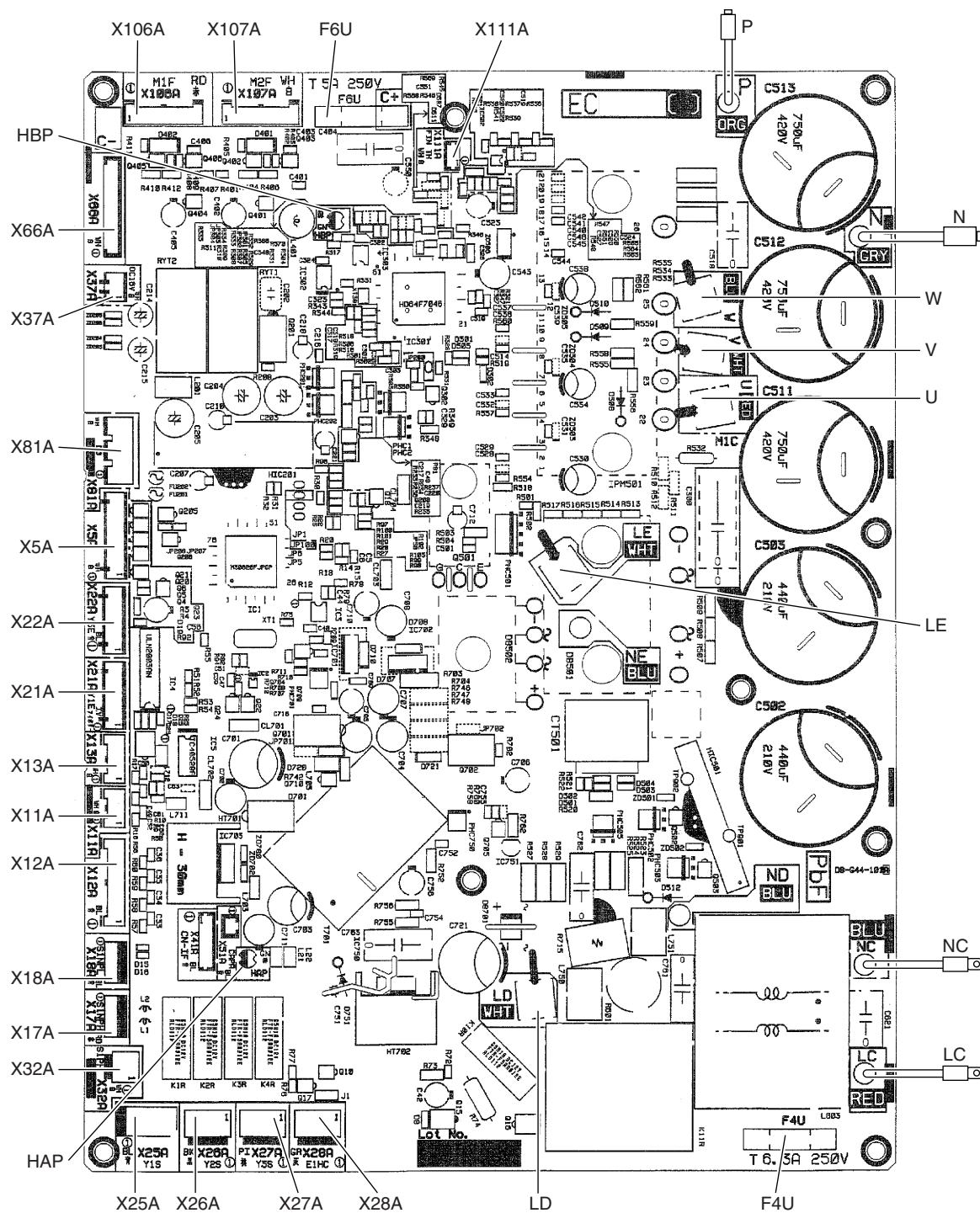
# 1. Outdoor Unit

## 1.1 RMXS48LVJU

### A1P: Main PCB

|             |                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) X5A      | Connector to service PCB (A2P)                                                                        |
| 2) X11A     | Connector for outdoor temperature thermistor                                                          |
| 3) X12A     | Connector for thermistors<br>(suction pipe 1, suction pipe 2, outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe) |
| 4) X13A     | Connector for thermistors (subcooling outlet, liquid pipe)                                            |
| 5) X17A     | Connector for high pressure sensor                                                                    |
| 6) X18A     | Connector for low pressure sensor                                                                     |
| 7) X21A     | Connector for electronic expansion valve coil (main)                                                  |
| 8) X22A     | Connector for electronic expansion valve coil (subcooling)                                            |
| 9) X25A     | Connector for solenoid valve coil (four-way valve)                                                    |
| 10) X26A    | Connector for solenoid valve coil (hot gas bypass valve)                                              |
| 11) X27A    | Connector for solenoid valve coil (unloading)                                                         |
| 12) X28A    | Connector for crankcase heater                                                                        |
| 13) X32A    | Connector for high pressure switch                                                                    |
| 14) X37A    | Connector for power supply for optional PCB (16 VDC)                                                  |
| 15) X66A    | Connector for cool / heat selector PCB (A4P)                                                          |
| 16) X81A    | Connector for terminal board (inter-unit wiring)                                                      |
| 17) X106A   | Connector for fan motor (upper)                                                                       |
| 18) X107A   | Connector for fan motor (lower)                                                                       |
| 19) X111A   | Connector for radiation fin thermistor                                                                |
| 20) LD, LE  | Connector for reactor                                                                                 |
| 21) LC, NC  | Terminal for noise filter PCB (A3P)                                                                   |
| 22) P       | Connector for capacitor C4 +                                                                          |
| 23) N       | Connector for capacitor C4 –                                                                          |
| 24) U, V, W | Connector for compressor                                                                              |
| 25) F4U     | Fuse (6.3 A / 250 V)                                                                                  |
| 26) F6U     | Fuse (5.0 A / 250 V)                                                                                  |
| 27) HAP     | Operation pilot lamp (LED for service monitor: green)                                                 |
| 28) HBP     | Inverter pilot lamp (LED for service monitor: green)                                                  |



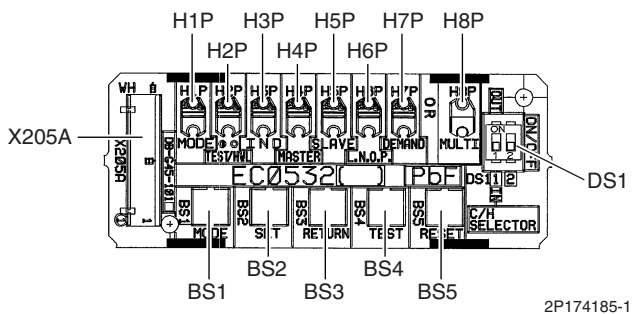


2P294944-17

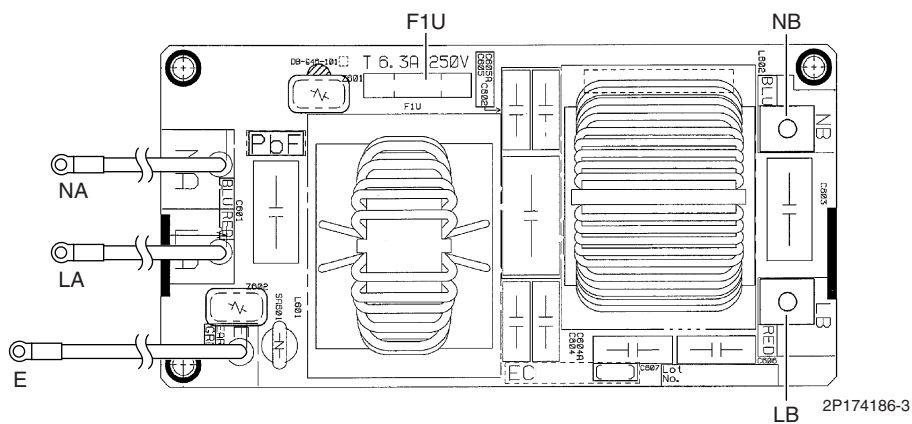


**A2P: Service PCB**

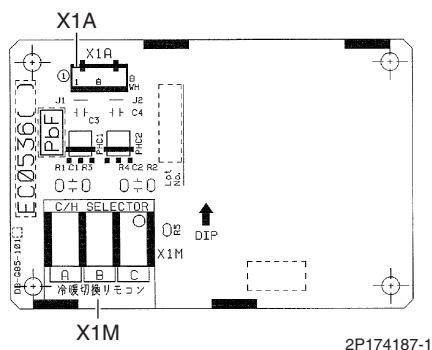
- |              |                                                     |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1) X205A     | Connector for main PCB (A1P)                        |
| 2) H1P - H8P | LED for service monitor (orange)                    |
| 3) BS1 - BS5 | Push button switch (mode, set, return, test, reset) |
| 4) DS1       | DIP switch for cool / heat selector                 |

**A3P: Noise Filter PCB**

- |           |                                            |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1) LA, NA | Terminal for terminal board (power supply) |
| 2) LB, NB | Terminal for main PCB (A1P)                |
| 3) E      | Terminal for ground                        |
| 4) F1U    | Fuse (6.3 A / 250 V)                       |

**A4P: Cool / Heat Selector PCB**

- |        |                                   |
|--------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) X1A | Connector for main PCB (A1P)      |
| 2) X1M | Terminal for cool / heat selector |





## 2. Branch Provider (BP) Unit

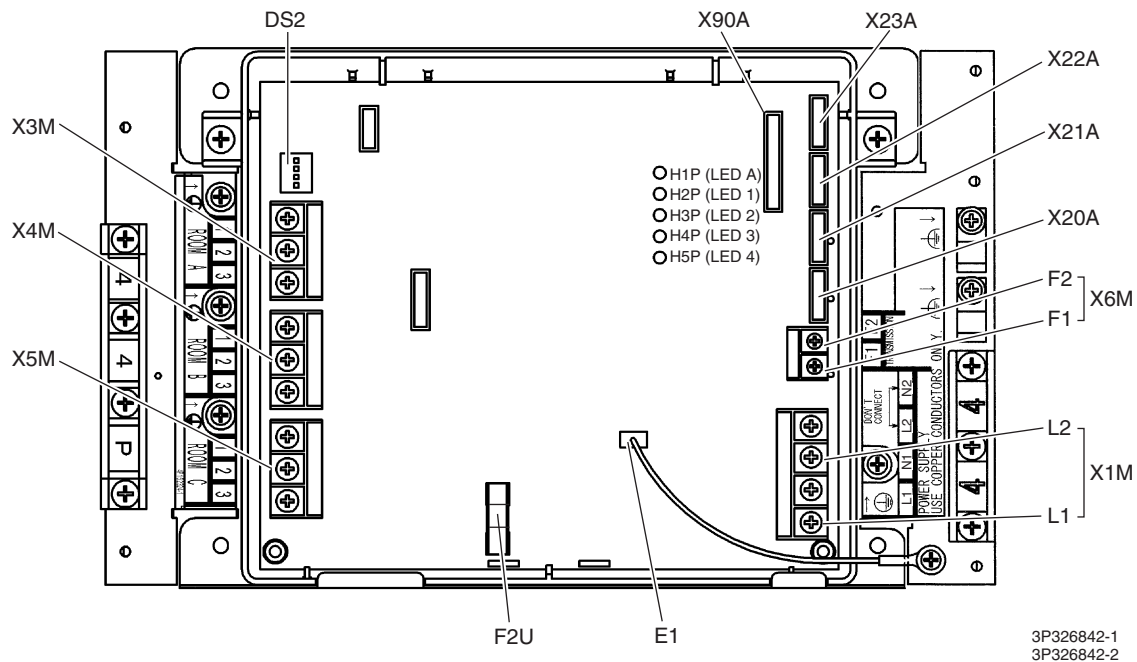
### 2.1 BPMKS048A2U, BPMKS049A3U

#### PCB Detail

|                              |                                                             |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) X20A                      | Connector for bypass electronic expansion valve             |
| 2) X21A - X23A               | Connector for electronic expansion valve for room A, B, C   |
| 3) X90A                      | Connector for thermistors                                   |
| 4) F2U                       | Fuse (3.15 A / 250 V)                                       |
| 5) X3M                       | Terminal for inter-connecting wire to room A                |
| 6) X4M                       | Terminal for inter-connecting wire to room B                |
| 7) X5M                       | Terminal for inter-connecting wire to room C                |
| 8) F1, F2 (on X6M)           | Terminal for transmission to outdoor unit or other BP units |
| 9) L1, L2 (on X1M)           | Terminal for power supply (60 Hz, 208 ~ 230 V)              |
| 10) E1                       | Terminal for ground                                         |
| 11) H1P (LED A)              | LED for service monitor (green)                             |
| 12) H2P - H5P<br>(LED 1 - 4) | LED for error indication (red)                              |
| 13) DS2                      | Dip switch                                                  |



**Note:** X23A and X5M are not used for BPMKS048A2U.



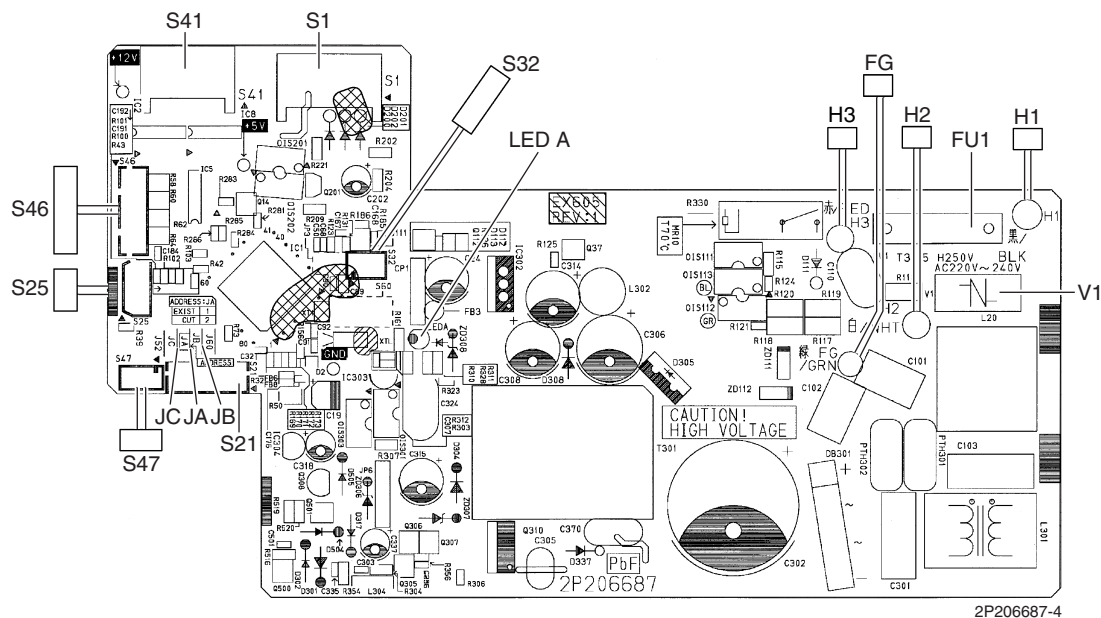


## 3. Indoor Unit

### 3.1 CTXS07LVJU

#### Control PCB

- |                   |                                                            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) S1             | Connector for DC fan motor                                 |
| 2) S21            | Connector for centralized control (HA)                     |
| 3) S25            | Connector for INTELLIGENT EYE sensor PCB                   |
| 4) S32            | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor                           |
| 5) S41            | Connector for swing motors                                 |
| 6) S46            | Connector for display PCB                                  |
| 7) S47            | Connector for signal receiver PCB                          |
| 8) H1, H2, H3, FG | Connector for terminal board                               |
| 9) JA             | Address setting jumper                                     |
|                   | * Refer to page 111 for detail.                            |
| 10) JB            | Fan speed setting when compressor stops for thermostat OFF |
| JC                | Power failure recovery function (auto-restart)             |
|                   | * Refer to page 112 for detail.                            |
| 11) LED A         | LED for service monitor (green)                            |
| 12) FU1 (F1U)     | Fuse (3.15 A, 250 V)                                       |
| 13) V1            | Varistor                                                   |



#### Caution

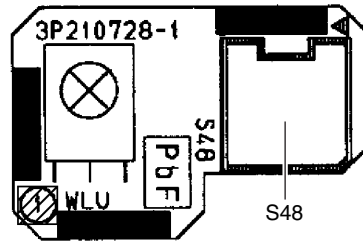
**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut the jumpers other than JA, JB, and JC.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.



## Signal Receiver PCB

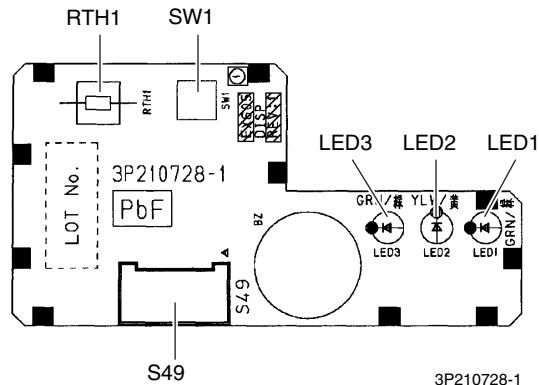
- 1) S48 Connector for control PCB



3P210728-1

## Display PCB

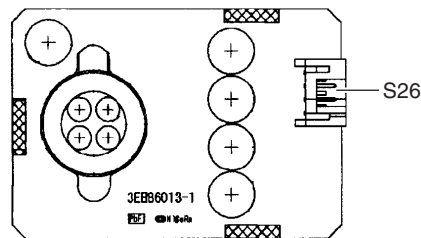
- 1) S49 Connector for control PCB  
 2) SW1 Forced operation ON/OFF button  
 3) LED1 (H1P) LED for operation (green)  
 4) LED2 (H2P) LED for timer (yellow)  
 5) LED3 (H3P) LED for INTELLIGENT EYE (green)  
 6) RTH1 (R1T) Room temperature thermistor



3P210728-1

## INTELLIGENT EYE Sensor PCB

- 1) S26 Connector for control PCB



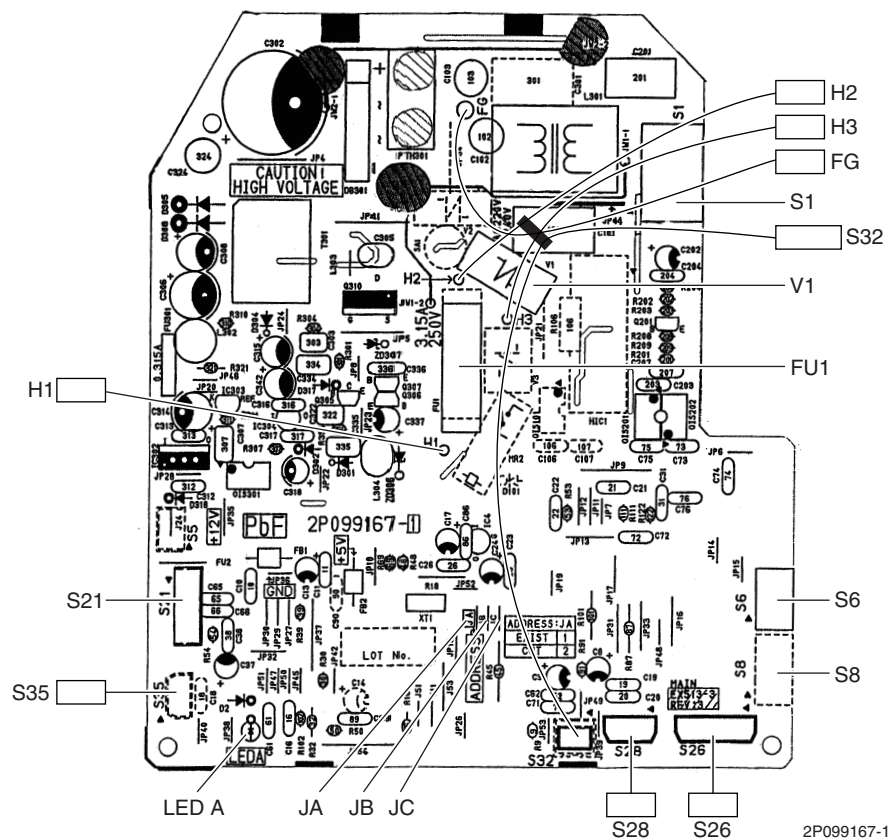
3EB86013-1



## 3.2 CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU

### Control PCB

- |                   |                                                            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) S1             | Connector for DC fan motor                                 |
| 2) S6             | Connector for swing motor (horizontal blades)              |
| 3) S8             | Connector for swing motor (vertical blades)                |
| 4) S21            | Connector for centralized control (HA)                     |
| 5) S26            | Connector for buzzer PCB                                   |
| 6) S28            | Connector for signal receiver PCB                          |
| 7) S32            | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor                           |
| 8) S35            | Connector for INTELLIGENT EYE sensor PCB                   |
| 9) H1, H2, H3, FG | Connector for terminal board                               |
| 10) JA            | Address setting jumper                                     |
|                   | * Refer to page 111 for detail.                            |
| 11) JB            | Fan speed setting when compressor stops for thermostat OFF |
| JC                | Power failure recovery function (auto-restart)             |
|                   | * Refer to page 112 for detail.                            |
| 12) LED A         | LED for service monitor (green)                            |
| 13) FU1           | Fuse (3.15 A, 250 V)                                       |
| 14) V1            | Varistor                                                   |



#### Caution

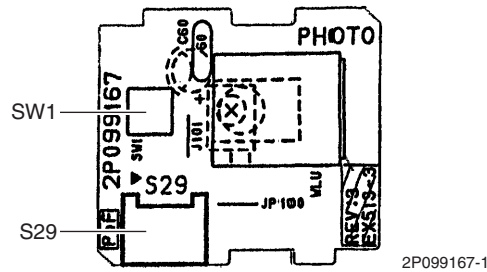
**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut the jumpers other than JA, JB, and JC.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.



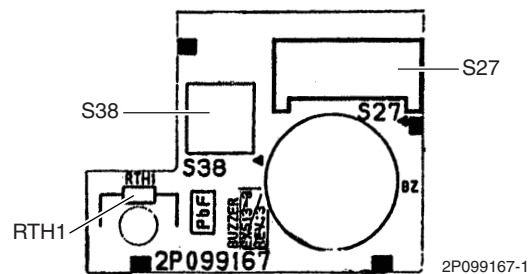
### Signal Receiver PCB

- |              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) S29       | Connector for control PCB      |
| 2) SW1 (S1W) | Forced operation ON/OFF button |



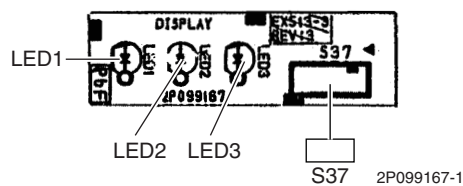
### Buzzer PCB

- |               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) S27        | Connector for control PCB   |
| 2) S38        | Connector for display PCB   |
| 3) RTH1 (R1T) | Room temperature thermistor |



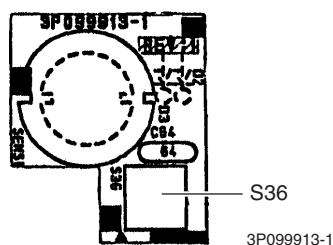
### Display PCB

- |               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) S37        | Connector for buzzer PCB           |
| 2) LED1 (H1P) | LED for operation (green)          |
| 3) LED2 (H2P) | LED for timer (yellow)             |
| 4) LED3 (H3P) | LED for HOME LEAVE operation (red) |



### INTELLIGENT EYE Sensor PCB

- |        |                           |
|--------|---------------------------|
| 1) S36 | Connector for control PCB |
|--------|---------------------------|

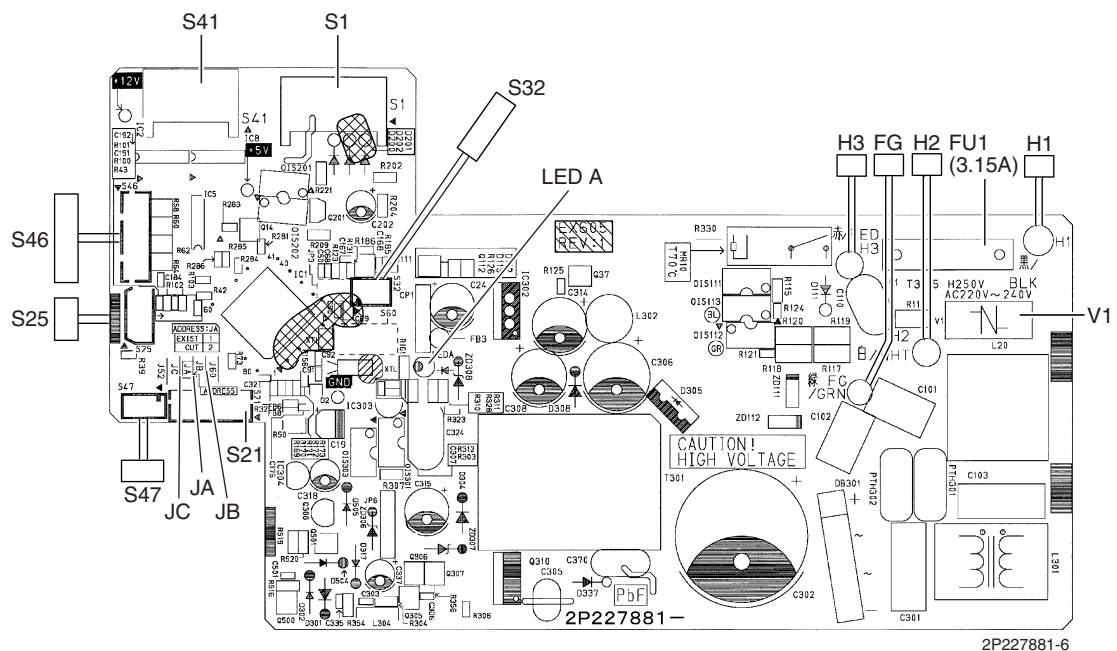




### 3.3 FTXS15/18/24LVJU

#### Control PCB

- |                   |                                                            |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) S1             | Connector for DC fan motor                                 |
| 2) S21            | Connector for centralized control (HA)                     |
| 3) S25            | Connector for INTELLIGENT EYE sensor PCB                   |
| 4) S32            | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor                           |
| 5) S41            | Connector for swing motors                                 |
| 6) S46            | Connector for display PCB                                  |
| 7) S47            | Connector for signal receiver PCB                          |
| 8) H1, H2, H3, FG | Connector for terminal board                               |
| 9) JA             | Address setting jumper                                     |
|                   | * Refer to page 111 for detail.                            |
| 10) JB            | Fan speed setting when compressor stops for thermostat OFF |
| JC                | Power failure recovery function (auto-restart)             |
|                   | * Refer to page 112 for detail.                            |
| 11) LED A         | LED for service monitor (green)                            |
| 12) FU1 (F1U)     | Fuse (3.15 A, 250 V)                                       |
| 13) V1            | Varistor                                                   |



**Caution**

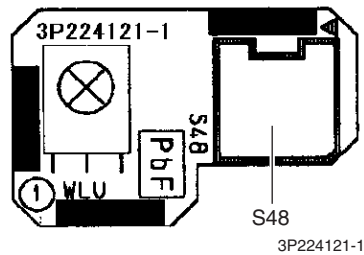
**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut the jumpers other than JA, JB, and JC.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.



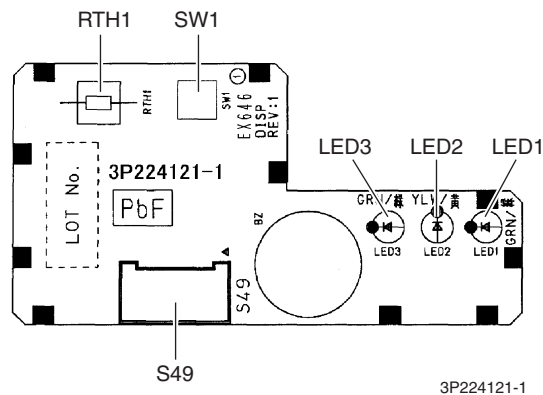
## Signal Receiver PCB

- 1) S48 Connector for control PCB



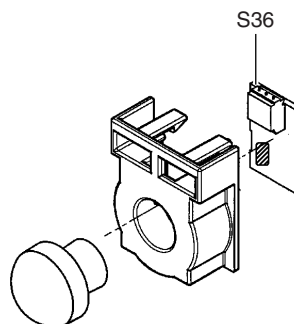
## Display PCB

- 1) S49 Connector for control PCB  
 2) SW1 Forced operation ON/OFF button  
 3) LED1 (H1P) LED for operation (green)  
 4) LED2 (H2P) LED for timer (yellow)  
 5) LED3 (H3P) LED for INTELLIGENT EYE (green)  
 6) RTH1 (R1T) Room temperature thermistor



## INTELLIGENT EYE Sensor PCB

- 1) S36 Connector for control PCB



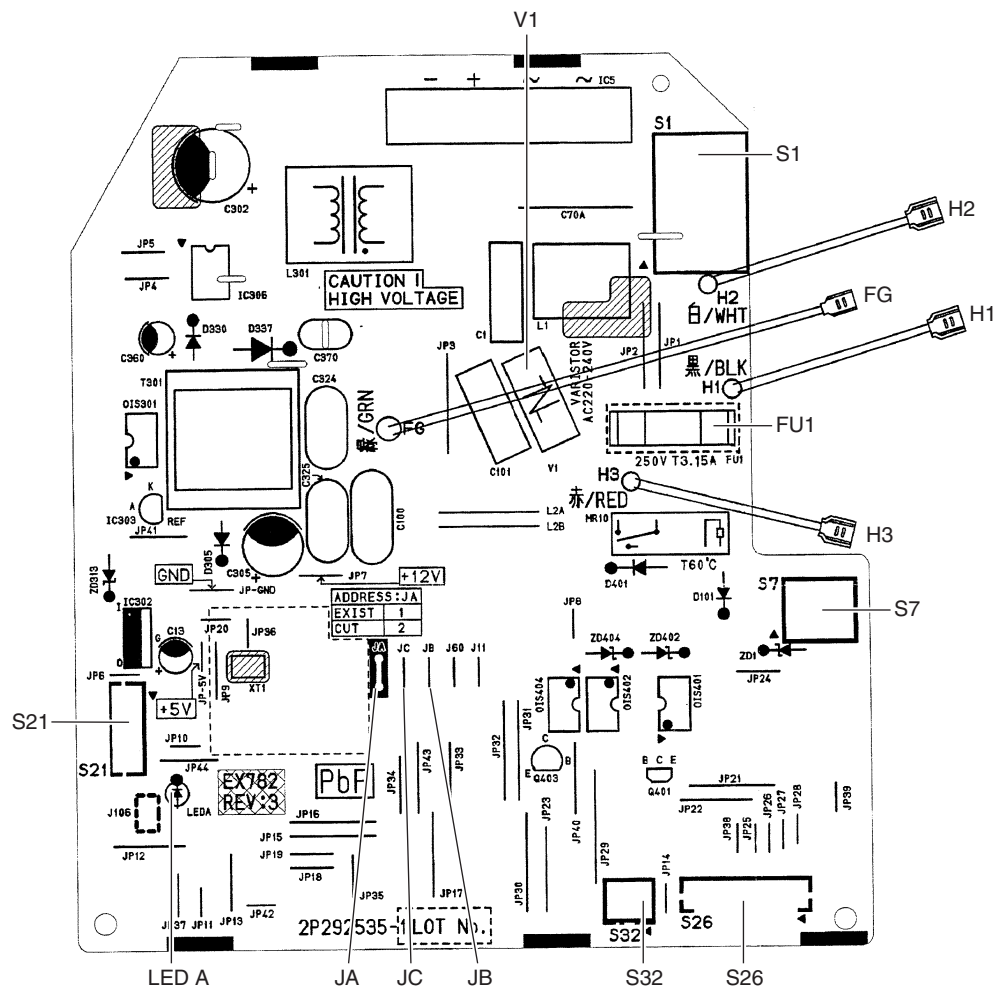
3P227885-1



## 3.4 FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU

### Control PCB

- |               |                                                            |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) S1         | Connector for AC fan motor                                 |
| 2) S7         | Connector for AC fan motor (Hall IC)                       |
| 3) S21        | Connector for centralized control (HA)                     |
| 4) S26        | Connector for display PCB                                  |
| 5) S32        | Connector for indoor heat exchanger thermistor             |
| 6) H1, H2, H3 | Connector for terminal board                               |
| 7) FG (GND)   | Connector for terminal board (ground)                      |
| 8) JA         | Address setting jumper                                     |
|               | * Refer to page 111 for detail.                            |
| 9) JB         | Fan speed setting when compressor stops for thermostat OFF |
| JC            | Power failure recovery function (auto-restart)             |
|               | * Refer to page 112 for detail.                            |
| 10) LED A     | LED for service monitor (green)                            |
| 11) FU1 (F1U) | Fuse (3.15 A, 250 V)                                       |
| 12) V1        | Varistor                                                   |



#### Caution

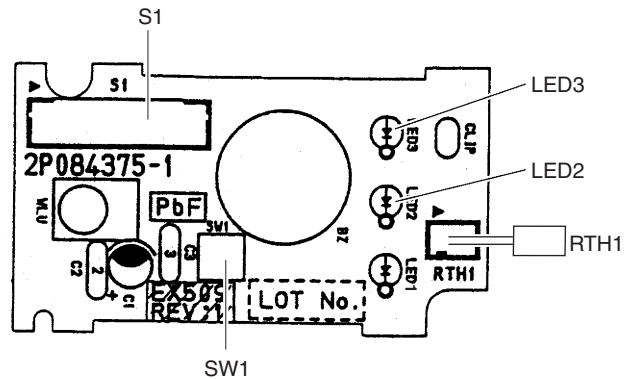
**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut the jumpers other than JA, JB, and JC.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.



## Display PCB

- |               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) S1         | Connector for control PCB      |
| 2) SW1 (S1W)  | Forced operation ON/OFF button |
| 3) LED2 (H2P) | LED for timer (yellow)         |
| 4) LED3 (H3P) | LED for operation (green)      |
| 5) RTH1 (R1T) | Room temperature thermistor    |



2P084375-1

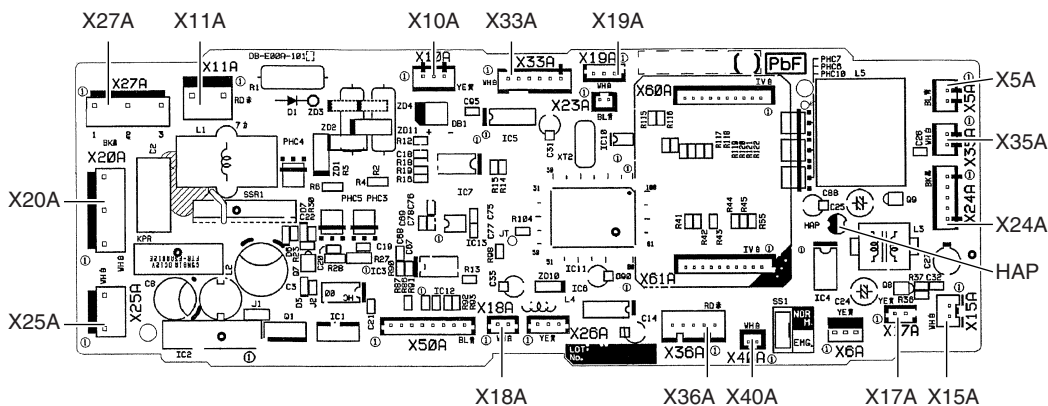
★LED 1 does not function.



## 3.5 FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU

### PCB ASSY

- |               |                                                                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1) X5A        | Connector for terminal board (for wired remote controller)                         |
| 2) X10A, X11A | Connector for transformer                                                          |
| 3) X15A       | Connector for float switch                                                         |
| 4) X17A, X18A | Connector for indoor heat exchanger thermistor                                     |
| 5) X19A       | Connector for room temperature thermistor                                          |
| 6) X20A       | Connector for fan motor                                                            |
| 7) X24A       | Connector for signal receiver PCB<br>(when the wireless remote controller is used) |
| 8) X25A       | Connector for drain pump motor                                                     |
| 9) X27A       | Connector for terminal board (for inter-unit wiring)                               |
| 10) X33A      | Connector for wiring adaptor PCB (option)                                          |
| 11) X35A      | Connector for group control adaptor (option)                                       |
| 12) X36A      | Connector for swing motor                                                          |
| 13) X40A      | Connector for ON/OFF input from outside (option)                                   |
| 14) HAP       | LED for service monitor (green)                                                    |



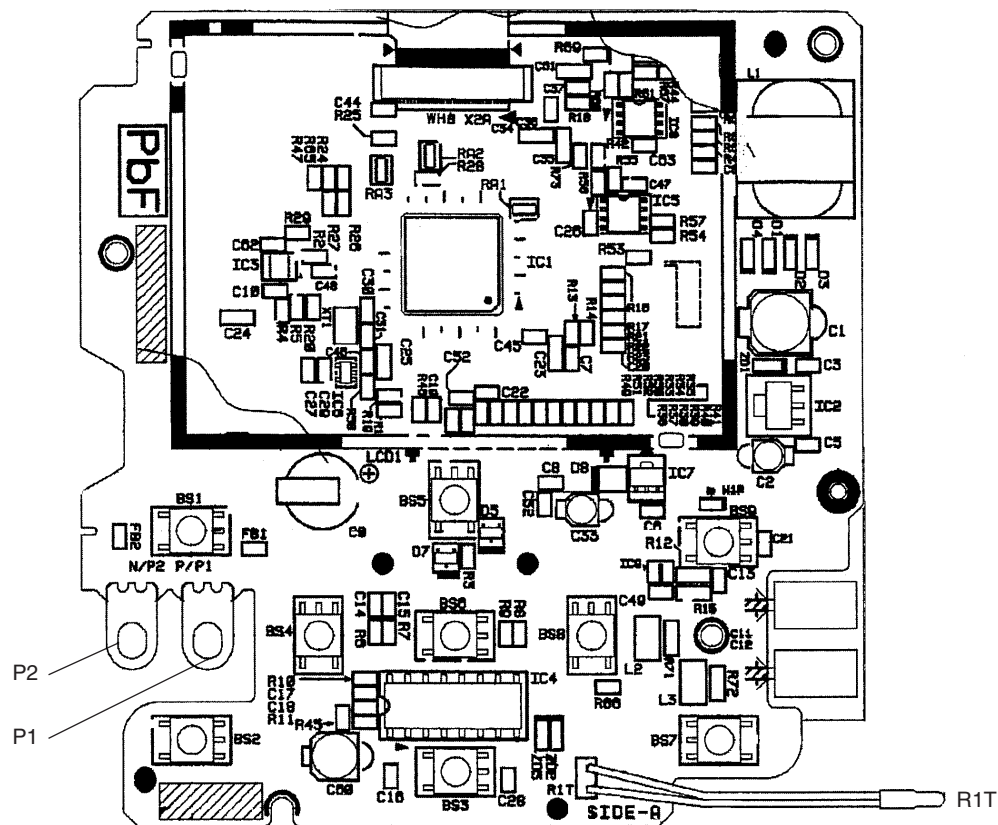


## 4. Wired Remote Controller

### 4.1 BRC1E72

#### PCB ASSY

- |           |                             |
|-----------|-----------------------------|
| 1) P1, P2 | Terminal for indoor unit    |
| 2) R1T    | Room temperature thermistor |



2P298037-3

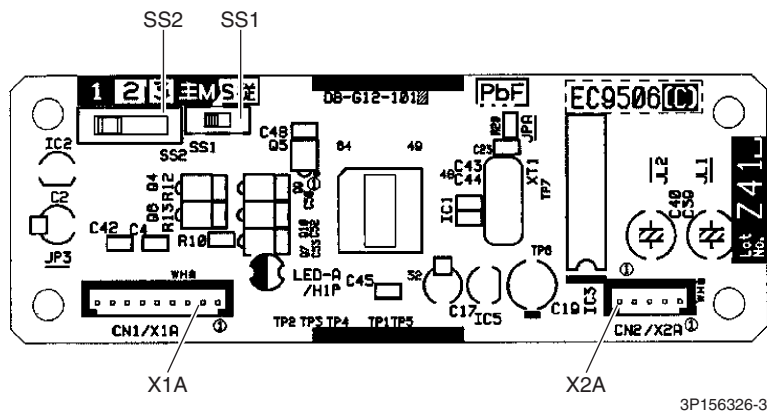


## 5. Wireless Remote Controller

### 5.1 BRC7E830

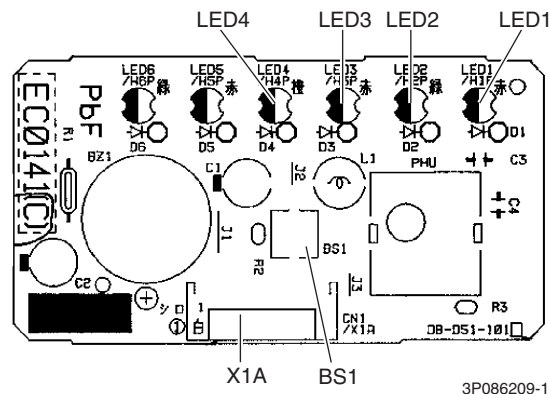
#### Signal Receiver PCB

- |        |                               |
|--------|-------------------------------|
| 1) X1A | Connector for display PCB     |
| 2) X2A | Connector for indoor unit PCB |
| 3) SS1 | MAIN / SUB setting switch     |
| SS2    | Address setting switch        |
- \* Refer to page 117 for detail.



#### Display PCB

- |               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| 1) X1A        | Connector for signal receiver PCB  |
| 2) BS1        | Forced operation ON/OFF button     |
| 3) LED1 (H1P) | LED for operation (red)            |
| 4) LED2 (H2P) | LED for timer (green)              |
| 5) LED3 (H3P) | LED for filter cleaning sign (red) |
| 6) LED4 (H4P) | LED for defrost operation (orange) |



★ LED5 and LED6 do not function.



# Part 4

# Refrigerant Circuit

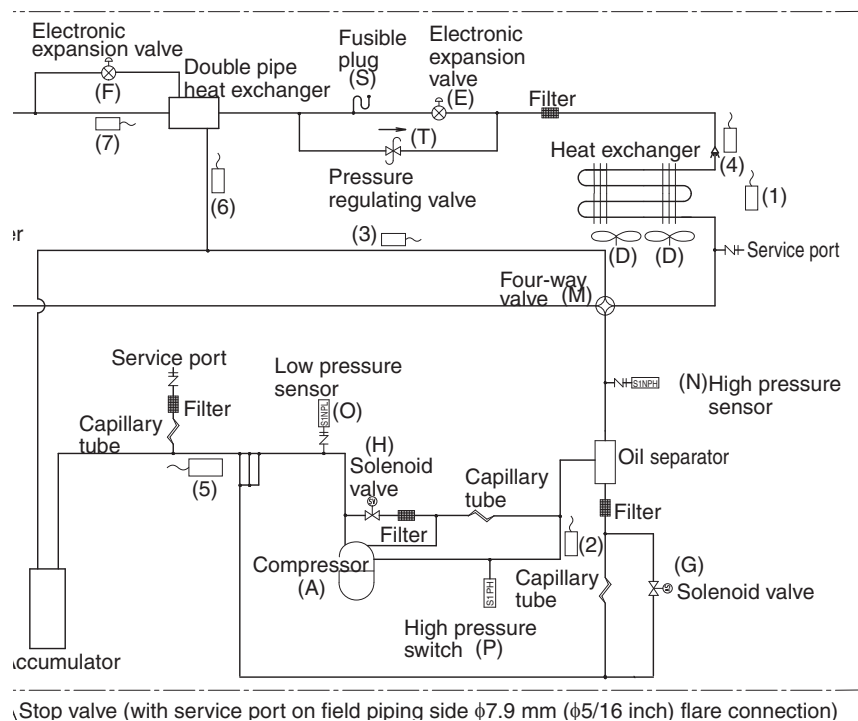
- 1. Refrigerant Circuit ..... 31
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit ..... 31
  - 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 32
- 2. Functional Parts Layout ..... 33
- 3. Refrigerant Flow for Each Operation Mode..... 35
  - 3.1 Cooling Operation ..... 35
  - 3.2 Heating Operation ..... 36
  - 3.3 Cooling Oil Return Operation ..... 37
  - 3.4 Heating Oil Return Operation & Defrost Operation ..... 38



# 1. Refrigerant Circuit

## 1.1 Outdoor Unit

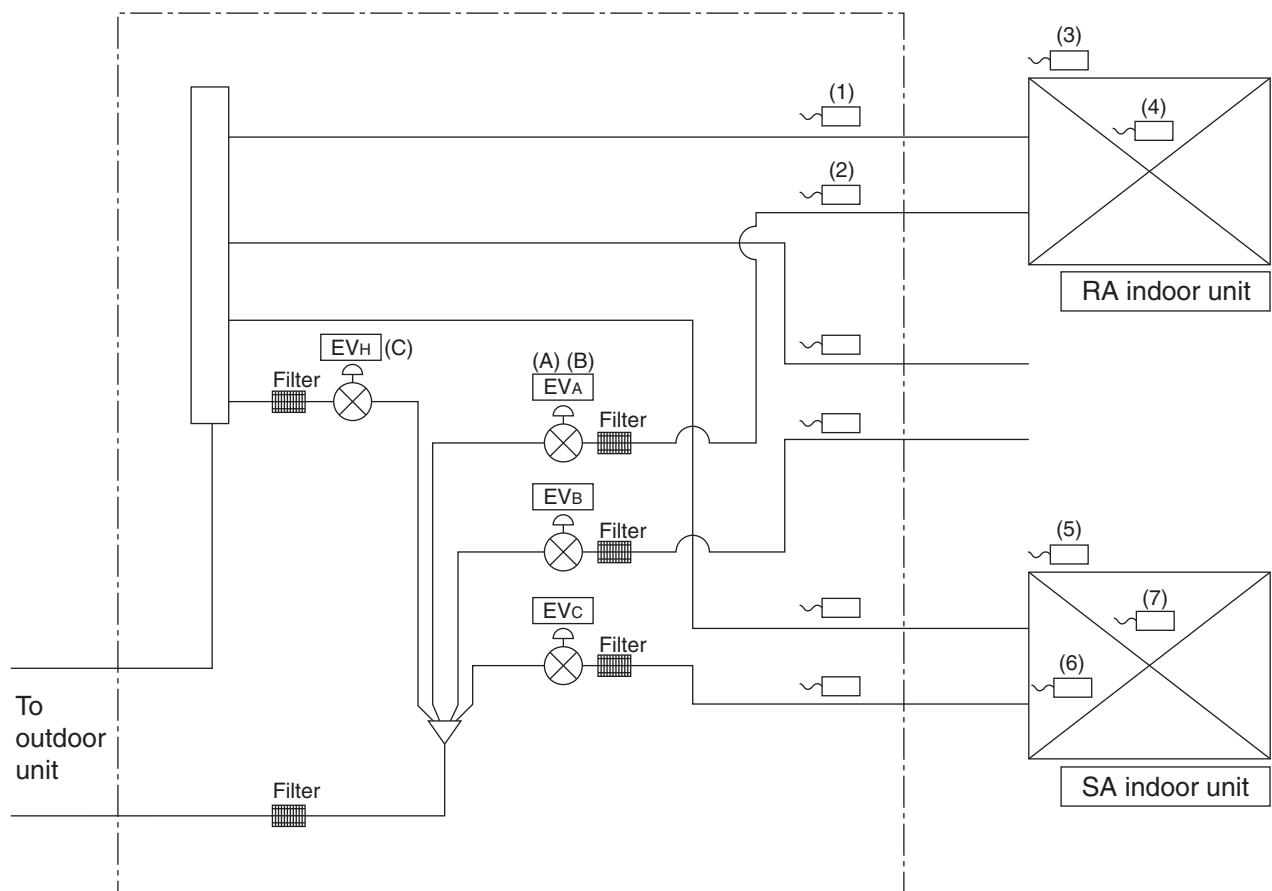
| No. in diagram | Symbol     | Name                                                   | Major Function                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A              | M1C        | Compressor motor                                       | The compressor is operated on frequencies between 36 Hz and 195 Hz by using the inverter. (31 steps)                                                                                                                    |
| D              | M1F<br>M2F | Fan motor                                              | Since the system is of air heat exchanging type, the fan is operated at 8-step rotation speed by using the inverter.                                                                                                    |
| E              | Y1E        | Electronic expansion valve (Main)                      | While in heating operation, PI control is applied to keep the outlet superheated degree of the air heat exchanger constant.                                                                                             |
| F              | Y3E        | Electronic expansion valve (Subcooling)                | PI control is applied to keep the outlet superheated degree of the subcooling heat exchanger constant.                                                                                                                  |
| G              | Y2S        | Solenoid valve (Hot gas bypass)                        | Prevents the low pressure from temporary falling.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| H              | Y3S        | Solenoid valve (Unload circuit)                        | Unloading operation of the compressor.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| M              | Y1S        | Four-way valve                                         | Switches the operation mode between cooling and heating.                                                                                                                                                                |
| N              | S1NPH      | High pressure sensor                                   | Detects high pressure.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| O              | S1NPL      | Low pressure sensor                                    | Detects low pressure.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| P              | S1PH       | High pressure switch                                   | In order to prevent the increase of high pressure when an error occurs, this switch is activated at high pressure of 4.0 MPa (1338 ftAq) or more to stop the compressor operation.                                      |
| S              | —          | Fusible plug                                           | In order to prevent the increase of pressure when abnormal heating is caused by fire, etc., the fusible part of the plug melts at a temperature of 70 ~ 75°C (158 ~ 167°F) to release the pressure into the atmosphere. |
| T              | —          | Pressure regulating valve (Receiver to discharge pipe) | This valve opens at a pressure of 4.0 MPa (1338 ftAq) to prevent pressure increase, thus protecting functional parts from damage due to the increase of pressure in transportation or storage.                          |
| 1              | R1T        | Thermistor (Outdoor temperature: Ta)                   | Detects outdoor temperature, correct discharge pipe temperature, etc.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2              | R2T        | Thermistor (Discharge pipe: Tdi)                       | Detects discharge pipe temperature, for temperature protection control of the compressor, etc.                                                                                                                          |
| 3              | R3T        | Thermistor (Suction pipe 1: Ts1)                       | Detects suction pipe temperature, keep the suction superheated degree constant in heating operation, etc.                                                                                                               |
| 4              | R4T        | Thermistor (Outdoor heat exchanger: Tb)                | Detects liquid pipe temperature of the outdoor heat exchanger, determine defrosting operation, etc.                                                                                                                     |
| 5              | R5T        | Thermistor (Suction pipe 2: Ts2)                       | Calculates the internal temperature of the compressor etc.                                                                                                                                                              |
| 6              | R6T        | Thermistor (Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe: Tsh)   | Controls the subcooling electronic expansion valve.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 7              | R7T        | Thermistor (Liquid pipe: Tl)                           | Detects refrigerant overcharge in check operation, etc.                                                                                                                                                                 |





## 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit

| No. in diagram | Symbol    | Name                                                | Major Function                                                                                            |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A              | EVU       | Electronic expansion valve (for operating room)     | Among EVA, EVB and EVC, the electronic expansion valve of operating room is called EVU.                   |
| B              | EVT       | Electronic expansion valve (for non-operating room) | Among EVA, EVB and EVC, the electronic expansion valve of stopping room is called EVT.                    |
| C              | EVH       | Electronic expansion valve (Bypass)                 | Adjusts the refrigerant circulating rate of the indoor unit during oil-return operation.                  |
| 1              | DGA ~ DGC | Thermistor (Gas pipe)                               | During cooling operation, carries out the indoor unit SH control and cooling gas pipe isothermal control. |
| 2              | DLA ~ DLC | Thermistor (Liquid pipe)                            | During heating operation, carries out the indoor unit SC control.                                         |
| 3              | R1T       | Thermistor (Room temperature)                       | Detects room air temperature and instruct the capacity supply to the BP unit.                             |
| 4              | R2T       | Thermistor (Indoor heat exchanger)                  | Detects heat exchanger temperature and carry out various protection functions and controls of capacity.   |
| 5              | R1T       | Thermistor (Room temperature)                       | Detects room air temperature and instruct the capacity supply to the BP unit.                             |
| 6              | R2T       | Thermistor (Indoor heat exchanger 1: liquid pipe)   | Detects heat exchanger temperature and carry out various protection functions and controls of capacity.   |
| 7              | R3T       | Thermistor (Indoor heat exchanger 2)                | Detects heat exchanger temperature and carry out various protection functions and controls of capacity.   |

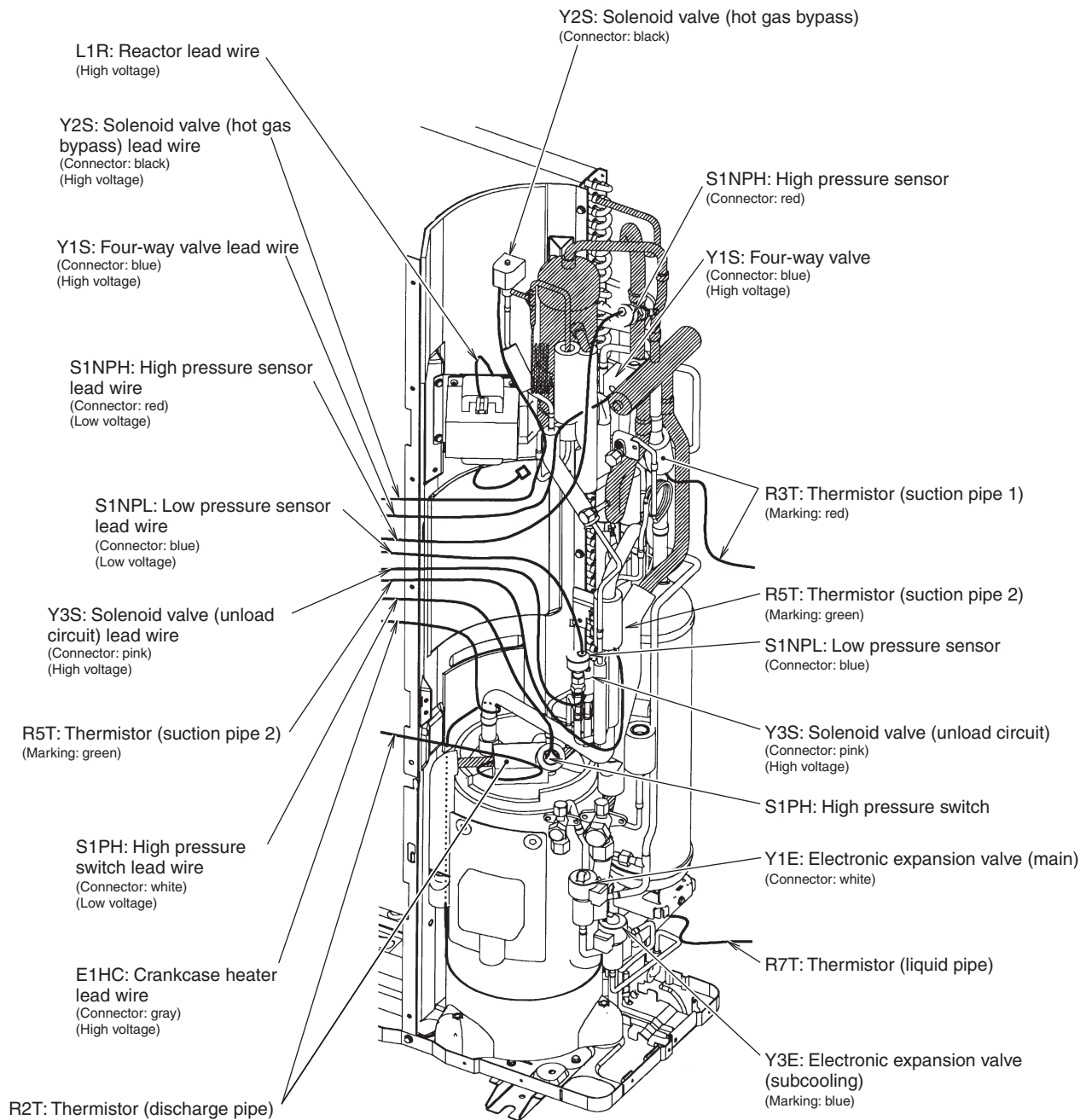


(Q0403)



## 2. Functional Parts Layout

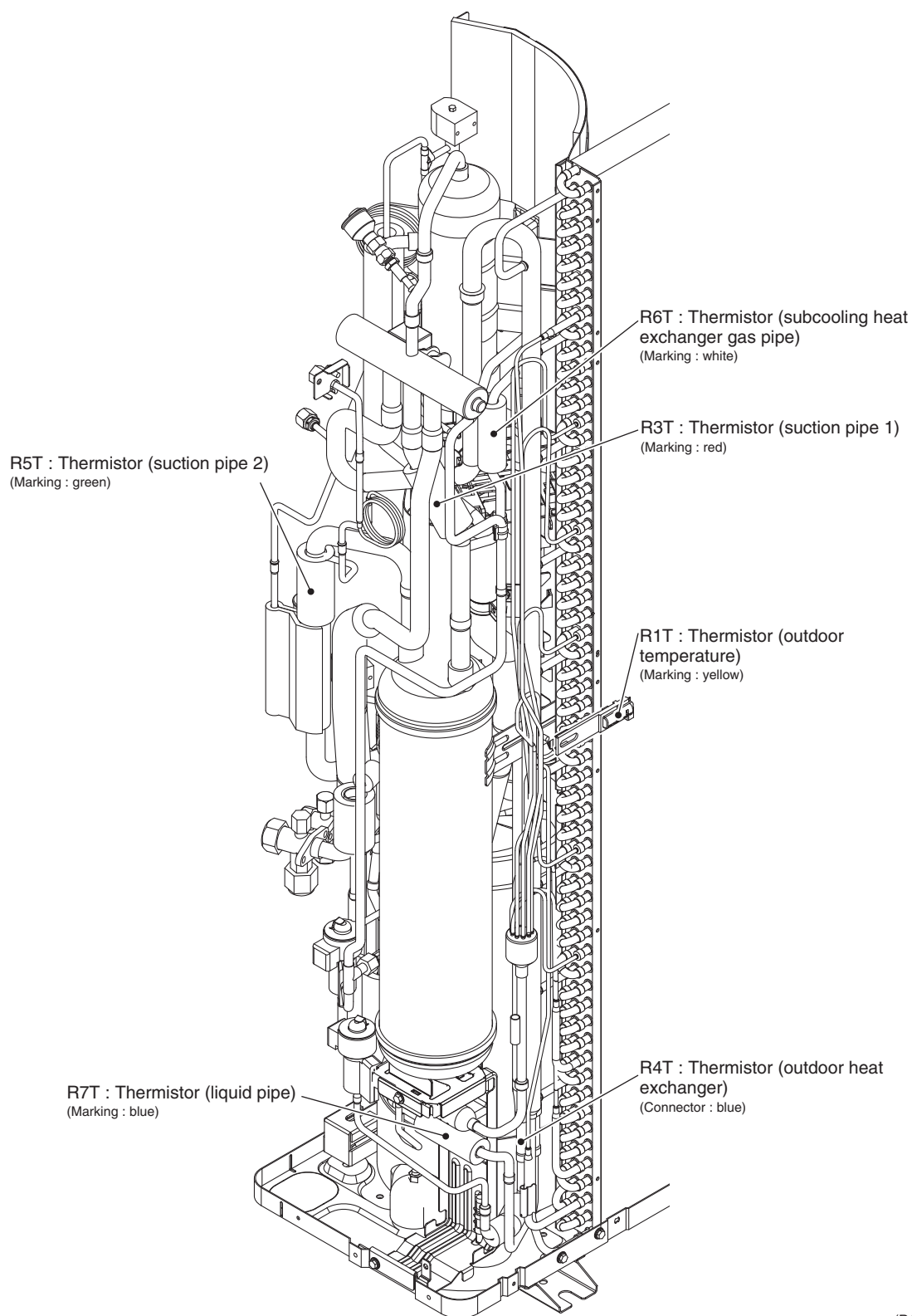
### Front View



(R17939)

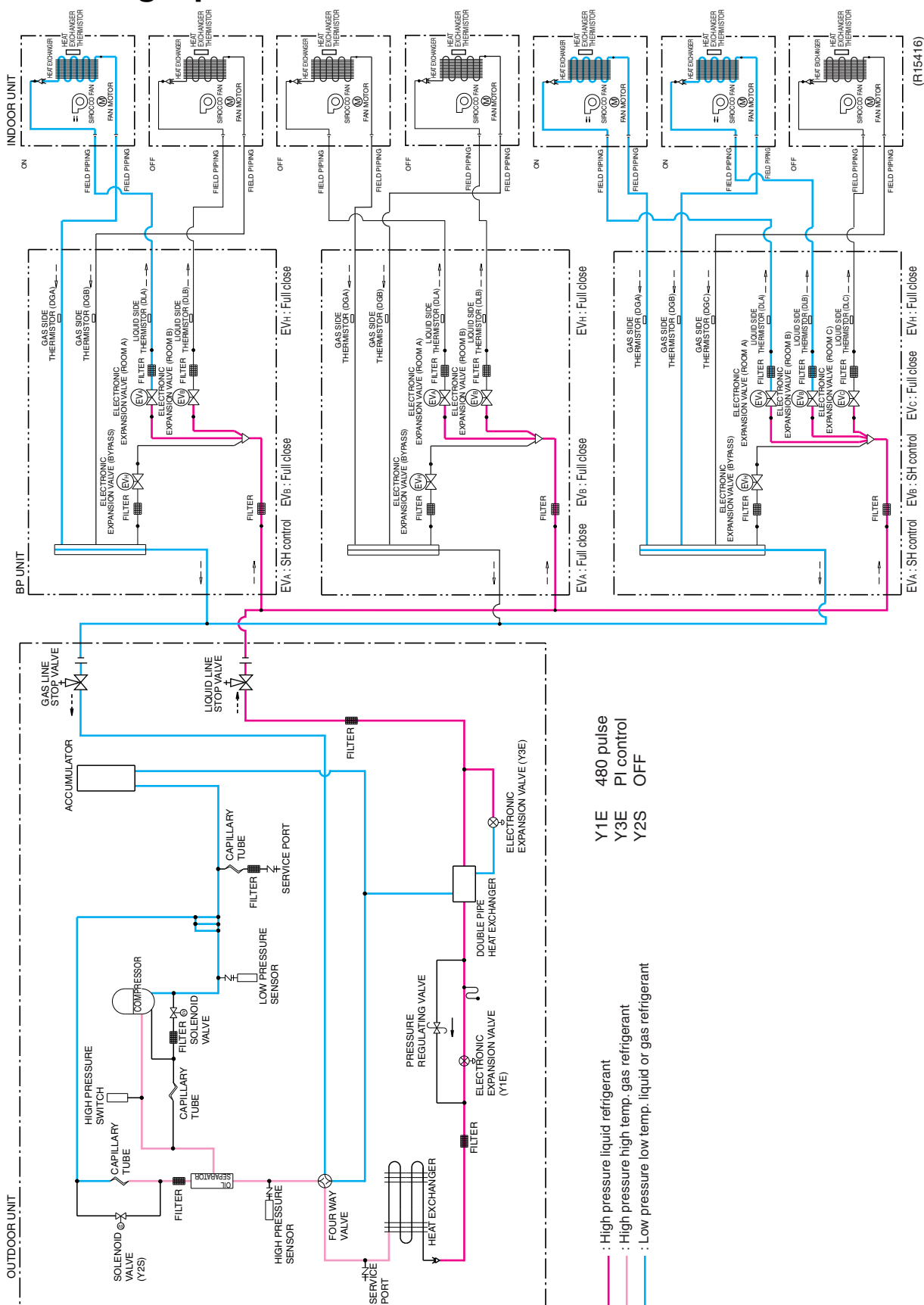


## Back View



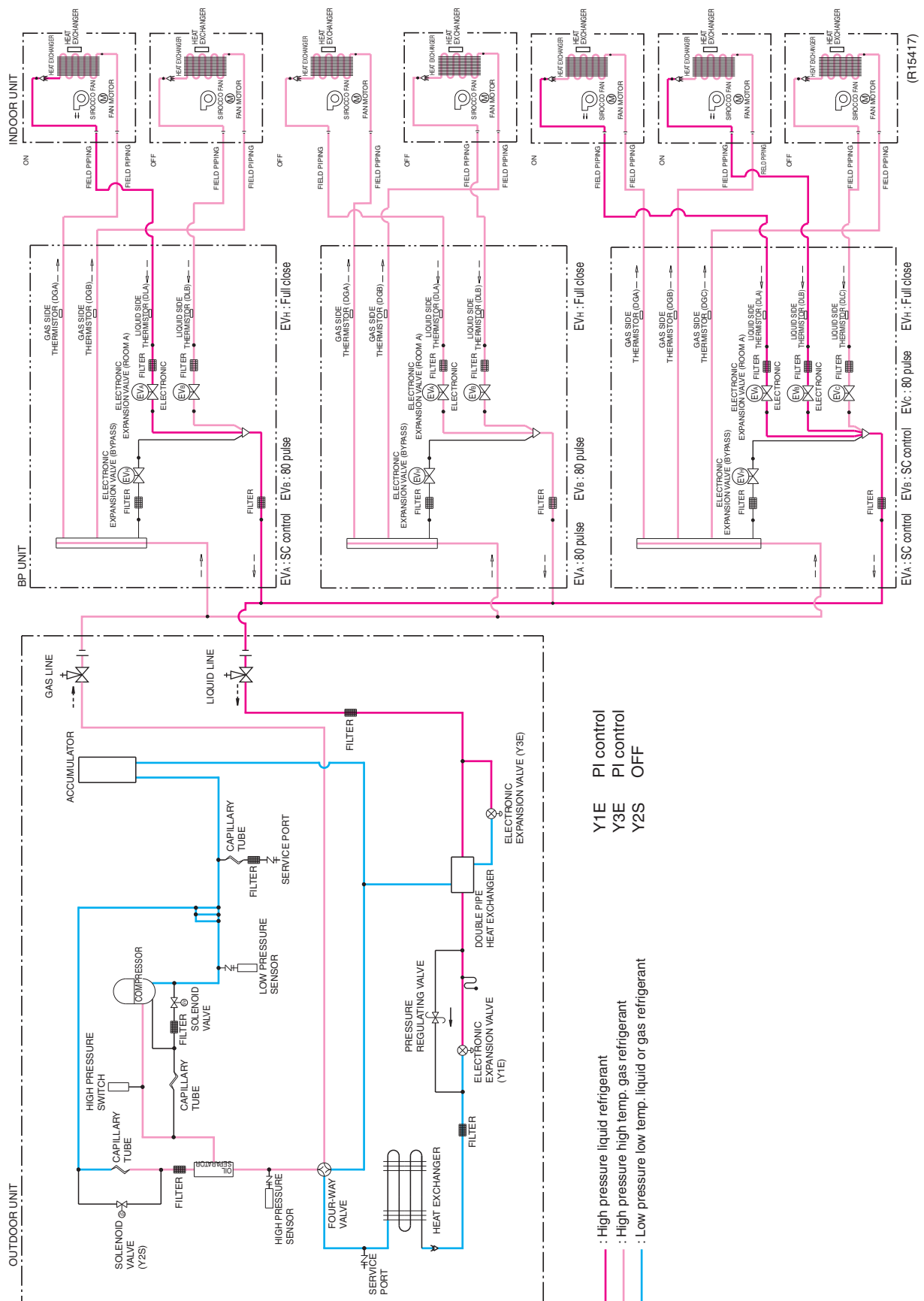


### 3.1 Cooling Operation





## 3.2 Heating Operation

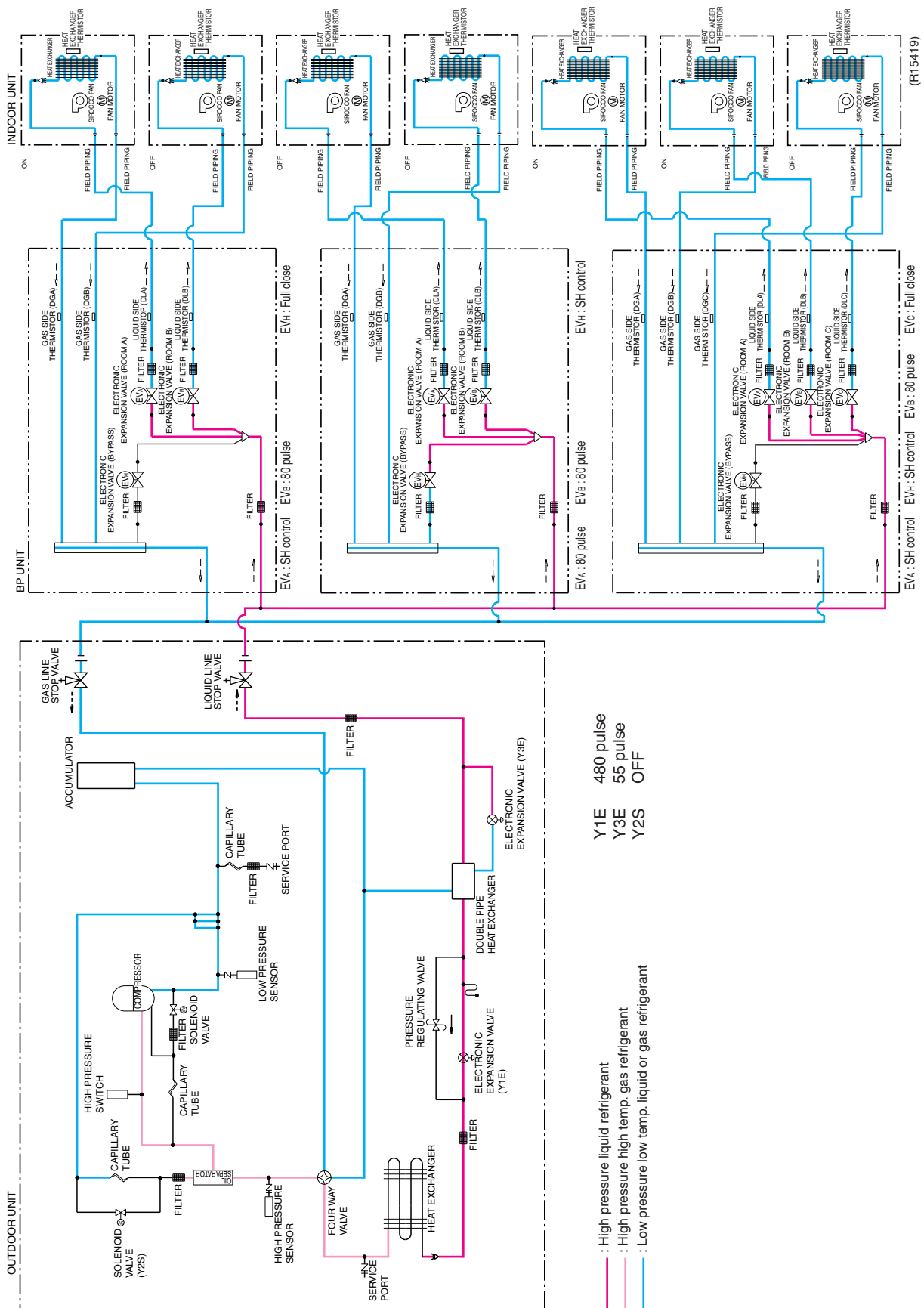








### 3.4 Heating Oil Return Operation & Defrost Operation





# Part 5

## Function

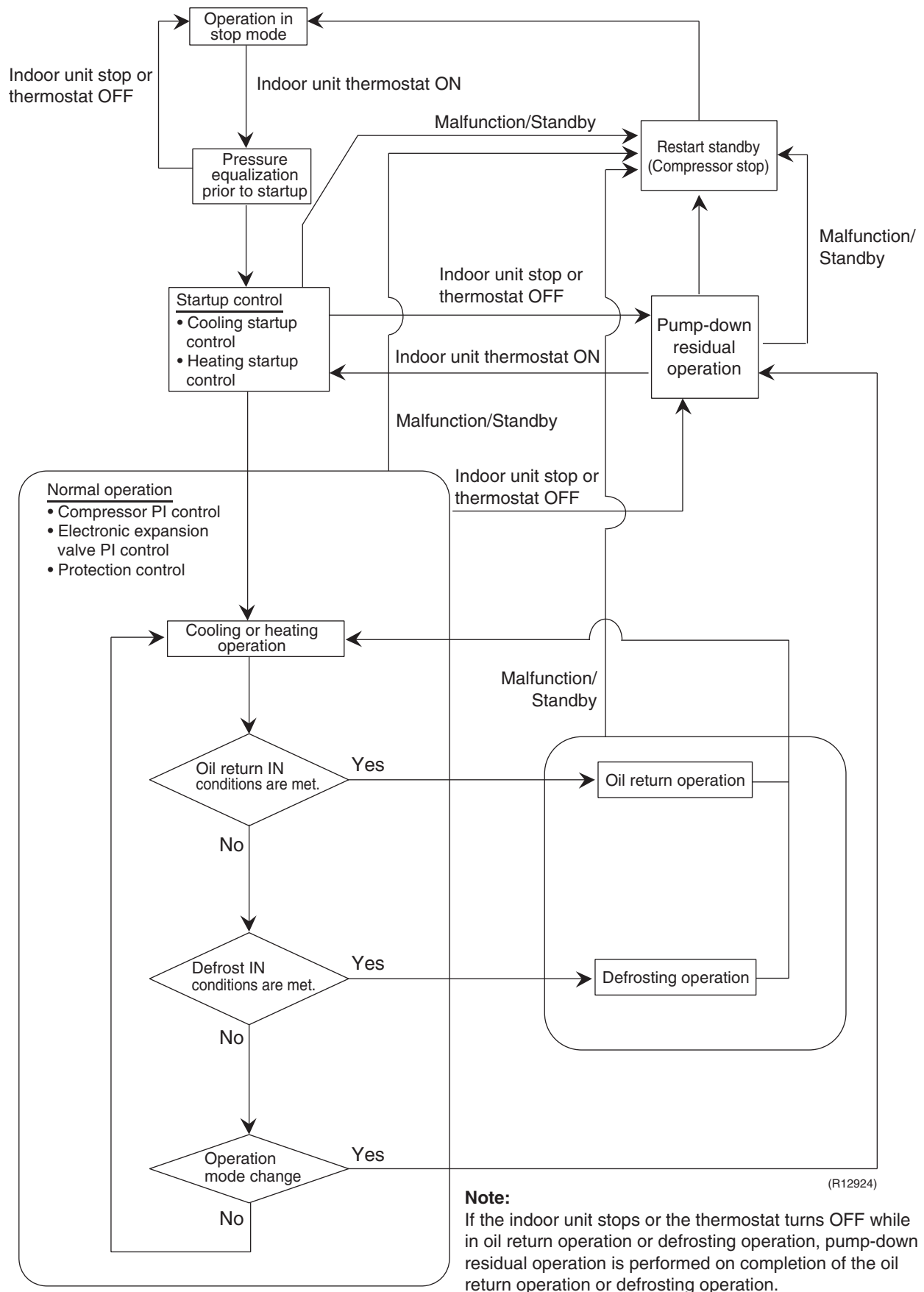
|                                                                       |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 1. Operation Mode .....                                               | 39 |
| 2. Basic Control.....                                                 | 40 |
| 2.1 Normal Operation .....                                            | 40 |
| 2.2 Compressor PI Control.....                                        | 40 |
| 2.3 Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control.....                        | 41 |
| 2.4 Cooling Operation Fan Control.....                                | 42 |
| 3. Special Control.....                                               | 43 |
| 3.1 Startup Control .....                                             | 43 |
| 3.2 Oil Return Operation .....                                        | 44 |
| 3.3 Defrosting Operation .....                                        | 46 |
| 3.4 Pump-down Residual Operation .....                                | 46 |
| 3.5 Restart Standby.....                                              | 47 |
| 3.6 Stopping Operation .....                                          | 47 |
| 4. Protection Control .....                                           | 48 |
| 4.1 High Pressure Protection Control.....                             | 48 |
| 4.2 Low Pressure Protection Control.....                              | 49 |
| 4.3 Discharge Pipe Temperature Protection Control.....                | 50 |
| 4.4 Inverter Protection Control .....                                 | 51 |
| 4.5 Freeze-up Protection Control .....                                | 52 |
| 4.6 Dew Condensation Prevention Control .....                         | 53 |
| 5. Other Control.....                                                 | 54 |
| 5.1 Demand Control .....                                              | 54 |
| 5.2 Heating Operation Prohibition Control.....                        | 54 |
| 6. Branch Provider (BP) Unit Control .....                            | 55 |
| 6.1 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Command Conversion .....                | 55 |
| 6.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Electronic Expansion Valve Control..... | 56 |
| 6.3 SH Control in Cooling Operation .....                             | 58 |
| 6.4 SC Control in Heating Operation.....                              | 59 |
| 6.5 Heat Exchanger Isothermal Control in Heating Operation .....      | 59 |
| 7. Function of CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series.....                     | 60 |
| 7.1 Temperature Control .....                                         | 60 |
| 7.2 Airflow Direction Control (CTXS/FTXS Series Only) .....           | 61 |
| 7.3 Fan Speed Control for Indoor Unit .....                           | 63 |
| 7.4 Program Dry Operation .....                                       | 64 |
| 7.5 Automatic Operation.....                                          | 65 |
| 7.6 Thermostat Control.....                                           | 66 |
| 7.7 NIGHT SET Mode .....                                              | 67 |
| 7.8 ECONO Operation .....                                             | 67 |
| 7.9 HOME LEAVE Operation .....                                        | 68 |
| 7.10 INTELLIGENT EYE Operation .....                                  | 70 |
| 7.11 Inverter POWERFUL Operation .....                                | 71 |



|                                                        |    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 7.12 Clock Setting .....                               | 72 |
| 7.13 WEEKLY TIMER Operation .....                      | 73 |
| 7.14 Other Functions.....                              | 79 |
| 8. Function of FFQ Series .....                        | 80 |
| 8.1 Drain Pump Control.....                            | 80 |
| 8.2 Thermostat Sensor in Remote Controller .....       | 82 |
| 8.3 Freeze Prevention Control .....                    | 84 |
| 8.4 Hot Start Control (In Heating Operation Only)..... | 84 |



# 1. Operation Mode





## 2. Basic Control

### 2.1 Normal Operation

#### <Cooling Operation>

| Actuator                                    | Operation             | Remarks                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | Compressor PI control | Used for high pressure protection control, low pressure protection control, discharge pipe temperature protection control, and compressor operating frequency upper limit control with inverter protection control. |
| Outdoor fan                                 | Cooling fan control   | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | OFF                   | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 480 pulse             | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | PI control            | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                   | This valve turns on with low pressure protection control.                                                                                                                                                           |

#### <Heating Operation>

| Actuator                                    | Operation             | Remarks                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | Compressor PI control | Used for high pressure protection control, low pressure protection control, discharge pipe temperature protection control, and compressor operating frequency upper limit control with inverter protection control. |
| Outdoor fan                                 | STEP 7 or 8           | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | ON                    | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | PI control            | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | PI control            | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                   | This valve turns on with low pressure protection control.                                                                                                                                                           |

★Heating operation does not start when the outdoor temperature is above 24°CDB (75.2°FDB).

### 2.2 Compressor PI Control

The PI control of the compressor capacity is carried out to keep  $T_e$  constant during cooling operation and  $T_c$  constant during heating operation to ensure stable unit performance.

#### <Cooling operation>

Controls compressor capacity to adjust  $T_e$  to achieve target value ( $T_{eS}$ ).

##### **$T_e$ setting (Set in setting mode 2)**

| L               | M (Normal)<br>: factory setting | H               |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 3°C<br>(37.4°F) | 6°C<br>(42.8°F)                 | 9°C<br>(48.2°F) |

$T_e$ : Low pressure equivalent saturation temperature  
 $T_{eS}$ : Target  $T_e$  value  
 (Varies depending on  $T_e$  setting, operating frequency, etc.)

#### <Heating operation>

Controls compressor capacity to adjust  $T_c$  to achieve target value ( $T_{cS}$ ).

##### **$T_c$ setting (Set in setting mode 2)**

| L                 | M (Normal)<br>: factory setting | H                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| 43°C<br>(109.4°F) | 46°C<br>(114.8°F)               | 49°C<br>(120.2°F) |

$T_c$ : High pressure equivalent saturation temperature  
 $T_{cS}$ : Target  $T_c$  value  
 (Varies depending on  $T_c$  setting, operating frequency, etc.)



| Step | Full-load | Unload  |
|------|-----------|---------|
| 1    |           | 36.0 Hz |
| 2    |           | 39.0 Hz |
| 3    |           | 43.0 Hz |
| 4    |           | 47.0 Hz |
| 5    |           | 52.0 Hz |
| 6    | 52.0 Hz   | 57.0 Hz |
| 7    | 57.0 Hz   | 64.0 Hz |
| 8    | 62.0 Hz   | 71.0 Hz |
| 9    | 68.0 Hz   | 78.0 Hz |
| 10   | 74.0 Hz   |         |
| 11   | 80.0 Hz   |         |
| 12   | 86.0 Hz   |         |
| 13   | 92.0 Hz   |         |
| 14   | 98.0 Hz   |         |
| 15   | 104.0 Hz  |         |

| Step | Full-load | Unload |
|------|-----------|--------|
| 16   | 110.0 Hz  |        |
| 17   | 116.0 Hz  |        |
| 18   | 122.0 Hz  |        |
| 19   | 128.0 Hz  |        |
| 20   | 134.0 Hz  |        |
| 21   | 140.0 Hz  |        |
| 22   | 146.0 Hz  |        |
| 23   | 152.0 Hz  |        |
| 24   | 158.0 Hz  |        |
| 25   | 164.0 Hz  |        |
| 26   | 170.0 Hz  |        |
| 27   | 175.0 Hz  |        |
| 28   | 180.0 Hz  |        |
| 29   | 185.0 Hz  |        |
| 30   | 190.0 Hz  |        |
| 31   | 195.0 Hz  |        |

\*Compressors may operate in a pattern other than those listed in the above tables subject to the operating conditions. Selection of full load operation to/from unload operation is made with the unload circuit solenoid valve (Y3S). The full load operation is performed with the Y3S set to OFF, while the unload operation is performed with the Y3S set to ON.

## 2.3 Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control

### Main Electronic Expansion Valve

The PI control of the main electronic expansion valve (Y1E) is carried out to keep the evaporator outlet superheated degree (SH) constant during heating operation in order to make maximum use of the outdoor unit heat exchanger (evaporator).

$$SH = Ts1 - Te$$

SH: Evaporator outlet superheated degree

Ts1: Suction pipe temperature detected by thermistor R3T

Te: Low pressure equivalent saturation temperature

The optimum initial value of the evaporator outlet superheated degree is 3°C (5.4°F), but varies depending on the discharge pipe superheated degree of the inverter compressor.

### Subcooling Electronic Expansion Valve

The PI control of the subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) is carried out to keep the evaporator outlet superheated degree (SH) of the gas pipe in order to make maximum use of the subcooling heat exchanger.

$$SH = Tsh - Te$$

SH: Evaporator outlet superheated degree

Tsh: Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe temperature detected by thermistor R6T

Te: Low pressure equivalent saturation temperature



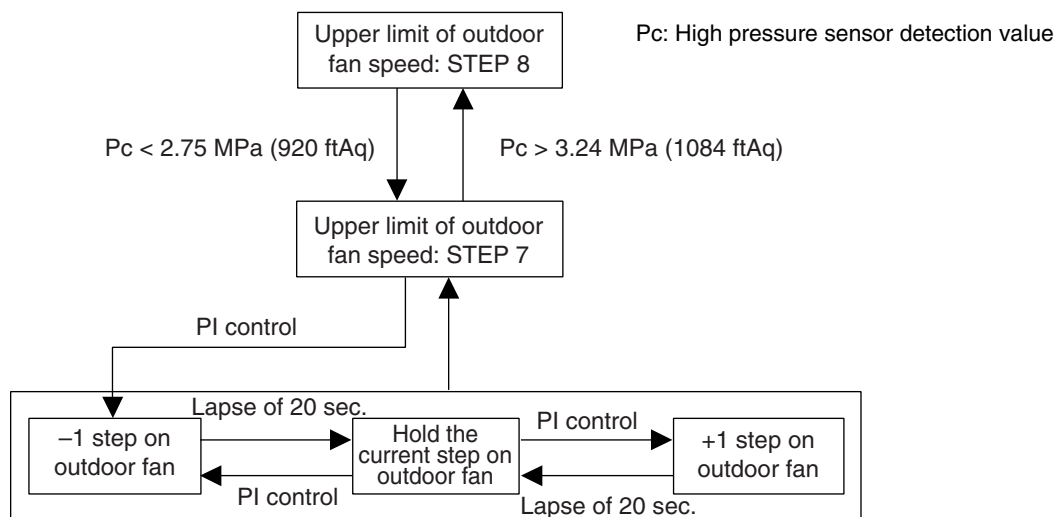
## 2.4 Cooling Operation Fan Control

In cooling operation with low outdoor temperature, cooling operation fan control provides the adequate amount of circulating air with liquid pressure secured by high pressure control using the outdoor fan.

When the outdoor temperature is  $\geq 20^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $68^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), the fan operates in STEP 7 or higher.

When the outdoor temperature is  $\geq 18^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $64.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it operates in STEP 5 or higher.

When the outdoor temperature is  $\geq 12^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $53.6^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it operates in STEP 1 or higher.



(R19078)

Fan Steps

| Cooling | M1F     | M2F     |
|---------|---------|---------|
| STEP 0  | 0 rpm   | 0 rpm   |
| STEP 1  | 250 rpm | 0 rpm   |
| STEP 2  | 400 rpm | 0 rpm   |
| STEP 3  | 285 rpm | 250 rpm |
| STEP 4  | 360 rpm | 325 rpm |
| STEP 5  | 445 rpm | 410 rpm |
| STEP 6  | 580 rpm | 545 rpm |
| STEP 7  | 715 rpm | 680 rpm |
| STEP 8  | 850 rpm | 815 rpm |



## 3. Special Control

### 3.1 Startup Control

Startup control equalizes the pressure in the front and back of the compressor before the startup of the compressor, thus reducing startup loads. Furthermore, the inverter is turned ON to charge the capacitor.

To avoid stresses to the compressor due to oil return operation, etc. after startup, the following control is made and the position of the four way valve is also determined. To position the four-way valve, the master and slave units simultaneously start up.

#### 3.1.1 Startup Control in Cooling Operation

| Thermostat ON                               |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                             | Pressure equalization control before startup                                                                                     | Startup control                                                                            |                                                                                                                                |
|                                             |                                                                                                                                  | STEP 1                                                                                     | STEP 2                                                                                                                         |
| Compressor                                  | 0 Hz                                                                                                                             | 57 Hz Unload                                                                               | 57 Hz Unload<br>+2 steps / 20 sec.<br>(until $P_c - P_e > 0.39$ MPa (130 ftAq))                                                |
| Outdoor fan                                 | STEP 7                                                                                                                           | $T_a < 20^\circ\text{C}$ : OFF<br>(68°F)<br>$T_a \geq 20^\circ\text{C}$ : STEP 4<br>(68°F) | +1 step / 15 sec.<br>(when $P_c > 2.16$ MPa (723 ftAq))<br>-1 step / 15 sec.<br>(when $P_c < 1.77$ MPa (592 ftAq))             |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | Holds                                                                                                                            | OFF                                                                                        | OFF                                                                                                                            |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 0 pulse                                                                                                                          | 480 pulse                                                                                  | 480 pulse                                                                                                                      |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                                                                                                                          | 0 pulse                                                                                    | 0 pulse                                                                                                                        |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                                                                                                                              | OFF                                                                                        | OFF                                                                                                                            |
| Ending conditions                           | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><math>P_c - P_e &lt; 0.3</math> MPa (100 ftAq)</li><li>A lapse of 1 to 5 min.</li></ul> | A lapse of 10 sec.                                                                         | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>A lapse of 130 sec.</li><li><math>P_c - P_e &gt; 0.39</math> MPa (130 ftAq)</li></ul> |

#### 3.1.2 Startup Control in Heating Operation

| Thermostat ON                               |                                                                                                                                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                             | Pressure equalization control before startup                                                                                     | Startup control    |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                             |                                                                                                                                  | STEP 1             | STEP 2                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Compressor                                  | 0 Hz                                                                                                                             | 57 Hz Unload       | 57 Hz Unload<br>+2 steps / 20 sec.<br>(until $P_c - P_e > 0.39$ MPa (130 ftAq))                                                                                                  |
| Outdoor fan                                 | From starting<br>~ 1 min. : STEP 7<br>1 ~ 3 min. : STEP 3<br>3 ~ 5 min. : OFF                                                    | STEP 8             | STEP 8                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | Holds                                                                                                                            | ON                 | ON                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 0 pulse                                                                                                                          | 0 pulse            | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                                                                                                                          | 0 pulse            | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                                                                                                                              | OFF                | OFF                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Ending conditions                           | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><math>P_c - P_e &lt; 0.3</math> MPa (100 ftAq)</li><li>A lapse of 1 to 5 min.</li></ul> | A lapse of 10 sec. | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>A lapse of 130 sec.</li><li><math>P_c &gt; 2.70</math> MPa (903 ftAq)</li><li><math>P_c - P_e &gt; 0.39</math> MPa (130 ftAq)</li></ul> |



## 3.2 Oil Return Operation

In order to prevent the compressor from running out of oil, the oil return operation is conducted to recover oil flown out from the compressor to the system side.

### 3.2.1 Oil Return Operation in Cooling Operation

#### <Conditions to start>

Oil return operation in cooling operation is started referring to the following conditions:

- Cumulative oil feed rate
- Timer setting (Make this setting so as to start the oil return operation when the initial cumulative operating time reaches 2 hours after power supply is turned ON and then every 8 hours.)

The cumulative oil feed rate is computed from Tc, Te, and compressor loads.

| Outdoor unit actuator                       | Oil return preparation operation          | Oil return operation                                                                                                            | Post-oil-return operation                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | Take the current step as the upper limit. | 52 Hz Full load (→ Low pressure constant control)                                                                               | Same as in oil return operation mode.                                                                                                                                                      |
| Outdoor fan                                 | Fan control (Normal cooling)              | Fan control (Normal cooling)                                                                                                    | Fan control (Normal cooling)                                                                                                                                                               |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | OFF                                       | OFF                                                                                                                             | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 480 pulse                                 | 480 pulse                                                                                                                       | 480 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | SH control                                | 0 pulse                                                                                                                         | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                                       | OFF                                                                                                                             | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Ending conditions                           | 20 sec.                                   | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3 min.</li> <li>• <math>T_{s1} - T_e &lt; 5^{\circ}\text{C}</math> (9°F)</li> </ul> | or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3 min.</li> <li>• <math>P_e &lt; 0.6 \text{ MPa}</math> (201 ftAq)</li> <li>• <math>HT_{di} &gt; 110^{\circ}\text{C}</math> (230°F)</li> </ul> |

| Indoor unit actuator                  |                     | Cooling oil return operation |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Indoor fan                            | Thermostat ON unit  | Remote controller setting    |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | OFF                          |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | Remote controller setting    |
| Electronic expansion valve of BP unit | Thermostat ON unit  | SH control                   |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | 77 pulse                     |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | SH control                   |



### 3.2.2 Oil Return Operation in Heating Operation

#### <Conditions to start>

Oil return operation in heating operation is started referring to the following conditions:

- Integrated amount of displaced oil
- Timer setting (Make this setting so as to start the oil return operation when the initial cumulative operating time reaches 2 hours after power supply is turned ON and then every 8 hours.)

The integrated amount of displaced oil is derived from Tc, Te, and the compressor load.

| Outdoor unit actuator                       | Oil return preparation operation | Oil return operation                                                                                                                                                                               | Post-oil-return operation                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | Upper limit control              | 140 Hz Full load                                                                                                                                                                                   | 36 Hz Unload<br>+2 steps / 20 sec.<br>(until $P_c - P_e > 0.4 \text{ MPa}$ )<br>(134 ftAq)                                              |
| Outdoor fan                                 | STEP 8                           | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                                | STEP 8                                                                                                                                  |
| Four way valve (Y1S)                        | ON                               | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                                | ON                                                                                                                                      |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | SH control                       | 480 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                          | 55 pulse                                                                                                                                |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                          | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                 |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                              | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                                | OFF                                                                                                                                     |
| Ending conditions                           | 2 min.                           | or $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \bullet 12 \text{ min.} \\ \bullet Ts1 - Te < 5^\circ\text{C} \quad (9^\circ\text{F}) \\ \bullet Tb > 11^\circ\text{C} \quad (51.8^\circ\text{F}) \end{array} \right]$ | or $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \bullet 160 \text{ sec.} \\ \bullet Pc - Pe > 0.4 \text{ MPa} \quad (134 \text{ ftAq}) \end{array} \right]$ |

\*From the preparation to the oil return operation, and from the oil return operation to the post-oil-return operation, the compressor stops for 1 minute to reduce noise on changing of the four way valve.

| Indoor unit actuator                  |                     | Heating oil return operation |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| Indoor fan                            | Thermostat ON unit  | OFF                          |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | OFF                          |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | OFF                          |
| Electronic expansion valve of BP unit | Thermostat ON unit  | SH control                   |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | 80 pulse                     |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | SH control                   |



### 3.3 Defrosting Operation

The defrosting operation is performed to solve frost on the outdoor unit heat exchanger when heating, in order to recover heating capacity.

**<Conditions to start>**

The defrosting operation is started referring to the following conditions:

- Outdoor heat exchanger heat transfer co-efficiency
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tb)
- Timer (2 hours at the minimum)

Outdoor heat-exchange co-efficiency is derived from Tc, Te, and the compressor load.

| Outdoor unit actuator                       | Defrost preparation operation | Defrost operation                                                                                                                                                                                             | Post defrost operation                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | Upper limit control           | 140 Hz Full load                                                                                                                                                                                              | 36 Hz Unload<br>+2 steps / 20 sec.<br>(until $P_c - P_e > 0.4 \text{ MPa}$ )<br>(134 ftAq)                                                   |
| Outdoor fan                                 | STEP 8                        | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                                           | STEP 8                                                                                                                                       |
| Four way valve (Y1S)                        | ON                            | OFF                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ON                                                                                                                                           |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | SH control                    | 480 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                                     | 55 pulse                                                                                                                                     |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                       | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 0 pulse                                                                                                                                      |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                           | ON                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ON                                                                                                                                           |
| Ending conditions                           | 2 min.                        | or $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \bullet 15 \text{ min.} \\ \bullet T_b > 11^\circ\text{C} \\ \quad (51.8^\circ\text{F}) \\ \bullet T_{s1} - T_e < 5^\circ\text{C} \\ \quad (9^\circ\text{F}) \end{array} \right]$ | or $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \bullet 160 \text{ sec.} \\ \bullet P_c - P_e > 0.4 \text{ MPa} \\ \quad (134 \text{ ftAq}) \end{array} \right]$ |

\*From the preparation to the defrost operation, and from the defrost operation to the post defrost operation, the compressor stops for 1 minute to reduce noise on changing of the four-way valve.

| Indoor unit actuator                  |                     | Operation  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|------------|
| Indoor fan                            | Thermostat ON unit  | OFF        |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | OFF        |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | OFF        |
| Electronic expansion valve of BP unit | Thermostat ON unit  | SH control |
|                                       | Stopping unit       | 80 pulse   |
|                                       | Thermostat OFF unit | SH control |

### 3.4 Pump-down Residual Operation

**Outline**

When activating the compressor, if there is liquid refrigerant remaining in the heat exchanger, the liquid refrigerant enters into the compressor and dilutes the oil inside resulting in a decrease of lubricity. Therefore, the pump-down residual operation is performed to collect the refrigerant in the heat exchanger when the compressor is down.



### 3.4.1 Pump-down Residual Operation in Cooling Operation

| Actuator                                    | Pump-down residual operation |                 |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                             | Step 1                       | Step 2          |
| Compressor                                  | 124 Hz Full load             | 52 Hz Full load |
| Outdoor fan                                 | Fan control                  | Fan control     |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | OFF                          | OFF             |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 480 pulse                    | 240 pulse       |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                      | 0 pulse         |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                          | OFF             |
| Ending conditions                           | 2 sec.                       | 2 sec.          |

### 3.4.2 Pump-down Residual Operation in Heating Operation

| Actuator                                    | Pump-down residual operation |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | 124 Hz Full load             |
| Outdoor fan                                 | STEP 7                       |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | ON                           |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 0 pulse                      |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                      |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                          |
| Ending conditions                           | 4 sec.                       |

## 3.5 Restart Standby

Restart is prohibited to prevent frequent ON/OFF and to equalize pressure in the refrigerant system.

| Actuator                                    | Operation                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | OFF                                               |
| Outdoor fan                                 | Ta > 30°C (86°F): STEP 4<br>Ta ≤ 30°C (86°F): OFF |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | Former condition remains.                         |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 0 pulse                                           |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                                           |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                                               |
| Ending conditions                           | 2 min.                                            |

## 3.6 Stopping Operation

Operation of the actuator is cleared up when the system is down.

| Actuator                                    | Operation                            |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Compressor                                  | OFF                                  |
| Outdoor fan                                 | OFF                                  |
| Four-way valve (Y1S)                        | Former condition remains.            |
| Main electronic expansion valve (Y1E)       | 0 pulse                              |
| Subcooling electronic expansion valve (Y3E) | 0 pulse                              |
| Hot gas bypass solenoid valve (Y2S)         | OFF                                  |
| Ending conditions                           | Indoor unit thermostat is turned ON. |



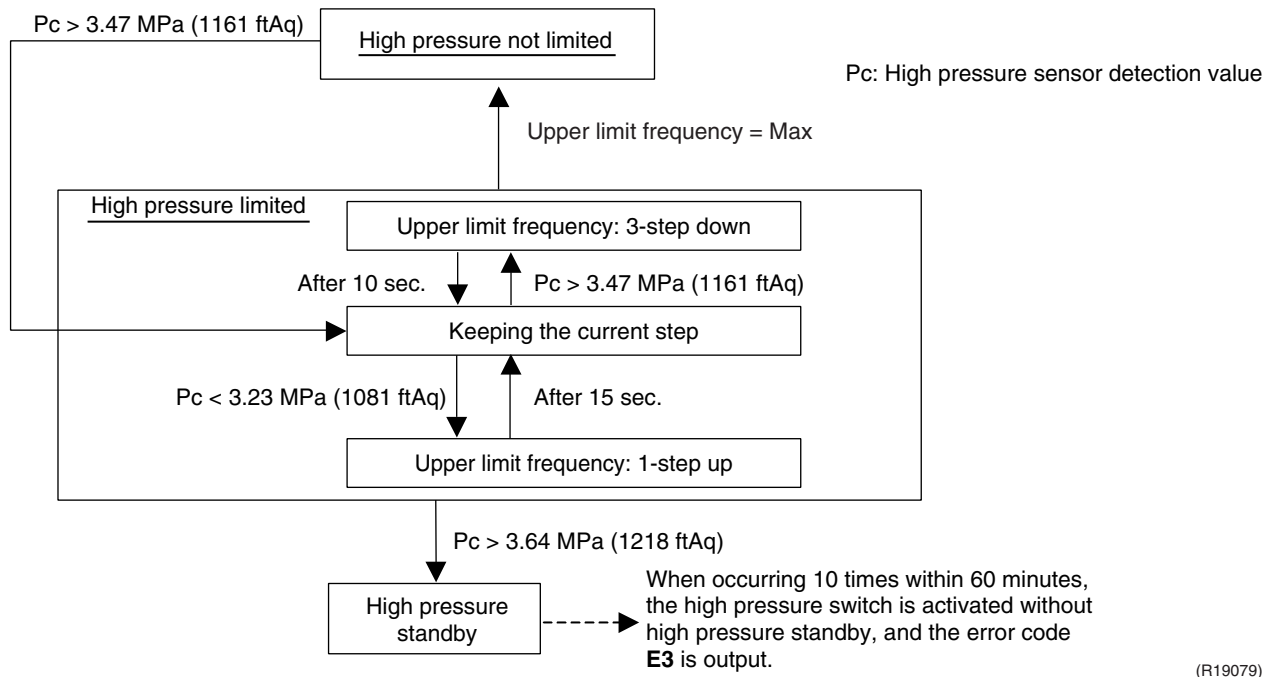
## 4. Protection Control

### 4.1 High Pressure Protection Control

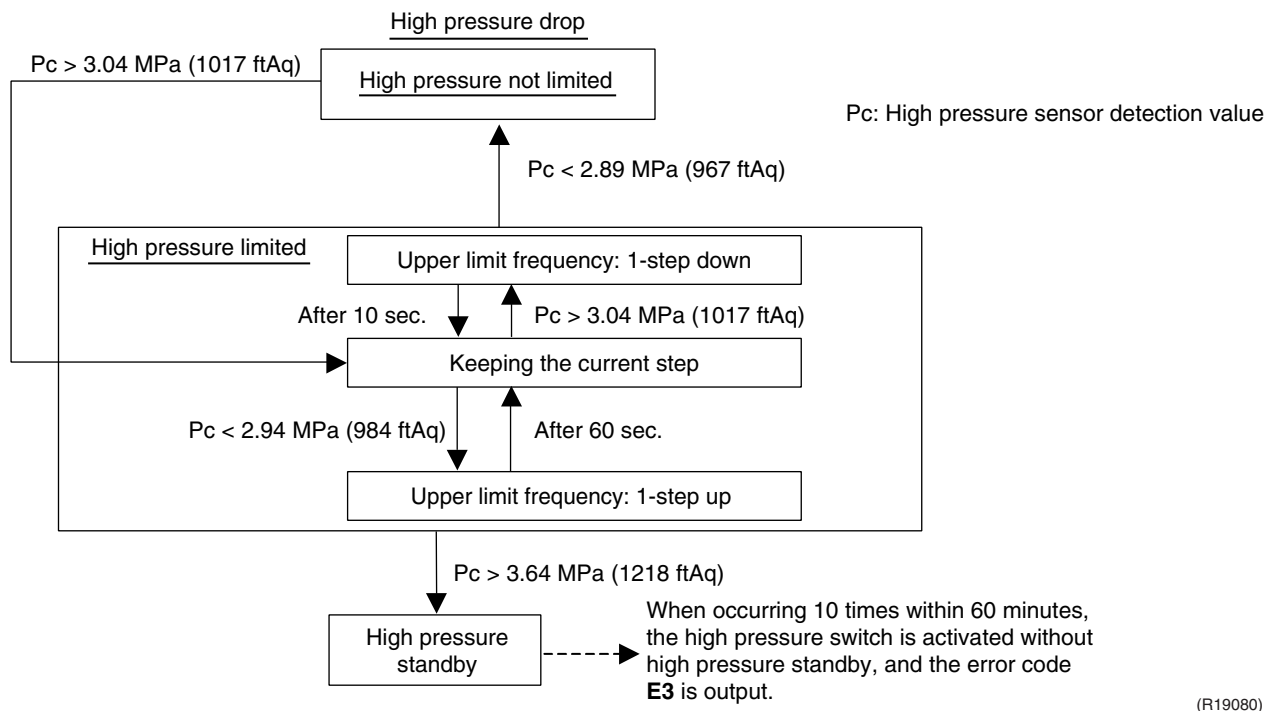
#### Outline

High pressure protection control is used to prevent the activation of protection devices due to an abnormal increase of high pressure and to protect compressors against the temporary increase of high pressure.

#### <Cooling Operation>



#### <Heating Operation>



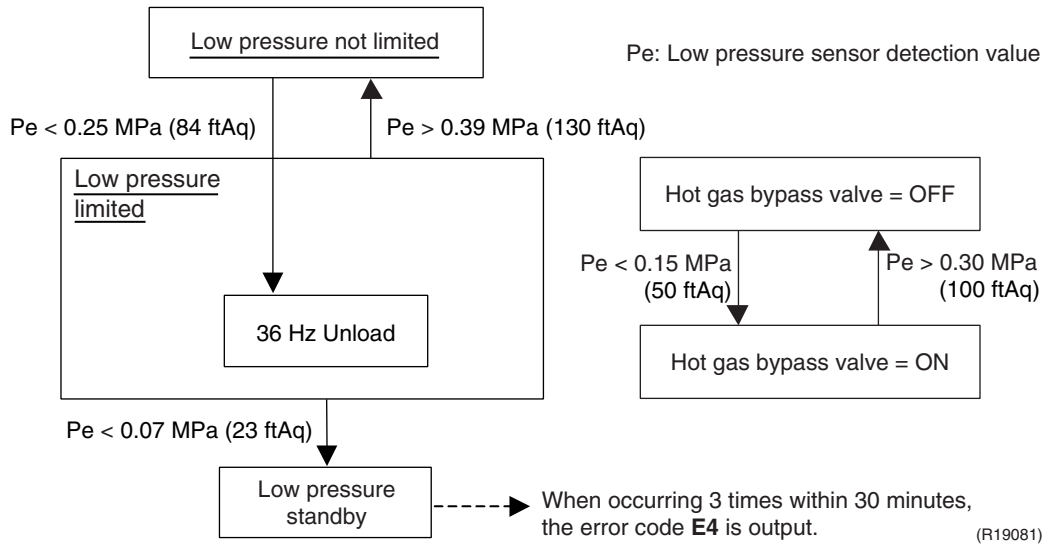


## 4.2 Low Pressure Protection Control

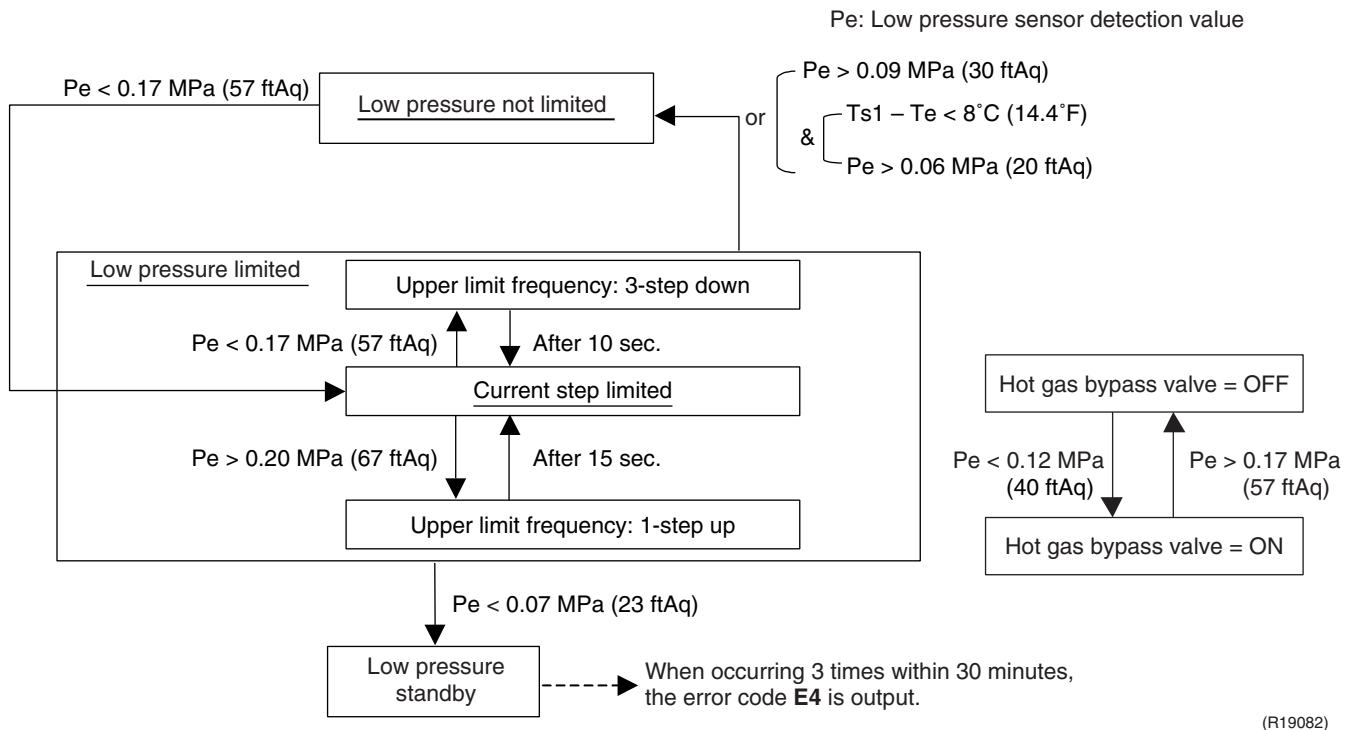
### Outline

Low pressure protection control is used to protect compressors against the temporary decrease of low pressure.

### <Cooling Operation>



### <Heating Operation>



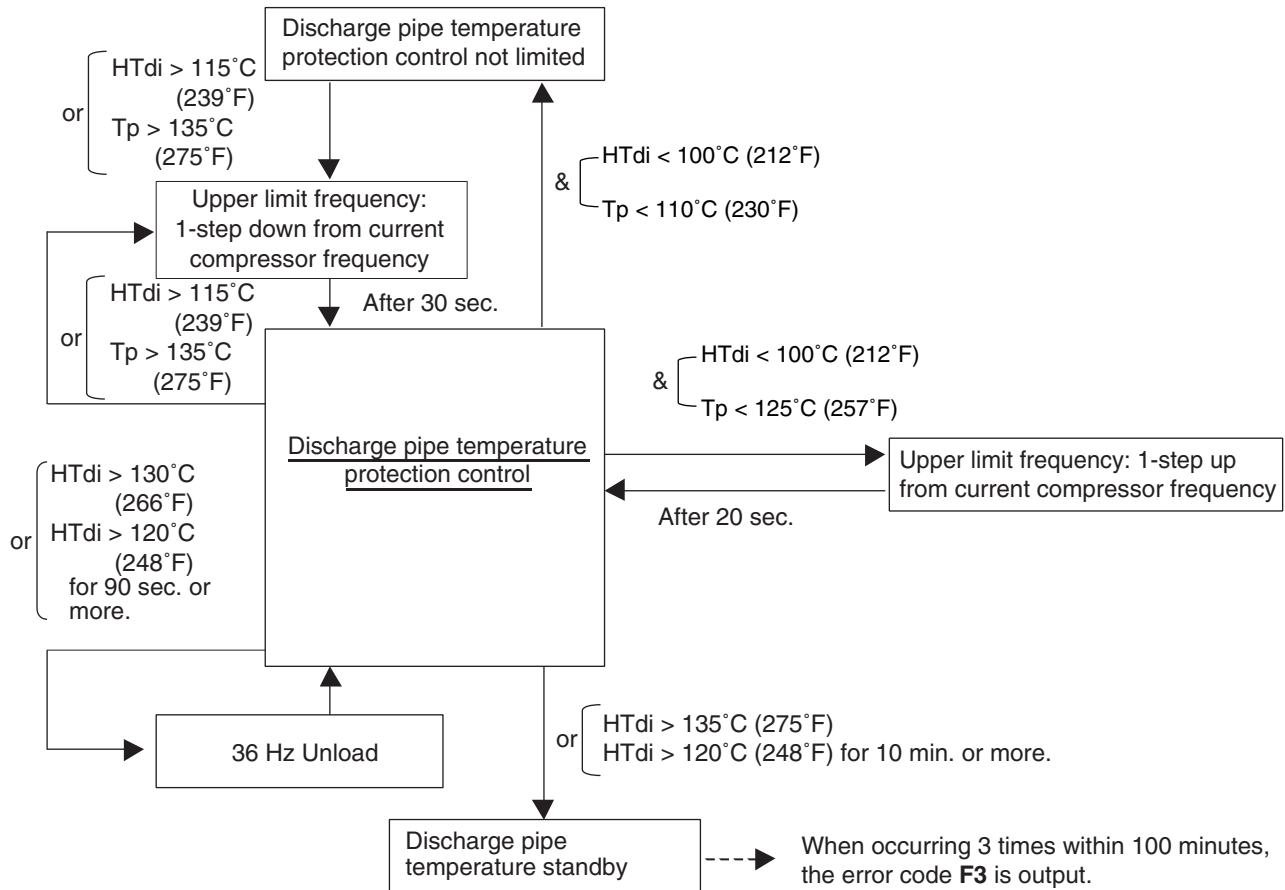


## 4.3 Discharge Pipe Temperature Protection Control

### Outline

Discharge pipe temperature protection control protects the compressor internal temperature against a malfunction or temporary increase of discharge pipe temperature.

### <Compressor>



(R19083)

HTdi : Value of discharge pipe temperature (Tdi) compensated with outdoor temperature

Tp : Value of compressor port temperature calculated by Tc and Te, and suction superheated degree.

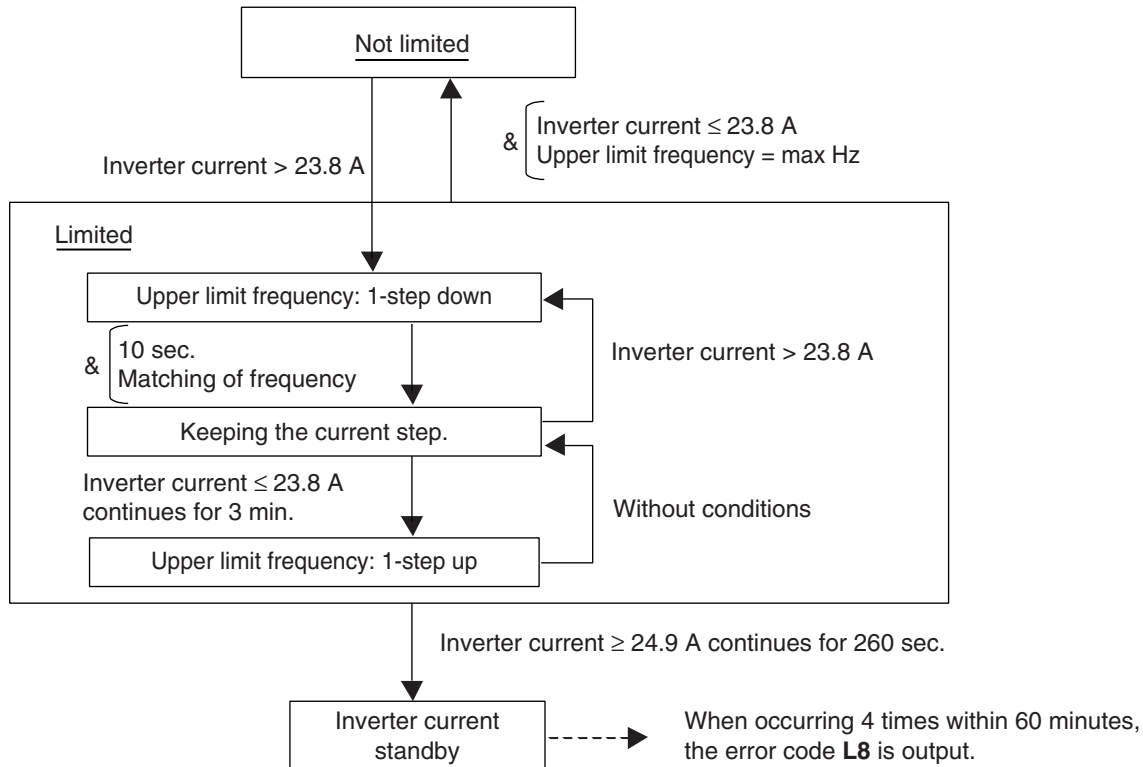


## 4.4 Inverter Protection Control

## Outline

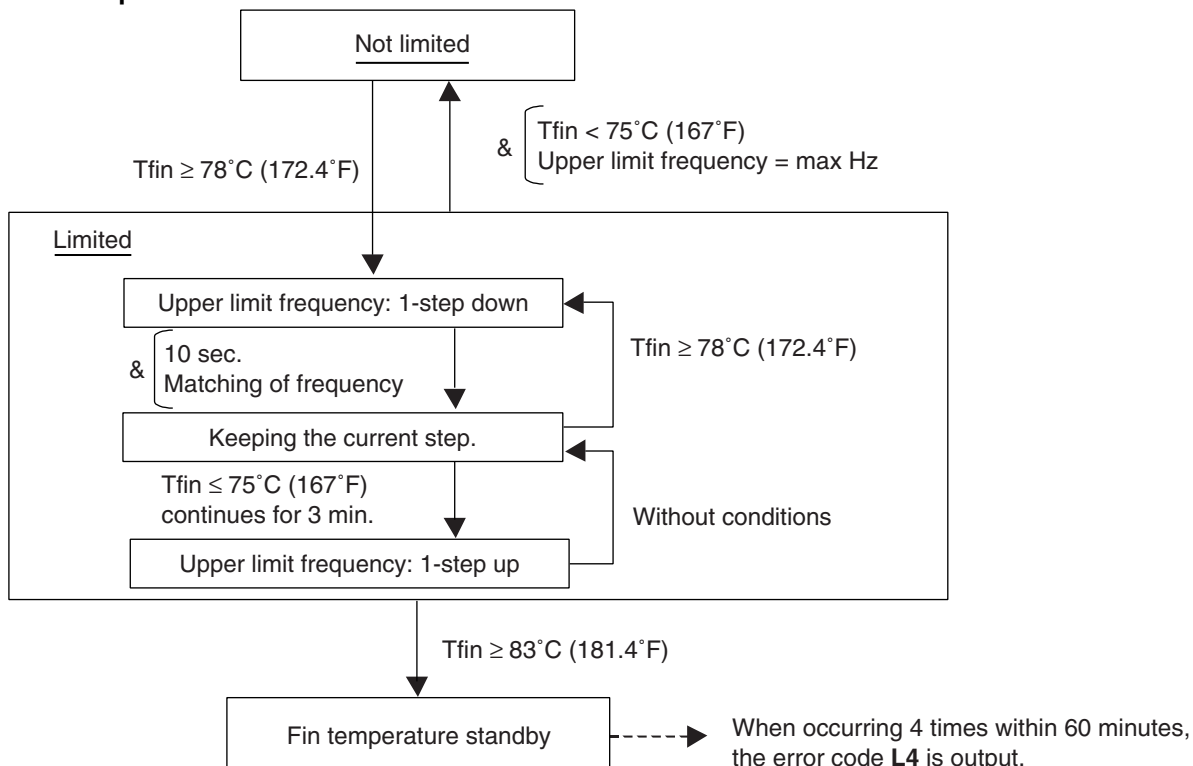
Inverter overcurrent protection control and inverter fin temperature control are performed to prevent tripping due to a malfunction, temporary inverter overcurrent, or radiation fin temperature increase.

### <Inverter overcurrent protection control>



(R15610)

### <Inverter fin temperature control>



(R19084)



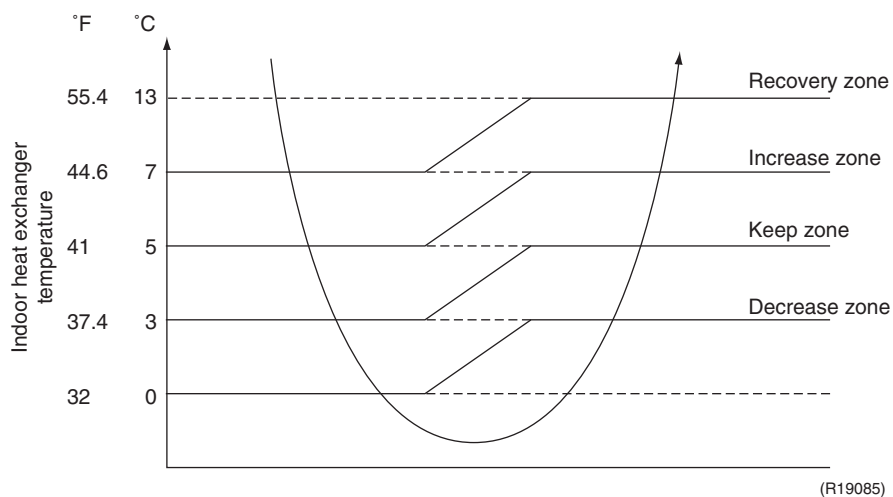
## 4.5 Freeze-up Protection Control

### Outline

According to the freeze prevention status sent from the BP unit, the compressor output frequency is regulated to decrease compressor capacity in order to prevent the indoor heat exchanger from freezing.

### Detail

Zones are divided based on the freeze prevention status signal sent from the BP unit (indoor unit), and the freeze prevention control prevents freezing of the indoor unit.



Recovery zone: Lift the control

Increase zone: 1 step up / 60 sec.

Keep zone: Frequency is not controlled

Decrease zone: 1 step down / 60 sec.

Stop zone: Thermostat-OFF (only the target indoor unit)

The temperature in the above figure depends on the model (reference value).



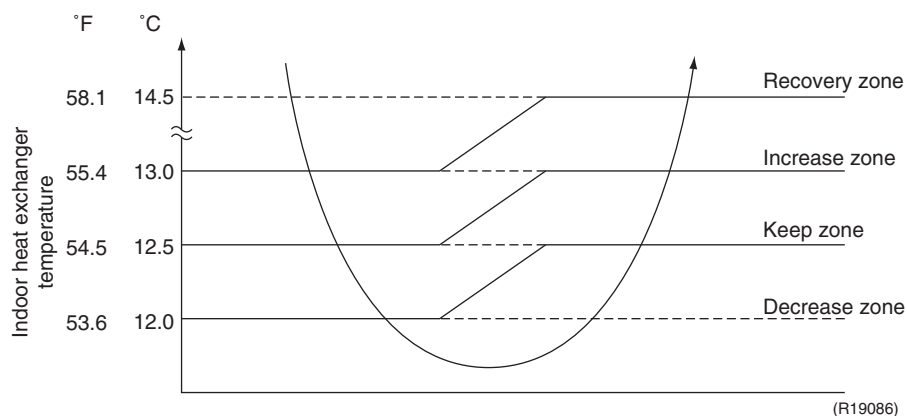
## 4.6 Dew Condensation Prevention Control

### Outline

According to the dew condensation prevention status sent from the BP unit, the compressor output frequency is regulated to decrease compressor capacity in order to prevent the indoor unit from dew condensation.

### Detail

Zones are divided based on the dew condensation prevention status signal sent from the BP unit (indoor unit), and the dew condensation prevention control prevents dew condensation of the indoor unit.



Recovery zone: Lift the control

Increase zone: 1 step up / 60 sec.

Keep zone: Frequency is not controlled

Decrease zone: 1 step down / 60 sec.

The temperature in the above figure depends on the model and actual room temperature (reference value).



## 5. Other Control

### 5.1 Demand Control

In order to lower power consumption, the capacity of the outdoor unit is forcibly lowered using the Demand 1 Setting.

To operate the unit with this mode, additional setting of Constant Demand Setting is necessary.

#### <Demand 1 setting>

| Setting                              | Standard for upper limit of power consumption |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Demand 1 setting 1                   | Approx. 60%                                   |
| Demand 1 setting 2 (factory setting) | Approx. 70%                                   |
| Demand 1 setting 3                   | Approx. 80%                                   |

★ Other protection control functions have precedence over the above operation.

### 5.2 Heating Operation Prohibition Control

Heating operation is prohibited when the outdoor temperature is above 24°CDB (75.2°FDB).



## 6. Branch Provider (BP) Unit Control

### 6.1 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Command Conversion

1.  $\Delta D$  (room thermistor temperature – target temperature) signals from BP units are converted to a capacity up / down signal.

$\Delta D$  signals from BP units are used as the capacity up / down signal in frequency commands (excludes during POWERFUL operation).

| $\Delta D$ Signal | Capacity up / down signal |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 0                 | Thermostat OFF            |
| 1                 | Down                      |
| 2                 |                           |
| 3                 | Keep                      |
| 4                 |                           |
| 5                 | Up                        |
| 6                 |                           |
| 7                 |                           |
| 8                 |                           |
| 9                 |                           |
| A                 |                           |
| B                 |                           |
| C                 |                           |
| D                 |                           |
| E                 |                           |
| F                 |                           |

#### 2. Processing during POWERFUL operation

- (1) When POWERFUL command is received from one or more indoor units.
- (2) Thermostats are not OFF at the indoor units from which POWERFUL commands are issued

When the above conditions are met, the POWERFUL operation is activated, and the POWERFUL operation signal is sent to the outdoor unit.



## 6.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit Electronic Expansion Valve Control

This function provides instructions regarding the absolute flow rate, relative flow rate and fully closing from the outdoor unit to the BP unit in order to ensure outdoor unit compressor safety and optimum refrigerating cycle of the system.

With the transmission a permit/prohibit flag for each distribution control in the BP unit, the distribution control startup timing is controlled by the outdoor unit.

### 6.2.1 Electronic Expansion Valve Initial Opening Setting

#### Outline

This function improves stability of the system to set initial opening of the electronic expansion valve at starting operation.

When the EV opening command from outdoor unit is lifted, the following opening setting is performed.

#### Detail

##### <Cooling Operation>

Tr: room thermistor temperature

Ta: outdoor temperature

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Target opening (pulse)} &= \frac{5}{2} \times (\text{Tr (}^{\circ}\text{C)} - 14) + \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \times (\text{Ta (}^{\circ}\text{C)} - \text{Tr (}^{\circ}\text{C)}) \\ &= \frac{25}{18} \times (\text{Tr (}^{\circ}\text{F)} - \frac{286}{5}) + \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \times \frac{5}{9} \times (\text{Ta (}^{\circ}\text{F)} - \text{Tr (}^{\circ}\text{F)}) \end{aligned}$$

|               | <b>A</b> |
|---------------|----------|
| 07 ~ 12 class | 140      |
| 15 ~ 18 class | 156      |
| 24 class      | 170      |

|         | <b>B</b> |
|---------|----------|
| Ta ≤ Tr | 0        |
| Tr < Ta | 2.5      |

##### <Heating Operation>

Target opening = 350 pulse

### 6.2.2 Electronic Expansion Valve Flow Rate Restriction

#### Outline

This function prevents deviation from the specified electronic expansion valve range by restricting the electronic expansion valve flow rates of the operating and non-operating indoor units during compressor operation. It also prevents the generation of abnormal noise such as refrigerant flowing sound by restricting the circulation of refrigerant according to the operating conditions (unit ON/OFF) of indoor units.

#### Detail

Restriction of electronic expansion valve opening degrees of operating indoor units;

... Restriction of maximum and minimum flow rates based on constant

Restriction of electronic expansion valve opening degrees of non-heating indoor units;

... Restriction of minimum flow rate based on constant

... Maximum flow rate determined based on flow rates of operating indoor units



## 6.2.3 Full Closing of Electronic Expansion Valves

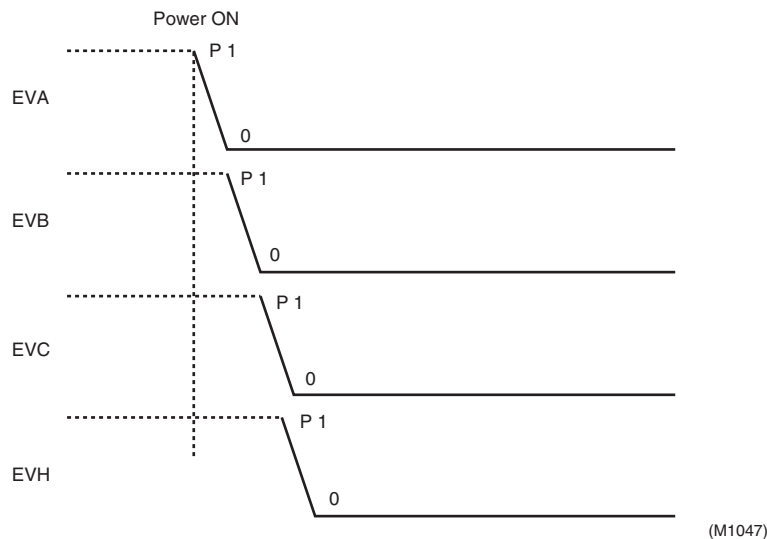
### Outline

The electronic expansion valves are initialized when the power is turned on.

### Detail

The following processes are conducted.

1. Conducts P1 pulses close when power is turned on, and sets current opening to 0 pulse (fully closing process).
2. Sends electronic expansion valve initialization signal to outdoor unit.
3. Closes the electronic expansion valve of each chamber (sets the electronic expansion valve pulse to 0).
4. Stops transmission of electronic expansion valve initialization signal when EVH (bypass electronic expansion valve) retightening is completed.



## 6.2.4 Control Based on EV Opening Command from Outdoor Unit

### Outline

This function operates the electronic expansion valve based on EV opening command sent from the outdoor unit.

### Detail

The electronic expansion valve operation based on EV opening command provides the following functions.

- 1) Pressure equalization prior to startup
- 2) Startup control
- 3) Restart standby
- 4) Pump-down residual operation
- 5) Oil return operation
- 6) Defrosting operation



## 6.3 SH Control in Cooling Operation

### Outline

This function ensures appropriate refrigerant distribution when many indoor units are operating in cooling operation.

### Detail

The heat exchanger temperatures and gas pipe temperatures of operating indoor units are detected by the gas pipe thermistors, and the flow rates of the electronic expansion valve are corrected so as to adjust the difference between the heat exchanger temperature and gas pipe temperature of each indoor unit (hereafter referred to as SH) close to the target values.

When SH is higher than target value → Opens the valve of that indoor unit

When SH is lower than target value → Closes the valve of that indoor unit

When the liquid pipe temperature is lower than the heat exchanger temperature, the electronic expansion valve is opened more than normal opening.  
(Protection function to prevent rotor dew condensation)

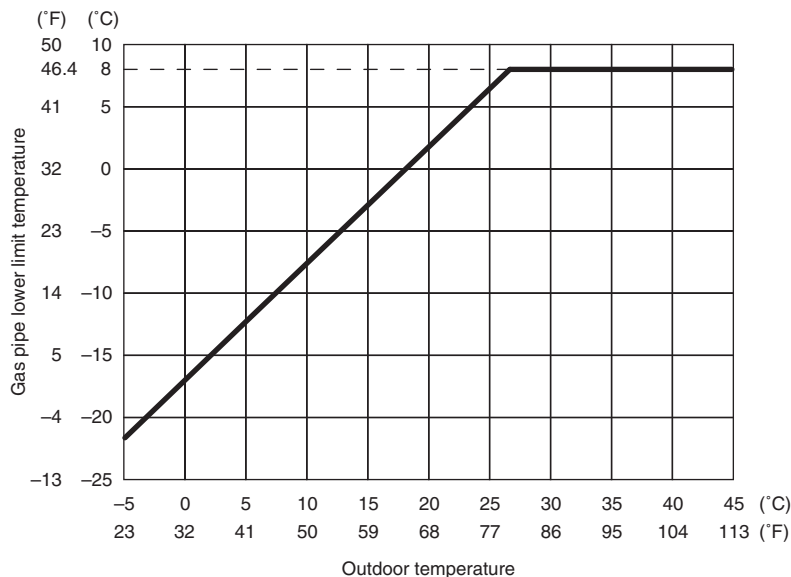
The gas pipe temperature and indoor heat exchanger temperature are detected with a sampling time of 40 seconds for the cooling SH control.

In order to prevent dew condensation in the connection pipe, the gas pipe lower-limit temperature is set as follows.

$$\text{Gas pipe lower limit temperature (}^{\circ}\text{C)} = \frac{240}{256} \times \text{outdoor temperature (}^{\circ}\text{C)} - 17$$

$$(\text{Gas pipe lower limit temperature (}^{\circ}\text{F)}) = \frac{240}{256} \times \text{outdoor temperature (}^{\circ}\text{F)} - 28.6$$

$$\text{Gas pipe lower limit temperature} \leq 8^{\circ}\text{C (46.4}^{\circ}\text{F)}$$



(R19087)



**Note:**

1. In SkyAir models, the indoor units are equipped with distribution capillary tubes; as a result, the heat exchangers may superheat even when the condition is met.
2. In SkyAir models, the heat exchanger intermediate position is provided on the liquid connection pipe side; as a result, superheated condition is difficult to detect.

## 6.4 SC Control in Heating Operation

### Outline

This function ensures appropriate refrigerant distribution when many indoor units are operating in heating operation.

### Detail

The heat exchanger temperatures and liquid pipe temperatures of operating indoor units are detected by the liquid pipe thermistors, and the flow rates of the electronic expansion valve are corrected so as to adjust the difference between the heat exchanger temperature and liquid pipe temperature of each indoor unit (hereafter referred to as SC) close to the target values.

When SC is higher than target value → Opens the valve of that indoor unit

When SC is lower than target value → Closes the valve of that indoor unit

The liquid pipe temperature and indoor heat exchanger temperature are detected with a sampling time of 20 seconds for the heating SC control.

## 6.5 Heat Exchanger Isothermal Control in Heating Operation

### Outline

This function ensures appropriate refrigerant distribution when indoor units are operating in heating operation.

It prevents abnormal increase of the high pressure and operation with gas shortage due to uneven refrigerant distribution (Protection function).

### Detail

The indoor heat exchanger thermistors (of all connected indoor units to the same BP unit including non-operating indoor units) in heating operation are detected. Then, the highest heat exchanger temperature is compared with the heat exchanger temperature of each indoor unit. If the temperature difference exceeds the predetermined value, it is judged that the indoor heat exchanger thermistor position is in subcooled zone, and the electronic expansion valves of indoor units with the temperature difference exceeding the predetermined level are opened to return to the saturation zone.

Since this is a protection function, it is effective for all connected indoor units in heating operation excluding those in defrosting operation. This function is inactive in indoor units with transmission problems.

The heat exchanger temperature is detected with a sampling time of 20 seconds of the heat exchanger isothermal control, and maximum value of each heat exchanger temperature is obtained.

If the temperature difference between the heat exchanger temperature and maximum heat exchanger temperature value exceeds 8°C (14.4°F), it is judged that the heat exchanger intermediate is in the subcooled zone, and the electronic expansion valve is opened.



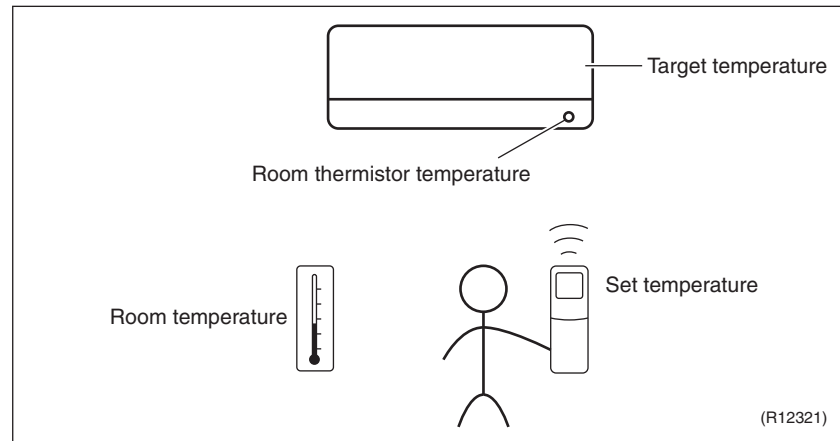
## 7. Function of CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

### 7.1 Temperature Control

#### Definitions of Temperatures

The definitions of temperatures are classified as following.

- ♦ Room temperature: temperature of lower part of the room
- ♦ Set temperature: temperature set by remote controller
- ♦ Room thermistor temperature: temperature detected by room temperature thermistor
- ♦ Target temperature: temperature determined by microcomputer



★ The illustration is for CTXS/FTXS series as representative.

#### Temperature Control

The temperature of the room is detected by the room temperature thermistor. However, there is difference between the temperature detected by room temperature thermistor and the temperature of lower part of the room, depending on the type of the indoor unit or installation condition. Practically, the temperature control is done by the target temperature appropriately adjusted for the indoor unit and the temperature detected by room temperature thermistor.



## 7.2 Airflow Direction Control (CTXS/FTXS Series Only)

### Power-Airflow Dual Louvers

The large louver sends a large volume of air downward to the floor and provides an optimum control in cooling, dry, and heating operation.

#### <Cooling / Dry>

During cooling or dry operation, the louver retracts into the indoor unit. Then, cool air can be blown far and distributed all over the room.

#### <Heating>

During heating operation, the large louver directs airflow downward to spread the warm air to the entire room.

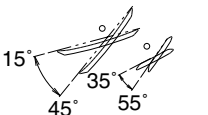
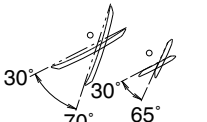

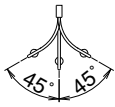
### Wide-Angle Fins

The fins, made of elastic synthetic resin, provide a wide range of airflow that guarantees comfortable air distribution.

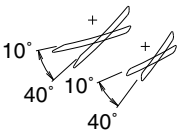
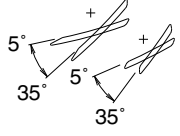
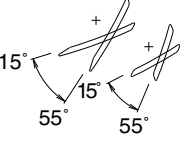
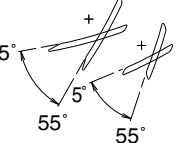
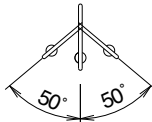
### Auto-Swing

The following table explains the auto-swing process for cooling, dry, heating, and fan:

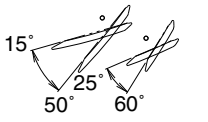
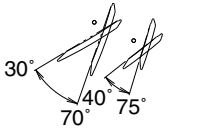
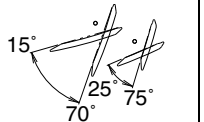

#### CTXS07LVJU

| Vertical Swing (up and down)                                                                   |                                                                                                 |                                                                                                  | Horizontal Swing (right and left)                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cooling / Dry                                                                                  | Heating                                                                                         | Fan                                                                                              |                                                                                                  |
| <br>(R13527) | <br>(R11402) | <br>(R11403) | <br>(R11404) |

#### CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU

| Vertical Swing (up and down)                                                                   |                                                                                                |                                                                                                 |                                                                                                  | Horizontal Swing (right and left)                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cooling                                                                                        | Dry                                                                                            | Heating                                                                                         | Fan                                                                                              |                                                                                                  |
| <br>(R2814) | <br>(R2815) | <br>(R2813) | <br>(R2816) | <br>(R2817) |

#### FTXS15/18/24LVJU

| Vertical Swing (up and down)                                                                   |                                                                                                 |                                                                                                  | Horizontal Swing (right and left)                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cooling / Dry                                                                                  | Heating                                                                                         | Fan                                                                                              |                                                                                                  |
| <br>(R9303) | <br>(R9304) | <br>(R9305) | <br>(R9306) |

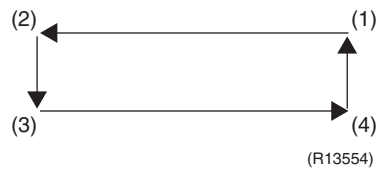


3-D Airflow

Alternative repetition of vertical and horizontal swing motions enables uniform airconditioning of the entire room. This function is effective for starting the air conditioner.

When the horizontal swing and vertical swing are both set to automatic operation, the airflow becomes 3-D airflow. The horizontal and vertical swing motions are alternated and the airflow direction changes in the order shown in the following diagram.

- (1) The vertical blades (fins) move from the right to the left.
- (2) The horizontal blades (louvers) move downward.
- (3) The vertical blades (fins) move from the left to the right.
- (4) The horizontal blades (louvers) move upward.



COMFORT  
AIRFLOW  
Operation

**CTXS-L, FTXS-L Series**  
The horizontal blades (louvers) are controlled not to blow the air directly at the people in the room.

|                  | Cooling                                       | Heating                                       |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| CTXS07LVJU       | <div><p>8°</p><p>(R4302)</p></div>            | <div><p>80°</p><p>(R8413)</p></div>           |
| FTXS15/18/24LVJU | <div><p>10°</p><p>10°</p><p>(R9655)</p></div> | <div><p>75°</p><p>80°</p><p>(R9654)</p></div> |



## 7.3 Fan Speed Control for Indoor Unit

### Outline

Phase control and fan speed control contains 9 steps: LLL, LL, SL, L, ML, M, MH, H, and HH. The airflow rate can be automatically controlled depending on the difference between the room thermistor temperature and the target temperature. This is done through phase control and Hall IC control.



For more information about Hall IC, refer to the troubleshooting for fan motor on page 160, 162.

### Automatic Fan Speed Control

In automatic fan speed operation, the step SL is not available.

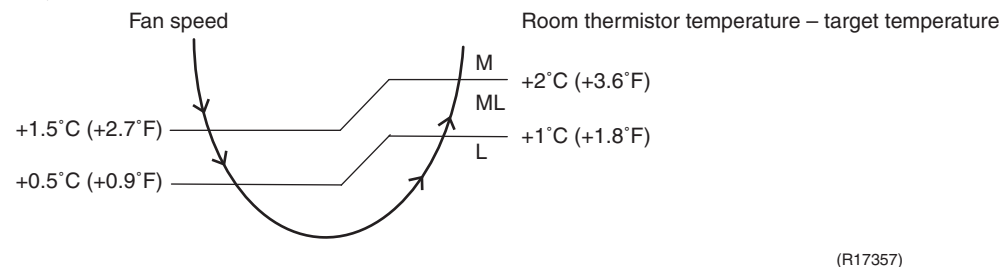
|               | CTXS-J, CTXS-H series |         | CTXS-L, FTXS-L, CDXS-L, FDXS-L series |         |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|---------|
| Step          | Cooling               | Heating | Cooling                               | Heating |
| LLL           |                       |         |                                       |         |
| LL            |                       |         |                                       |         |
| L             |                       |         |                                       |         |
| ML            |                       |         |                                       |         |
| M             |                       |         |                                       |         |
| MH            |                       |         |                                       |         |
| H             |                       |         |                                       |         |
| HH (POWERFUL) |                       |         |                                       |         |
|               | (R6833)               | (R6834) | (R11681)                              | (R6834) |

= The airflow rate is automatically controlled within this range when the FAN setting button is set to automatic.

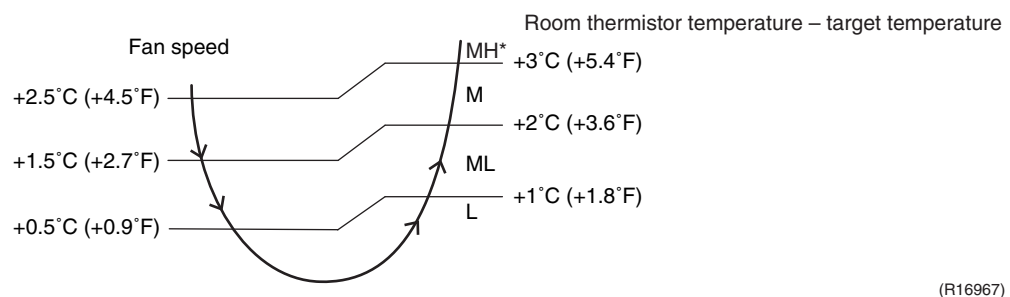
#### <Cooling>

The following drawing explains the principle of fan speed control for cooling.

#### CTXS-J, CTXS-H Series



#### CTXS-L, FTXS-L, CDXS-L, FDXS-L Series



\*For CTXS-L and FTXS-L series, the upper limit is M tap in 30 minutes from the operation start.

#### <Heating>

In heating operation, the fan speed is regulated according to the indoor heat exchanger temperature and the difference between the room thermistor temperature and the target temperature.





- Note:**
1. During POWERFUL operation, the fan rotates at H tap + 50 ~ 90 rpm (depending on the model).
  2. The fan stops during defrost operation.

## COMFORT AIRFLOW Operation

### CTXS-L, FTXS-L Series

- The fan speed is automatically controlled within the following steps.

#### <Cooling>

L tap ~ MH tap (same as AUTOMATIC)

#### <Heating>

ML tap ~ MH tap

- The latest command has the priority between POWERFUL and COMFORT AIRFLOW.

## 7.4 Program Dry Operation

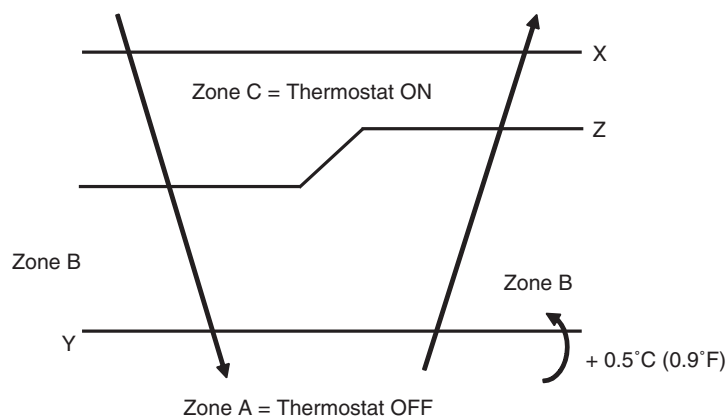
### Outline

Program dry operation removes humidity while preventing the room temperature from lowering. Since the microcomputer controls both the temperature and airflow rate, the temperature adjustment and **FAN** setting buttons are inoperable.

### Detail

The microcomputer automatically sets the temperature and airflow rate. The difference between the room thermistor temperature at start-up and the target temperature is divided into two zones. Then, the unit operates in an appropriate capacity for each zone to maintain the temperature and humidity at a comfortable level.

| Room thermistor temperature at start-up | Target temperature X                    | Thermostat OFF point Y                           | Thermostat ON point Z                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 24°C (75.2°F) or more                   | Room thermistor temperature at start-up | $X - 2.5^{\circ}\text{C} (-4.5^{\circ}\text{F})$ | $X - 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (-0.9^{\circ}\text{F})$<br>or<br>$Y + 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (0.9^{\circ}\text{F})$ (zone B) continues for 10 min.                                               |
| 23.5°C (74.3°F)<br>↓<br>18°C (64.4°F)   |                                         | $X - 2.0^{\circ}\text{C} (-3.6^{\circ}\text{F})$ | $X - 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (-0.9^{\circ}\text{F})$<br>or<br>$Y + 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (0.9^{\circ}\text{F})$ (zone B) continues for 10 min.                                               |
| 17.5°C (63.5°F)<br>↓                    |                                         | $X - 2.0^{\circ}\text{C} (-3.6^{\circ}\text{F})$ | $X - 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (-0.9^{\circ}\text{F}) = 17.5^{\circ}\text{C} (63.5^{\circ}\text{F})$<br>or<br>$Y + 0.5^{\circ}\text{C} (0.9^{\circ}\text{F})$ (zone B) continues for 10 min. |



(R11587)



## 7.5 Automatic Operation

### Outline

#### Automatic Cooling / Heating Function

When the automatic operation is selected with the remote controller, the microcomputer automatically determines the operation mode as cooling or heating according to the room temperature and the set temperature at start-up.

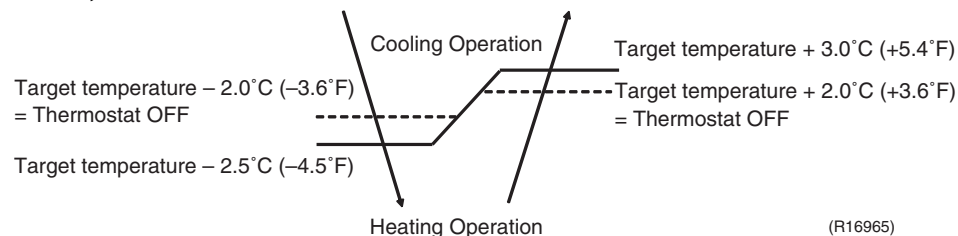
The unit automatically switches the operation mode to maintain the room temperature at the set temperature.

### Detail

Ts: set temperature (set by remote controller)  
 Tt: target temperature (determined by microcomputer)  
 Tr: room thermistor temperature (detected by room temperature thermistor)  
 C: correction value

1. The set temperature (Ts) determines the target temperature (Tt).  
 (Ts = 18 ~ 30°C, 64.4 ~ 86°F).
2. The target temperature (Tt) is calculated as;  
 $Tt = Ts + C$   
 where C is the correction value.  
 C = 0°C (32°F)
3. Thermostat ON/OFF point and operation mode switching point are as follows.
  - (1) Heating → Cooling switching point:  
 $Tr \geq Tt + 3.0^{\circ}\text{C}$  (+5.4°F) (CTXS-L, FTXS-L series)  
 $Tr \geq Tt + 2.5^{\circ}\text{C}$  (+4.5°F) (other models)
  - (2) Cooling → Heating switching point:  
 $Tr < Tt - 2.5^{\circ}\text{C}$  (-4.5°F)
  - (3) Thermostat ON/OFF point is the same as the ON/OFF point of cooling or heating operation.
4. During initial operation  
 $Tr \geq Ts$  : Cooling operation  
 $Tr < Ts$  : Heating operation

#### CTXS-L, FTXS-L series

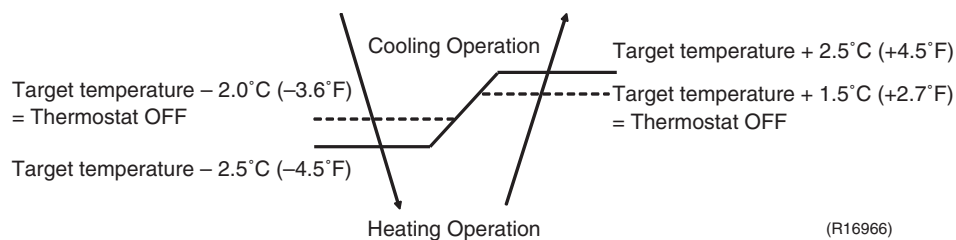


Ex: When the target temperature is 25°C (77°F)

Cooling → 23°C (73.4°F): Thermostat OFF → 22°C (71.6°F): Switch to heating

Heating → 27°C (80.6°F): Thermostat OFF → 28°C (82.4°F): Switch to cooling

#### Other models



Ex: When the target temperature is 25°C (77°F)

Cooling → 23°C (73.4°F): Thermostat OFF → 22°C (71.6°F): Switch to heating

Heating → 26.5°C (79.7°F): Thermostat OFF → 27.5°C (81.5°F): Switch to cooling



## 7.6 Thermostat Control

### Outline

Thermostat control is based on the difference between the room thermistor temperature and the target temperature.

### Detail

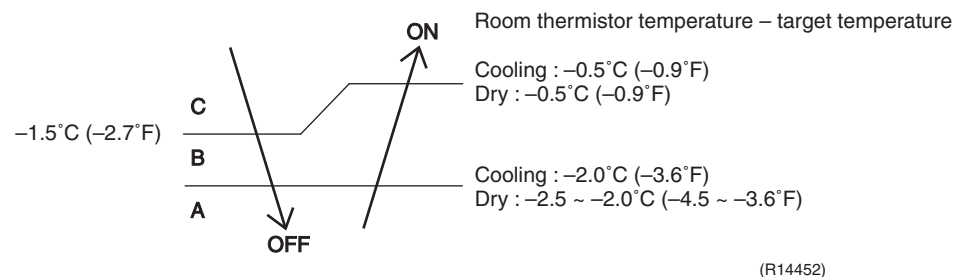
#### Thermostat OFF Condition

- The temperature difference is in the zone A.

#### Thermostat ON Condition

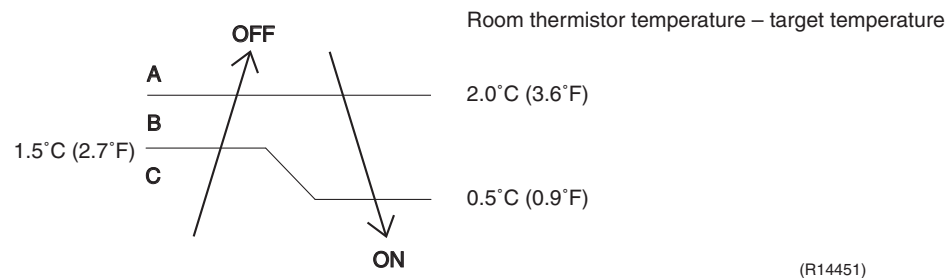
- The temperature difference returns to the zone C after being in the zone A.
- The system resumes from defrost control in any zones except A.
- The operation turns on in any zones except A.
- The monitoring time has passed while the temperature difference is in the zone B.  
(Cooling / Dry: 10 minutes, Heating: 10 seconds)

#### <Cooling / Dry>

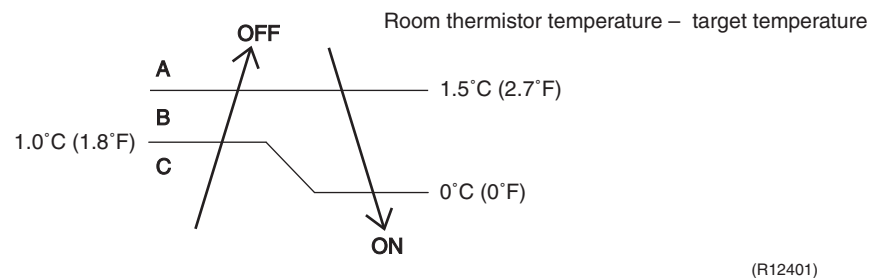


#### <Heating>

#### CTXS-L, FTXS-L series



#### Other Models



Refer to Temperature Control on page 62 for detail.



## 7.7 NIGHT SET Mode

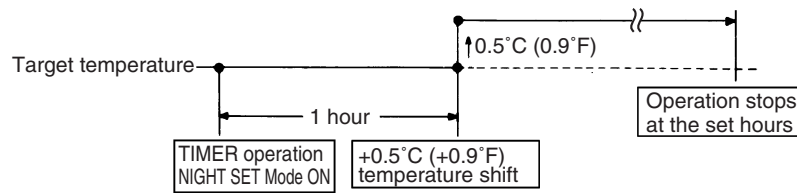
### Outline

When the OFF timer is set, the NIGHT SET Mode is automatically activated. The NIGHT SET Mode keeps the airflow rate setting.

### Detail

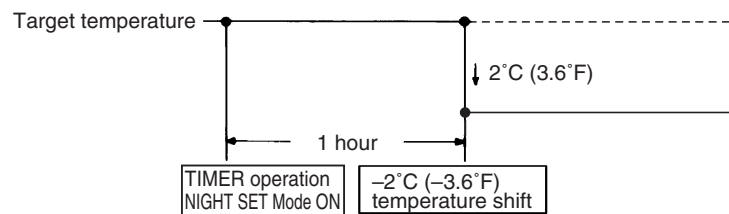
The NIGHT SET Mode continues operation at the target temperature for the first one hour, then automatically raises the target temperature slightly in cooling, or lowers it slightly in heating. This prevents excessive cooling or heating to ensure comfortable sleeping conditions, and also conserves electricity.

#### <Cooling>



(R18809)

#### <Heating>



(R19113)

## 7.8 ECONO Operation

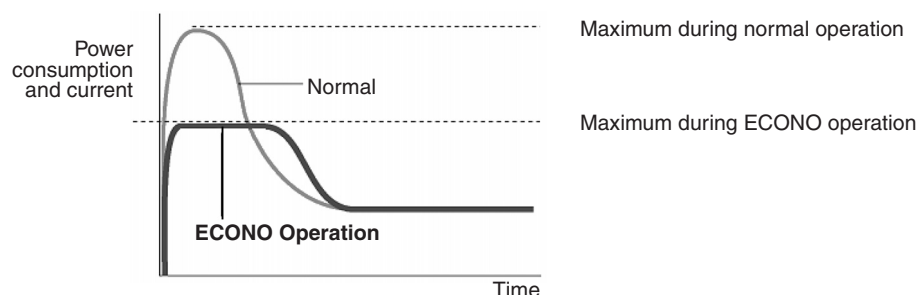
### Outline

#### CTXS-L, FTXS-L, CDXS-L, FDXS-L Series

ECONO operation reduces the maximum operating current and the power consumption.

### Detail

- When this function is activated, the maximum capacity also decreases.
- The remote controller can send the ECONO command when the unit is in COOL, HEAT, DRY, or AUTO operation. This function can only be set when the unit is running. Pressing the **ON/OFF** button on the remote controller cancels the function.
- This function and POWERFUL operation cannot be used at the same time. The latest command has the priority.



(R9288)



## 7.9 HOME LEAVE Operation

### Outline

#### CTXS-J, CTXS-H Series

HOME LEAVE operation is a function that allows you to record your favorite set temperature and airflow rate. You can start your favorite operation mode simply by pressing the **HOME LEAVE** button on the remote controller.

### Detail

#### 1. Start of Function

The function starts when the **HOME LEAVE** button is pressed in cooling mode, heating mode (including POWERFUL operation), or while the operation is stopped. If this button is pressed in POWERFUL operation, the POWERFUL operation is canceled and this function becomes effective.

■ The **HOME LEAVE** button is ineffective in dry mode and fan mode.

#### 2. Details of Function

A mark representing HOME LEAVE is indicated on the display of the remote controller. The indoor unit is operated according to the set temperature and airflow rate for HOME LEAVE which were pre-set in the memory of the remote controller.

The LED (red) of indoor unit representing HOME LEAVE lights up. (It goes out when the operation is stopped.)

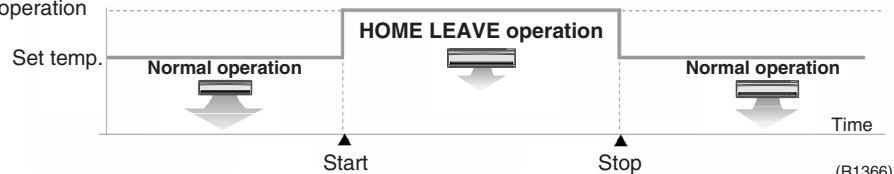
#### 3. End of Function

The function ends when the **HOME LEAVE** button is pressed again during HOME LEAVE operation or when the **POWERFUL** button is pressed.

<Cooling>



HOME LEAVE operation  
set temp.



<Heating>









HOME LEAVE operation  
set temp.








### How to Set the Temperature and Airflow Rate

When using HOME LEAVE operation for the first time, set the temperature and airflow rate for HOME LEAVE operation. Record your preferred temperature and airflow rate.

|         | Initial setting |                                                                                   | Selectable range          |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|         | Temperature     | Airflow rate                                                                      | Temperature               | Airflow rate                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Cooling | 25°C (77°F)     |  | 18 ~ 32°C (64.4 ~ 89.6°F) | 5 steps,  ,  |
| Heating | 25°C (77°F)     |  | 10 ~ 30°C (50 ~ 86°F)     | 5 steps,  ,  |

1. Press the **HOME LEAVE** button.

Make sure  is displayed on the remote controller display.

2. Adjust the temperature with  or  as you like.
3. Adjust the airflow rate with the **FAN** setting button as you like.

HOME LEAVE operation will run with these settings the next time you start HOME LEAVE operation. To change the recorded information, repeat steps 1 – 3.

### Others

- The set temperature and airflow rate are memorized in the remote controller. When the remote controller is reset due to replacement of battery, it is necessary to set the temperature and airflow rate again for HOME LEAVE operation.
- The operation mode cannot be changed while HOME LEAVE operation is being used.



## 7.10 INTELLIGENT EYE Operation

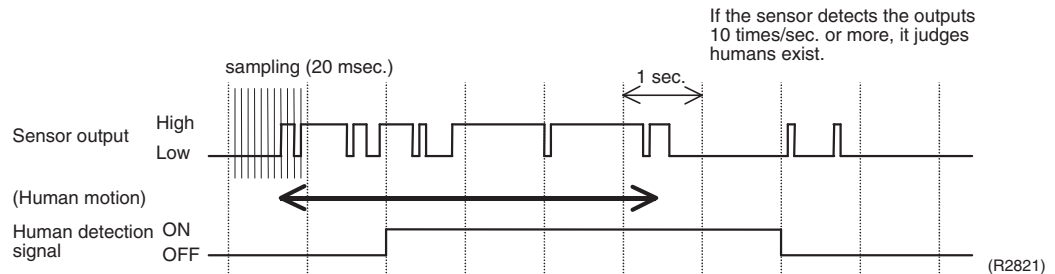
### Outline

#### CTXS, FTXS Series

This function detects the existence of humans in the room with a motion sensor (INTELLIGENT EYE) and reduces the capacity when there is nobody in the room in order to save electricity.

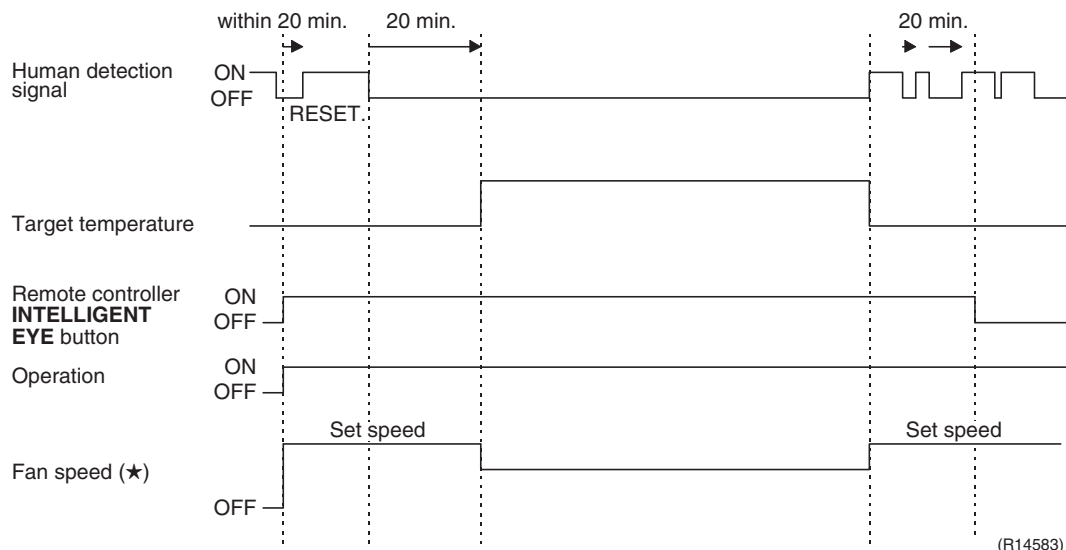
### Detail

#### 1. Detection method by INTELLIGENT EYE



- This sensor detects human motion by receiving infrared rays and displays the pulse wave output.
- The microcomputer in the indoor unit carries out a sampling every 20 msec. and if it detects 10 cycles of the wave in 1 second in total (corresponding to  $20 \text{ msec.} \times 10 = 200 \text{ msec.}$ ), it judges humans are in the room as the motion signal is ON.

#### 2. The motions (for example: in cooling)



- When the microcomputer does not have a signal from the sensor in 20 minutes, it judges that nobody is in the room and operates the unit at a temperature shifted from the target temperature. (Cooling / Dry:  $1 \sim 2^\circ\text{C}$  ( $1.8 \sim 3.6^\circ\text{F}$ ) higher, Heating:  $2^\circ\text{C}$  ( $3.6^\circ\text{F}$ ) lower, Auto: according to the operation mode at that time.)

★ In FAN operation, the fan speed is reduced by 50 ~ 60 rpm.

### Others

- For dry operation, you cannot set the temperature with a remote controller, but the target temperature is shifted internally.



## 7.11 Inverter POWERFUL Operation

### Outline

In order to exploit the cooling and heating capacity to full extent, operate the air conditioner by increasing the indoor fan rotating speed and the compressor frequency.

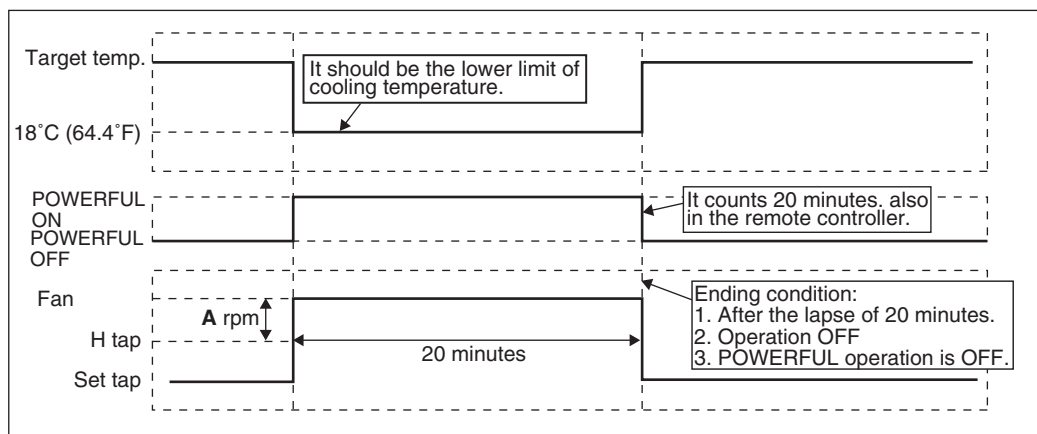
### Detail

When **POWERFUL** button is pressed, the fan speed and target temperature are converted to the following states for 20 minutes.

| Operation mode | Fan speed                                       | Target temperature                        |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| COOL           | H tap + <b>A</b> rpm                            | 18°C (64.4°F)                             |
| DRY            | Dry rotating speed + <b>A</b> rpm               | Lowered by 2 ~ 2.5°C (3.6 ~ 4.5°F)        |
| HEAT           | H tap + <b>A</b> rpm                            | 30 ~ 31.5°C (86 ~ 88.7°F)                 |
| FAN            | H tap + <b>A</b> rpm                            | —                                         |
| AUTO           | Same as cooling / heating in POWERFUL operation | The target temperature is kept unchanged. |

**A** = 50 ~ 90 rpm (depending on the model)

Ex: POWERFUL operation in cooling



(R19193)

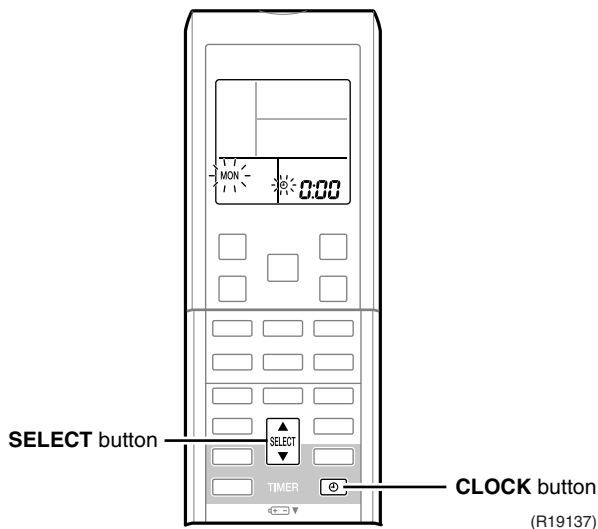


## 7.12 Clock Setting

### ARC452 Series

The clock can be set by taking the following steps:

1. Press the **CLOCK** button.  
→ 0:00 is displayed and **MON** and ☀ blink.
2. Press the **SELECT ▲** or **▼** button to set the clock to the current day of the week.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button.  
→ ☀ blinks.
4. Press the **SELECT ▲** or **▼** button to set the clock to the present time.  
Holding down the **SELECT ▲** or **▼** button increases or decreases the time display rapidly.
5. Press the **CLOCK** button. (Point the remote controller at the indoor unit when pressing the button.)  
→ : blinks and clock setting is completed.





## 7.13 WEEKLY TIMER Operation

### Outline

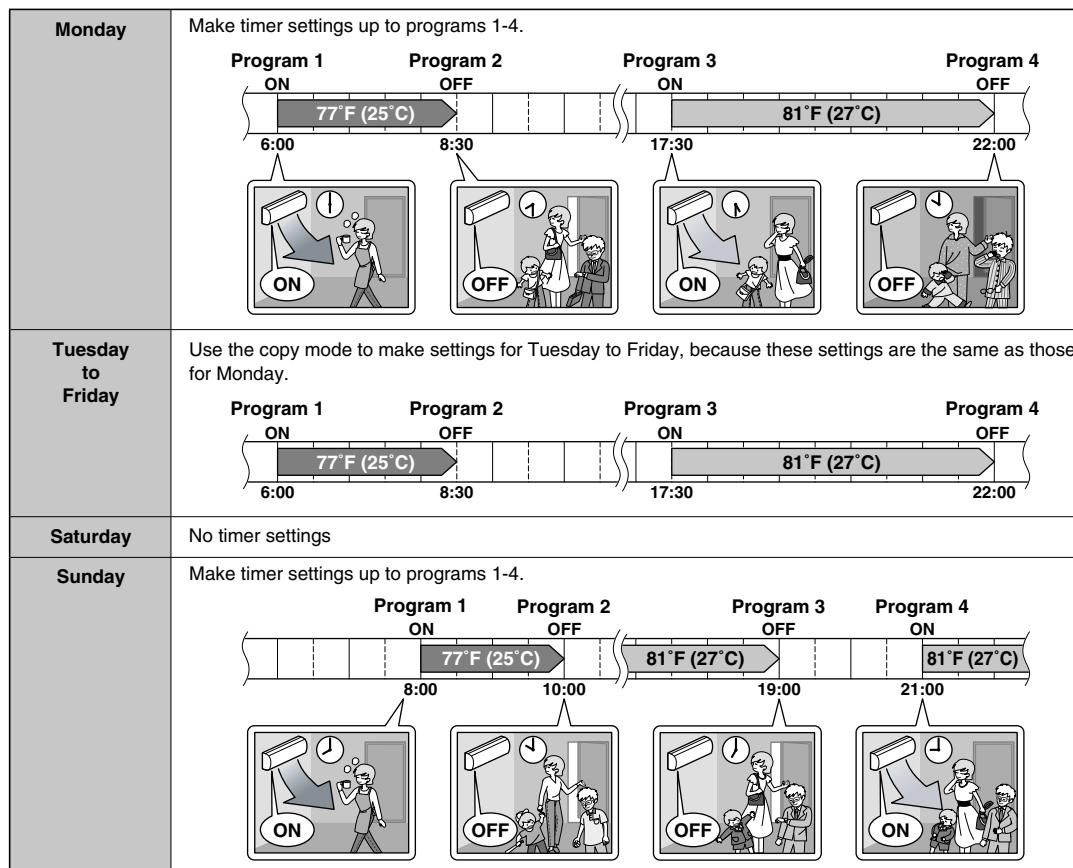
#### CTXS-L, FTXS-L series

Up to 4 timer settings can be saved for each day of the week (up to 28 settings in total).  
The 3 items: ON/OFF, temperature, and time can be set.

### Detail

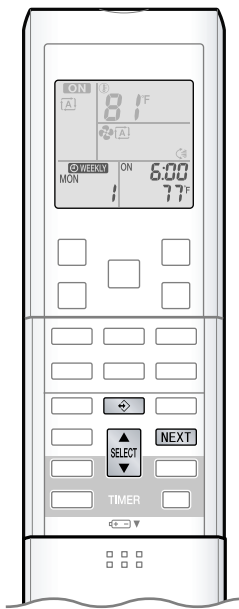
#### ■ Using in these cases of WEEKLY TIMER

**Example:** The same timer settings are made for the week from Monday through Friday while different timer settings are made for the weekend.



- Up to 4 reservations per day and 28 reservations per week can be set in the WEEKLY TIMER. The effective use of the copy mode ensures ease of making reservations.
- The use of ON-ON-ON-ON settings, for example, makes it possible to schedule operating mode and set temperature changes. Furthermore, by using OFF-OFF-OFF-OFF settings, only the turn off time of each day can be set. This will automatically turn off the air conditioner if the user forgets to turn it off.

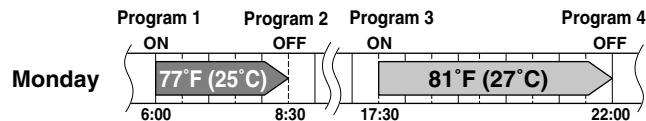




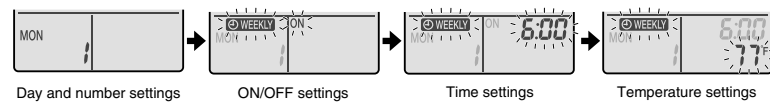
## ■ To use WEEKLY TIMER operation

### Setting mode

- Make sure the day of the week and time are set. If not, set the day of the week and time.




### Setting Displays




### 1. Press .

- The day of the week and the reservation number of the current day will be displayed.
- 1 to 4 settings can be made per day.


### 2. Press to select the desired day of the week and reservation number.

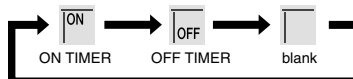
- Pressing  changes the reservation number and the day of the week.

### 3. Press .

- The day of the week and reservation number will be set.
-  and ON blink.


### 4. Press to select the desired mode.

- Pressing  changes ON or OFF setting in sequence.

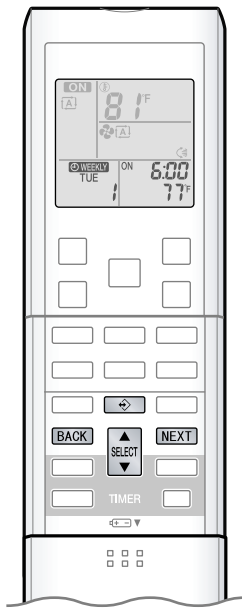


- In case the reservation has already been set, selecting blank deletes the reservation.
- Go to **STEP 9** if blank is selected.


### 5. Press .

- The ON/OFF TIMER mode will be set.
-  and the time blink.







## 6. Press to select the desired time.

- The time can be set between 0:00 and 23:50 in 10 minute intervals.
- To return to the ON/OFF TIMER mode setting, press .
- Go to **STEP 9** when setting the OFF TIMER.

## 7. Press .

- The time will be set.
-  and the temperature blink.


## 8. Press to select the desired temperature.

- The temperature can be set between 50°F (10°C) and 90°F (32°C).  
Cooling: The unit operates at 64°F (18°C) even if it is set at 50 (10) to 63°F (17°C).  
Heating: The unit operates at 86°F (30°C) even if it is set at 87 (31) to 90°F (32°C).
- To return to the time setting, press .
- The set temperature is only displayed when the mode setting is on.

## 9. Press .

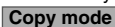
- The temperature will be set and go to the next reservation setting.
- To continue further settings, repeat the procedure from **STEP 4**.

## 10. Press to complete the setting.

- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving tone and flashing the OPERATION lamp.
-  is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.
- The TIMER lamp lights yellow.






Display

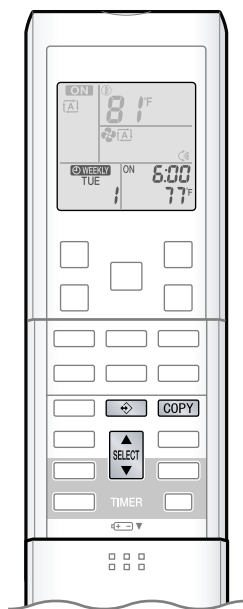
- A reservation made once can be easily copied and the same settings used for another day of the week. Refer to .

## NOTE

### ■ Notes on WEEKLY TIMER operation

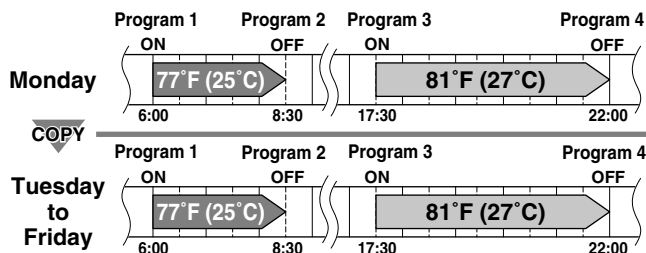
- Do not forget to set the clock on the remote controller first.
- The day of the week, ON/OFF TIMER mode, time and set temperature (only for ON TIMER mode) can be set with WEEKLY TIMER. Other settings for ON TIMER are based on the settings just before the operation.
- Both WEEKLY TIMER and ON/OFF TIMER operation cannot be used at the same time. The ON/OFF TIMER operation has priority if it is set while WEEKLY TIMER is still active. The WEEKLY TIMER will go into standby state, and  will be no longer displayed on the LCD. When ON/OFF TIMER is up, the WEEKLY TIMER will automatically become active.
- Only the time and set temperature with the WEEKLY TIMER are sent with the . Set the WEEKLY TIMER only after setting the operation mode, the airflow rate and the airflow direction ahead of time.
- Shutting the breaker off, power failure, and other similar events will render operation of the indoor unit's internal clock inaccurate. Reset the clock.
- The  can be used only for the time and temperature settings. It cannot be used to go back to the reservation number.



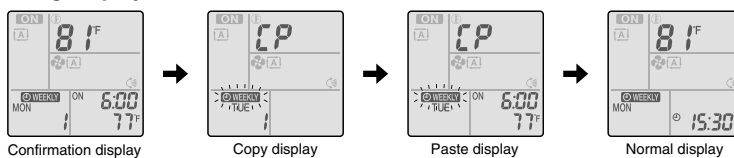


### Copy mode

- A reservation made once can be copied to another day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.



### Setting Displays



1. Press .
2. Press to confirm the day of the week to be copied.
3. Press .
  - The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.
4. Press to select the destination day of the week.
5. Press .
  - The reservation will be copied to the selected day of the week. The whole reservation of the selected day of the week will be copied.
  - To continue copying the settings to other days of the week, repeat **STEP 4** and **STEP 5**.
6. Press to complete the setting.
  - WEEKLY is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.

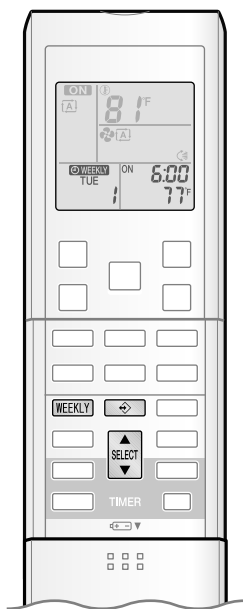
## NOTE

### ■ Note on COPY MODE

- The entire reservation of the source day of the week is copied in the copy mode.

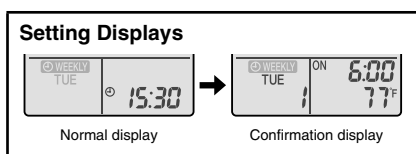
In the case of making a reservation change for any day of the week individually after copying the content of weekly reservations, press and change the settings in the steps of **Setting mode** .





## ■ Confirming a reservation



- The reservation can be confirmed.




### 1. Press .

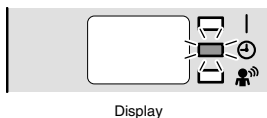
- The day of the week and the reservation number of current day will be displayed.

### 2. Press **SELECT** to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be confirmed.

- Pressing  **SELECT**  displays the reservation details.
- To change the confirmed reserved settings, select the reservation number and press **NEXT**.  
The mode is switched to setting mode. Go to **Setting mode STEP 4**.


### 3. Press to exit confirming mode.

-  **WEEKLY** is displayed on the LCD and WEEKLY TIMER operation is activated.
- The TIMER lamp lights yellow.

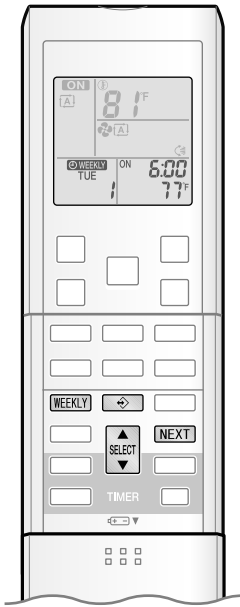


## ■ To deactivate WEEKLY TIMER operation

Press **WEEKLY** while  **WEEKLY** is displayed on the LCD.

-  **WEEKLY** will be no longer displayed on the LCD.
- The TIMER lamp goes off.
- To reactivate the WEEKLY TIMER operation, press **WEEKLY** again.
- If a reservation deactivated with **WEEKLY** is activated once again, the last reservation mode will be used.





## ■ To delete reservations

### The individual reservation

1. Press .  
• The day of the week and the reservation number will be displayed.
2. Press to select the day of the week and the reservation number to be deleted.
3. Press .  
• and ON or OFF blink.
4. Press and select blank.  
• Pressing changes ON/OFF TIMER mode.  
• The reservation has no setting when selecting blank.
5. Press .  
• The selected reservation will be deleted.
6. Press .  
• If there are still other reservations, WEEKLY TIMER operation will be activated.

### The reservations for each day of the week

- This function can be used for deleting reservations for each day of the week.
- It can be used while confirming or setting reservations.

1. Press to select the day of the week to be deleted.
2. Hold for 5 seconds.  
• The reservation of the selected day of the week will be deleted.

### All reservations

Hold for 5 seconds while normal display.

- Be sure to direct the remote controller toward the indoor unit and check for a receiving tone.
- This operation is not effective on the setting display of WEEKLY TIMER.
- All reservations will be deleted.



## 7.14 Other Functions

### 7.14.1 Hot-Start Function

In order to prevent the cold air blast that normally comes when heating operation is started, the temperature of the indoor heat exchanger is detected, and the airflow is either stopped or made very weak thereby carrying out comfortable heating of the room.

\*The cold air blast is also prevented using similar control when the defrosting operation is started or when the thermostat is turned ON.

### 7.14.2 Signal Receiving Sign

When the indoor unit receives a signal from the remote controller, the unit emits a signal receiving sound.

### 7.14.3 Indoor Unit ON/OFF Button

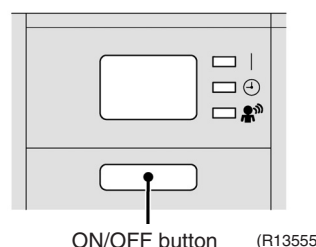
An **ON/OFF** button is provided on the display of the unit.

- Press the **ON/OFF** button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.
- The **ON/OFF** button is useful when the remote controller is missing or the battery has run out.
- The operation mode refers to the following table.

| Operation mode | Temperature setting | Airflow rate |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------|
| AUTO           | 25°C (77°F)         | Automatic    |

- In the case of multi system operation, there are times when the unit does not activate with the **ON/OFF** button.

Ex: CTXS-L, FTXS-L series



### 7.14.4 Air-Purifying Filter with Photocatalytic Deodorizing Function

**CTXS-J, CTXS-H Series**

This filter incorporates the benefits the Air-Purifying Filter and Photocatalytic Deodorizing Filter in a single unit. Combining the two filters in this way increases the active surface area of the new filter. This larger surface area allows the filter to effectively trap microscopic particles, decompose odors and deactivate bacteria and viruses even for the large living rooms. The filter can be used for approximately 3 years if periodic maintenance is performed.

### 7.14.5 Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Air-Purifying Filter

**CTXS-L, FTXS-L Series**

This filter combines the Air-Purifying Filter and Titanium Apatite Photocatalytic Deodorizing Filter as a single highly effective filter. The filter traps microscopic particles, decomposes odors and even deactivates bacteria and viruses. It lasts for 3 years without replacement if washed about once every 6 months.

### 7.14.6 Auto-restart Function

If a power failure (including one for just a moment) occurs during the operation, the operation automatically restarts when the power is restored in the same condition as before the power failure.



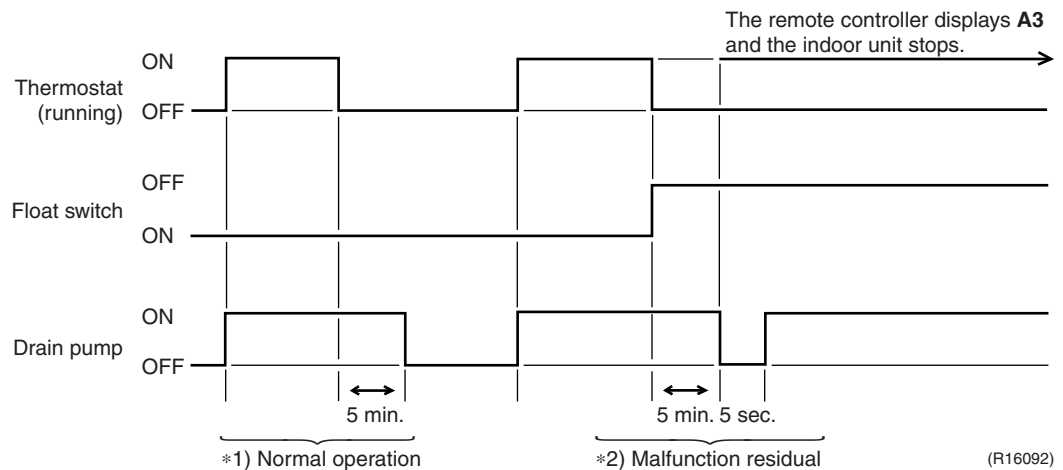
**Note:** It takes 3 minutes to restart the operation because the 3-minute standby function is activated.



## 8. Function of FFQ Series

### 8.1 Drain Pump Control

#### 8.1.1 When the Float Switch is Tripped While the Cooling Thermostat is ON:



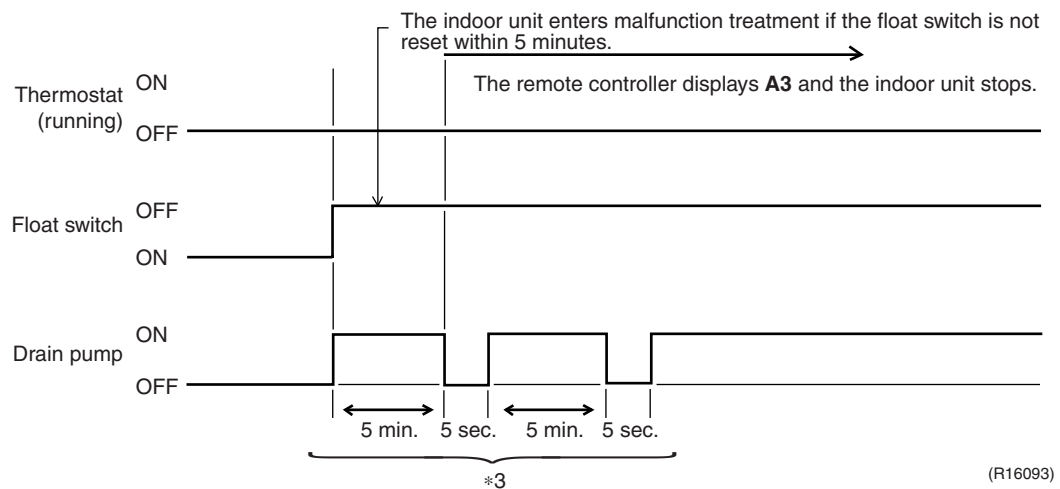
\*1. (Normal operation):

The purpose of residual operation is to completely drain any moisture adhering to the fin of the indoor heat exchanger when the thermostat goes off during cooling operation.

\*2. (Malfunction residual):

The remote controller displays **A3** and the air conditioner comes to an abnormal stop in 5 minutes if the float switch is turned OFF while the cooling thermostat is ON.

#### 8.1.2 When the Float Switch is Tripped While the Cooling Thermostat is OFF:

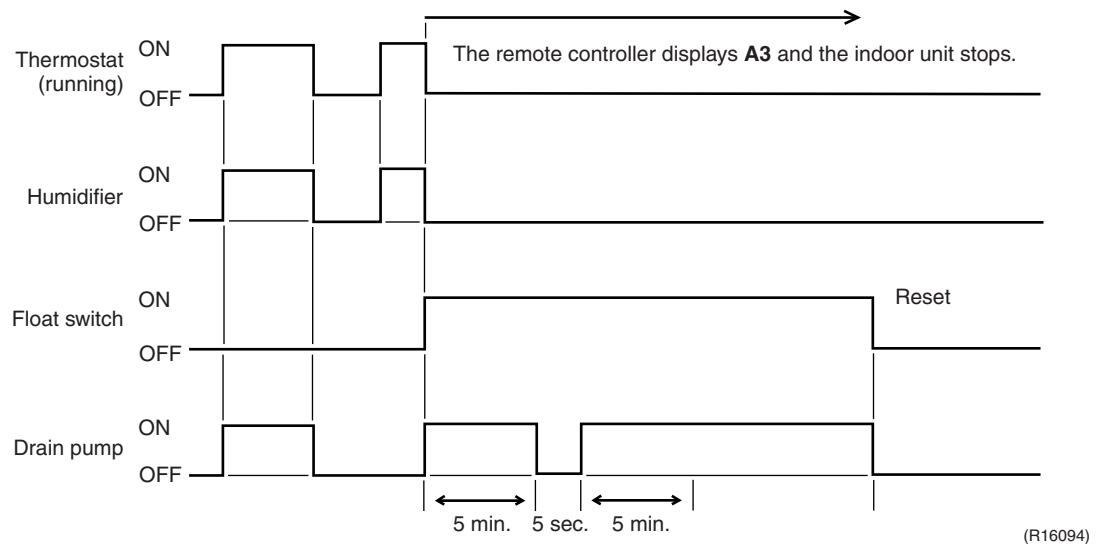


\*3. (Malfunction residual):

The remote controller displays **A3** and the air conditioner comes to an abnormal stop if the float switch is turned OFF and not turned ON again within 5 minutes while the cooling thermostat is OFF.

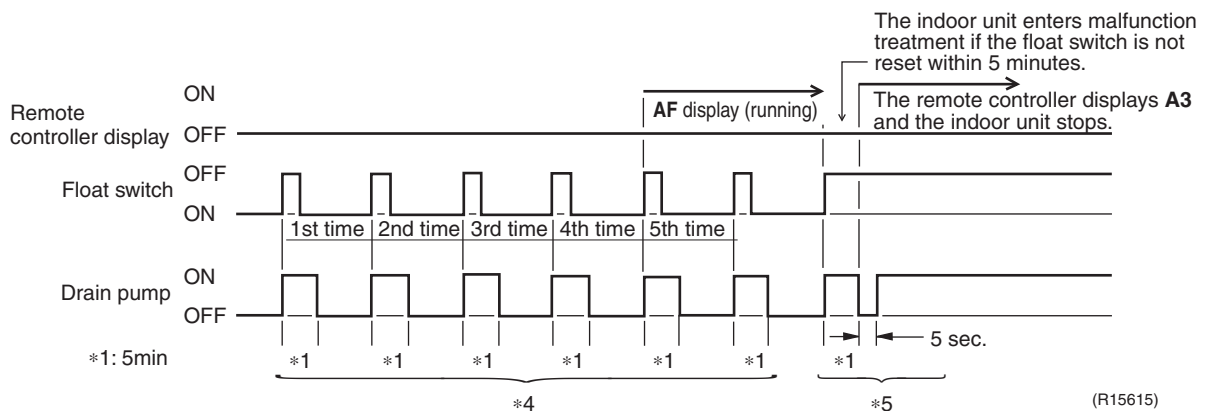


### 8.1.3 When the Float Switch is Tripped During Heating Operation:



During heating operation, if the float switch is not reset even after the 5 minutes operation, 5 seconds stop, 5 minutes operation cycle ends, operation continues until the switch is reset.

### 8.1.4 When the Float Switch is Tripped and AF is Displayed on the Remote Controller:



\*4. (Malfunction residual):

If the float switch is tripped 5 times in succession, a drain malfunction is determined to have occurred. **AF** is then displayed as operation continues.

\*5. (Malfunction residual):

The remote controller displays **A3** and the air conditioner comes to an abnormal stop if the float switch is OFF for more than 5 minutes in the case of \*4.



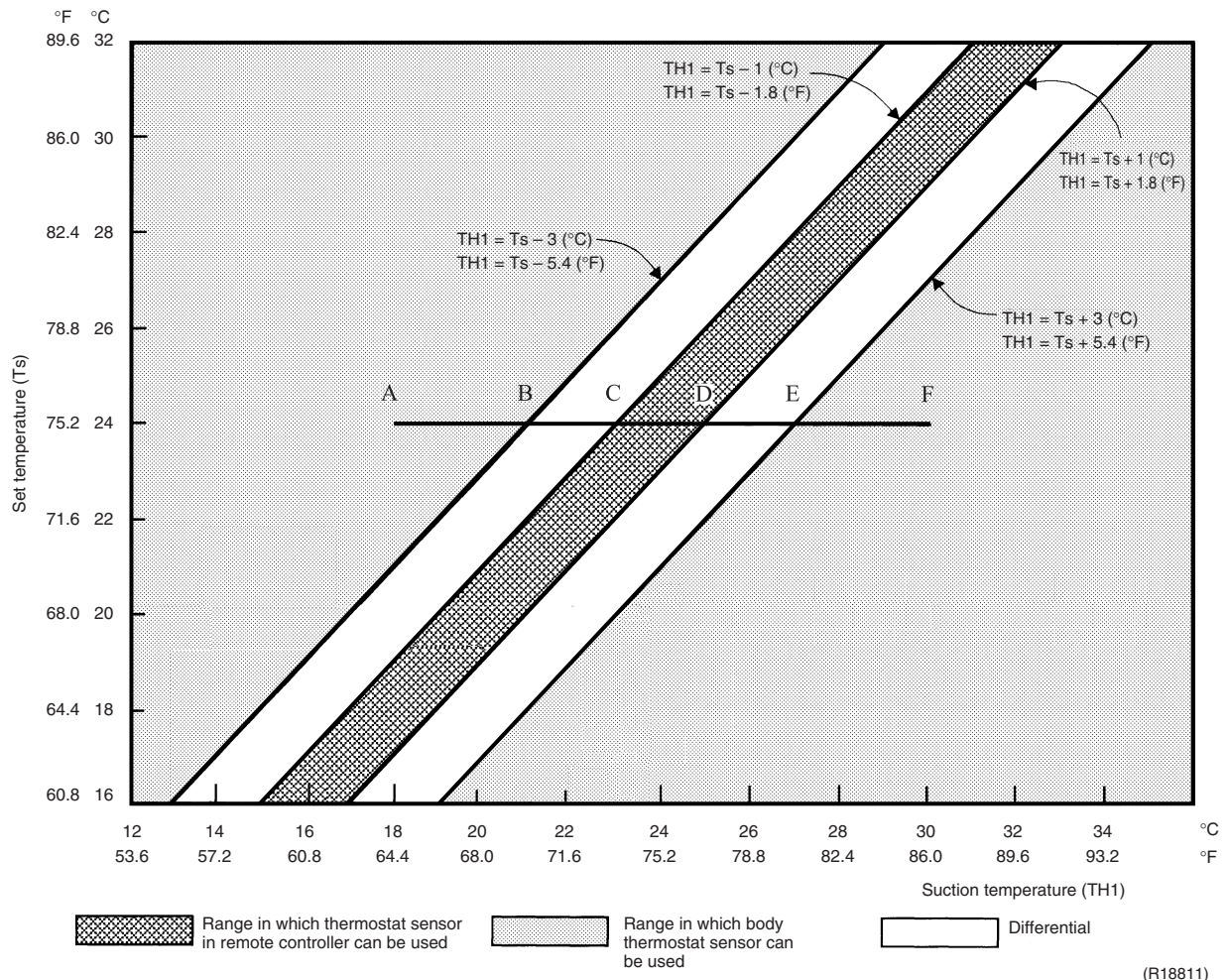
## 8.2 Thermostat Sensor in Remote Controller

### Outline

Temperature is controlled by both the thermostat sensor in remote controller and air suction thermostat in the indoor unit. (This is however limited to when the field setting for the thermostat sensor in remote controller is utilized.)

### Cooling

If there is a significant difference in the set temperature and the suction temperature, fine adjustment control is carried out using a body thermostat sensor, or using the sensor in the remote controller near the position of the user when the suction temperature is near the set temperature.



■ **Assuming the set temperature in the figure above is 24°C (75.2°F), and the suction temperature has changed from 18°C (64.4°F) to 30°C (86°F) (A → F):**

(This example also assumes there are several other air conditioners, and the suction temperature changes even when the thermostat sensor is off.)

18 → 23°C (64.4 → 73.4°F) (A → C): Body thermostat sensor is used.

23 → 27°C (73.4 → 80.6°F) (C → E): Remote controller thermostat sensor is used.

27 → 30°C (80.6 → 86°F) (E → F): Body thermostat sensor is used.

■ **Assuming suction temperature has changed from 30°C (86°F) to 18°C (64.4°F) (F → A):**

30 → 25°C (86 → 77°F) (F → D): Body thermostat sensor is used.

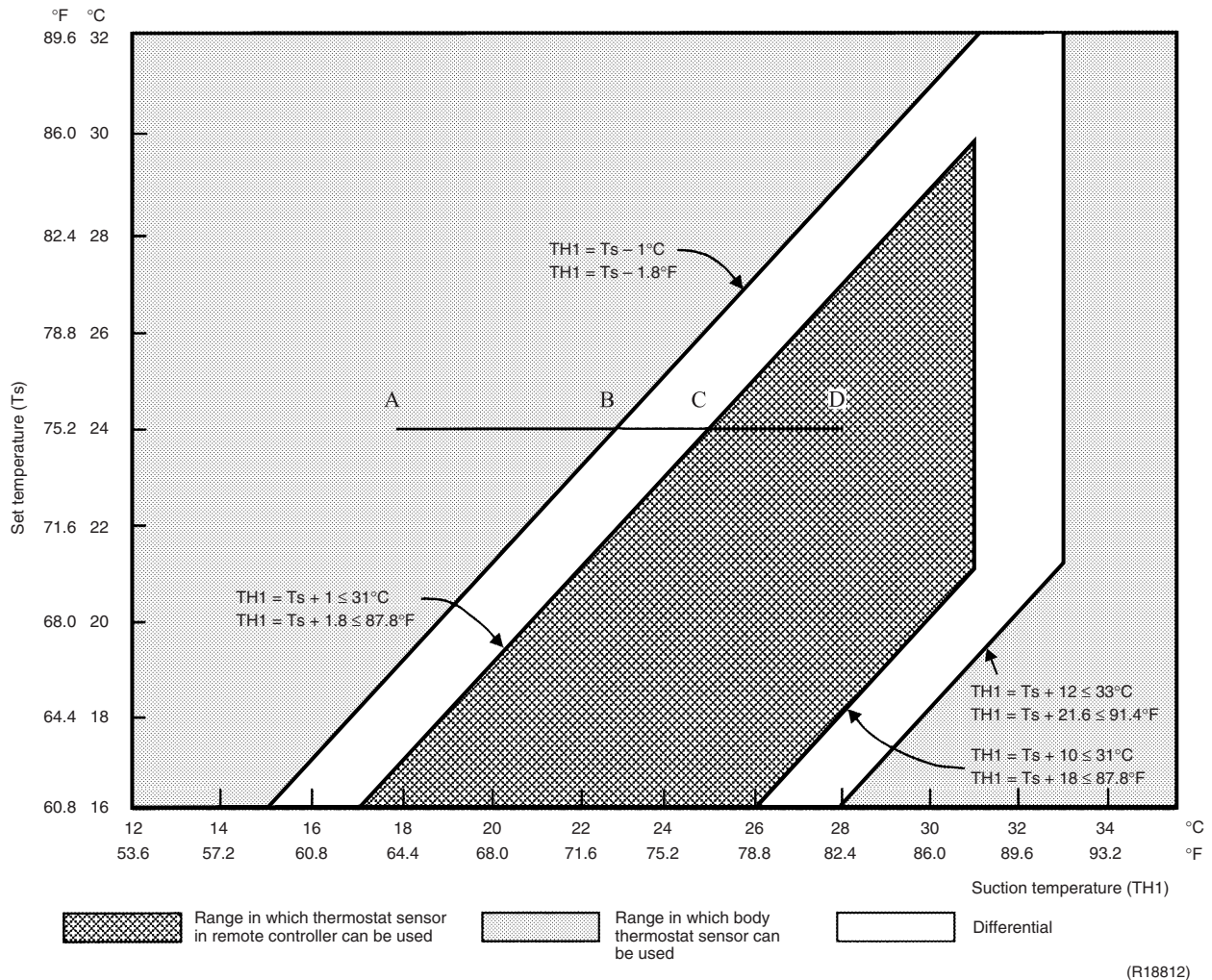
25 → 21°C (77 → 69.8°F) (D → B): Remote controller thermostat sensor is used.

21 → 18°C (69.8 → 64.4°F) (B → A): Body thermostat sensor is used.



## Heating

When heating, the hot air rises to the top of the room, resulting in the temperature being lower near the floor where the occupants are. When controlling by body thermostat sensor only, the indoor unit may therefore be turned off by the thermostat before the lower part of the room reaches the set temperature. The temperature can be controlled so the lower part of the room where the occupants are does not become cold by widening the range in which thermostat sensor in remote controller can be used so that suction temperature is higher than the set temperature.



■ Assuming the set temperature in the figure above is 24°C (75.2°F), and the suction temperature has changed from 18°C (64.4°F) to 28°C (82.4°F) (A → D):

(This example also assumes there are several other air conditioners, and the suction temperature changes even when the thermostat sensor is off.)

18 → 25°C (64.4 → 77°F) (A → C): Body thermostat sensor is used.

25 → 28°C (77 → 82.4°F) (C → D): Remote controller thermostat sensor is used.

■ Assuming suction temperature has changed from 28°C (82.4°F) to 18°C (64.4°F) (D → A):

28 → 23°C (82.4 → 73.4°F) (D → B): Remote controller thermostat sensor is used.

23 → 18°C (73.4 → 64.4°F) (B → A): Body thermostat sensor is used.

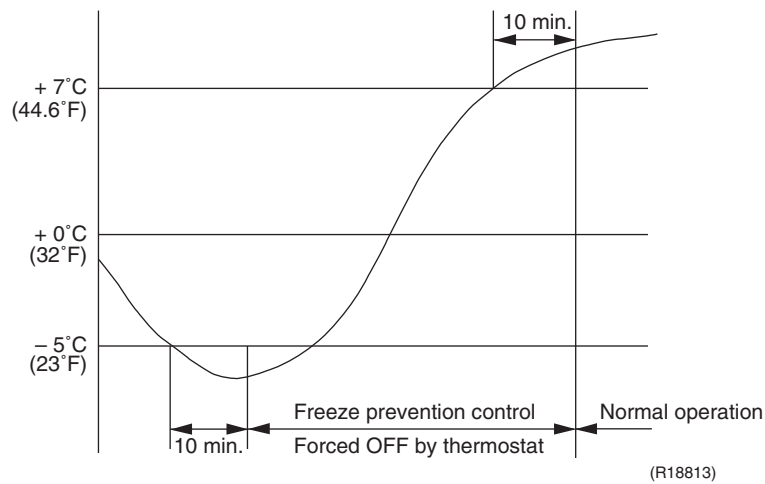


8.3 Freeze Prevention Control

When the temperature detected by liquid pipe thermistor (R2T) of the indoor heat exchanger drops too low, the unit enters freeze prevention control in accordance with the following conditions, and is also set in accordance with the conditions given below.

Conditions for starting: Temperature is −1°C (30.2°F) or less for total of 40 min., or temperature is −5°C (23°F) or less for total of 10 min.  
Conditions for cancelling: Temperature is +7°C (44.6°F) or more for 10 min. continuously

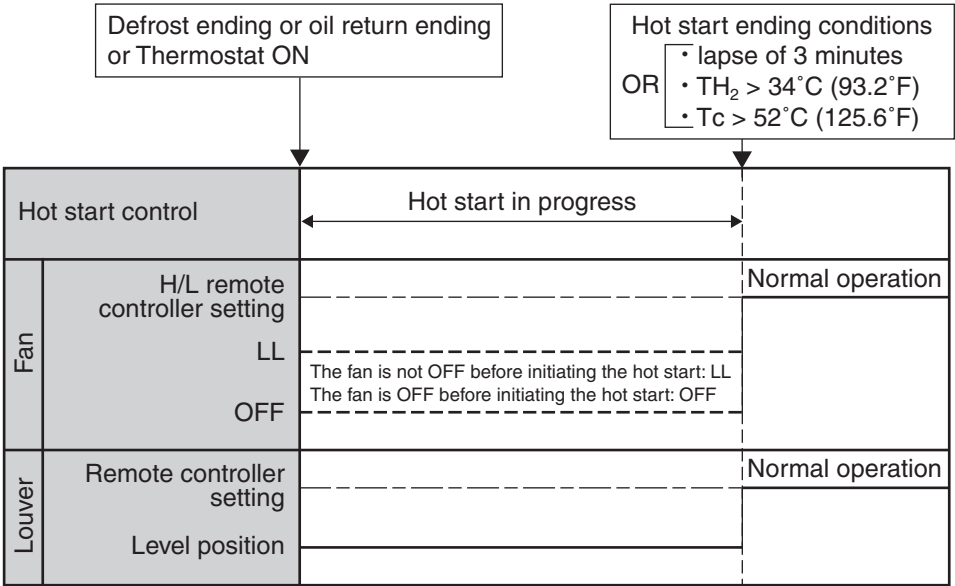
Ex: Case where temperature is −5°C (23°F) or less for total of 10 min.



8.4 Hot Start Control (In Heating Operation Only)

**Outline** At startup with thermostat ON or after the completion of defrosting in heating operation, the indoor unit fan is controlled to prevent cold air from blasting out and ensure startup capacity.

**Detail**



(R19187)

TH<sub>2</sub>: Temperature detected by the gas thermistor  
Tc: High pressure equivalent saturation temperature



---

# Part 6

# Test Operation and Field Settings

- 1. Test Operation ..... 86
  - 1.1 Procedure and Outline ..... 86
  - 1.2 Operation when Power is Turned On ..... 88
  - 1.3 Branch Provider (BP) Unit ..... 89
  - 1.4 RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series ..... 91
  - 1.5 SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series..... 92
- 2. Field Settings ..... 94
  - 2.1 Outdoor Unit ..... 94
  - 2.2 RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series ..... 108
  - 2.3 SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series..... 111



# 1. Test Operation

## 1.1 Procedure and Outline

Follow the following procedure to conduct the initial test operation after installation.

### 1.1.1 Check Work Prior to Turn Power Supply On

Check the below items.

- Power wiring
- Control transmission wiring between units
- Ground wire



Check on refrigerant piping.



Check on amount of refrigerant charge.

(R12942)

- Is the power supply single-phase 208 ~ 230 V, 60 Hz?
- Have you finished a duct work to drain?
- Have you detach transport fitting?
- Is the wiring performed as specified?
- Are the designated wires used?
- Is the grounding work completed?  
Use a 500 V megger tester to measure the insulation.  
Do not use a megger tester for other than 208 - 230 V circuit.
- Are the screws of wiring not loose?
- Is the electrical component box covered with an insulation cover completely?

- Is pipe size proper? (The design pressure of this product is 4.0 MPa (1338 ftAq).)
- Are pipe insulation materials installed securely?  
Liquid and gas pipes need to be insulated. (Otherwise causes water leak.)
- Are respective stop valves on liquid and gas line securely open?

- Is refrigerant charged up to the specified amount?  
If insufficient, charge the refrigerant from the service port of stop valve on the liquid side with outdoor unit in stop mode after turning power on.

### 1.1.2 Turn Power On

Turn outdoor unit power on.



Turn indoor unit power on.



Carry out field setting on outdoor PCB.

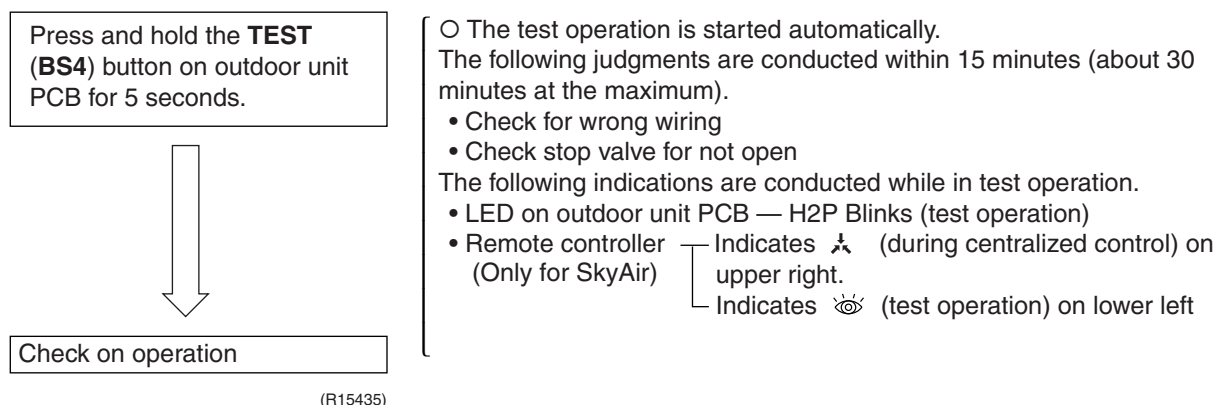
(R12995)

- Be sure to turn the power on 6 hours before starting operation to protect compressors.
- Close outside panels of the outdoor unit.



### 1.1.3 Check Operation

- \* During check operation, mount front panel to avoid the misjudging.
- \* Check operation is mandatory for normal unit operation.  
(When the check operation is not executed, alarm code **U3** is displayed.)



On completion of test operation, LED on outdoor unit PCB displays the following.

H3P ON: Normal completion

H2P and H3P ON: Abnormal completion → Check the indoor unit remote controller for error code display and correct it.

| Error code | Nonconformity during installation                                                          | Remedial action                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>E3</b>  | The stop valve of the outdoor unit is left closed.                                         | Open the gas-side stop valve and the liquid-side stop valve.                                                                                                                                |
|            | Refrigerant overcharged                                                                    | Recalculate the required amount of refrigerant from the piping length and correct the refrigerant charge level by recovering any excessive refrigerant with a refrigerant recovery machine. |
| <b>E4</b>  | The stop valve of the outdoor unit is left closed.                                         | Open the gas-side stop valve and the liquid-side stop valve.                                                                                                                                |
|            | Refrigerant shortage                                                                       | Check if the additional refrigerant charge has been finished correctly.                                                                                                                     |
|            |                                                                                            | Recalculate the required amount of refrigerant from the piping length and add an adequate amount of refrigerant.                                                                            |
| <b>F3</b>  | Refrigerant overcharged                                                                    | Recalculate the required amount of refrigerant from the piping length and correct the refrigerant charge level by recovering any excessive refrigerant with a refrigerant recovery machine. |
|            | The stop valve of the outdoor unit is left closed.                                         | Open the gas-side stop valve and the liquid-side stop valve.                                                                                                                                |
|            | Refrigerant shortage                                                                       | Check if the additional refrigerant charge has been finished correctly.                                                                                                                     |
|            |                                                                                            | Recalculate the required amount of refrigerant from the piping length and add an adequate amount of refrigerant.                                                                            |
| <b>F6</b>  | Refrigerant overcharged                                                                    | Recalculate the required amount of refrigerant from the piping length and correct the refrigerant charge level by recovering any excessive refrigerant with a refrigerant recovery machine. |
| <b>U2</b>  | Insufficient power supply voltage                                                          | Check if the power supply voltage is supplied properly.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>U3</b>  | If a check operation has not been performed.                                               | Perform a check operation.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>U4</b>  | No power is supplied to the outdoor unit.                                                  | Turn the power on for the outdoor unit.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>UA</b>  | If no dedicated indoor unit is being used.                                                 | Check the indoor unit. If it is not a dedicated unit, replace the indoor unit.                                                                                                              |
| <b>UF</b>  | The stop valve of the outdoor unit is left closed.                                         | Open the gas-side stop valve and the liquid-side stop valve.                                                                                                                                |
|            | If the right indoor unit piping and wiring are not properly connected to the outdoor unit. | Make sure that the right indoor unit piping and wiring are properly connected to the outdoor unit.                                                                                          |
| <b>UH</b>  | If the interunit wiring has not be connected or it has shorted.                            | Make sure the interunit wiring is correctly attached to terminals (X2M) F1/F2 on the outdoor unit circuit board.                                                                            |



### 1.1.4 Confirmation on Normal Operation

- Conduct normal unit operation after the check operation has been completed.  
(When outdoor air temperature is 24°CDB (75.2°FDB) or higher, the unit can not be operated with heating operation. See the installation manual attached.)
- Confirm that the indoor/outdoor units can be operated normally.  
(When an abnormal noise due to liquid compression by the compressor can be heard, stop the unit immediately, and turn on the crankcase heater to heat up it sufficiently, then start operation again.)
- Operate indoor unit one by one to check that the corresponding outdoor unit operates.
- Confirm that the indoor unit discharges cold air (or warm air).
- Operate the air direction control button and flow rate control button to check the function of the devices.

## 1.2 Operation when Power is Turned On

### 1.2.1 When Turning On Power First Time

The unit cannot be run for up to 12 minutes to automatically set the master power and address (indoor-outdoor address, etc.).

#### Status

Outdoor unit

Test lamp H2P .... Blinks

Can also be set during operation described above.

Indoor unit

If the **ON** button is pushed during operation described above, the **UH** malfunction indicator blinks.  
(Returns to normal when automatic setting is complete.)

### 1.2.2 When Turning On Power the Second Time and Subsequent

Push the **RESET (BS5)** button on the outdoor unit PCB. Operation becomes possible for about 2 minutes. If you do not push the **RESET** button, the unit cannot be run for up to 10 minutes to automatically set master power.

#### Status

Outdoor unit

Test lamp H2P .... Blinks

Can also be set during operation described above.

Indoor unit

If the **ON** button is pushed during operation described above, the operation lamp lights but the compressor does not operate. (Returns to normal when automatic setting is complete.)

### 1.2.3 When an Indoor Unit or Outdoor Unit has been Added, or Indoor or Outdoor Unit PCB has been Changed

Be sure to push and hold the **RESET** button for 5 seconds. If not, the addition cannot be recognized. In this case, the unit cannot be run for up to 12 minutes to automatically set the address (indoor-outdoor address, etc.).

#### Status

Outdoor unit

Test lamp H2P .... ON

Can also be set during operation described above.

Indoor unit

If the **ON** button is pushed during operation described above, the **UH** or **U4** malfunction indicator blinks. (Returns to normal when automatic setting is complete.)

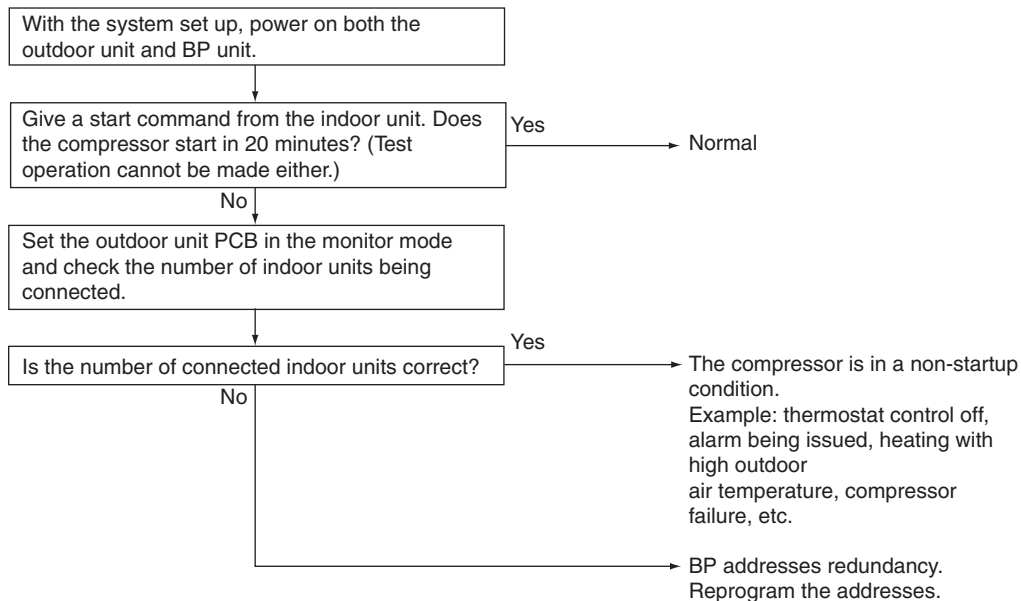


## 1.3 Branch Provider (BP) Unit

### 1.3.1 Judging and reprogramming in case of redundant BP addresses

The BP unit of this system is provided with specific addresses in its production stage. These addresses are for various controls. If by any chance (on 3 out of 260000 units) these addresses are redundant, the system may get in trouble. When replacing the PCB of the BP unit too, these addresses may be used repeatedly.

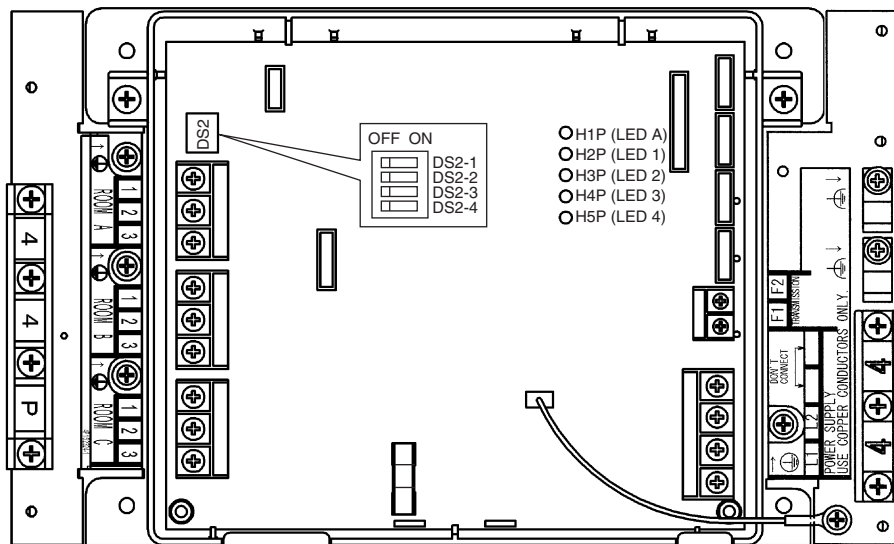
#### Address redundancy checking flowchart



(Q0517)

#### Reprogramming the PCB addresses of BP unit

Modify the DIP switch (DS2) settings on the BP unit's PCB in the following way.



(R19088)



**Example of DIP switch (DS2) settings on the BP unit's PCB**

|           | DS2-1 | DS2-2 | DS2-3 | DS2-4 |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| BP unit 1 | OFF   | OFF   | ON    | OFF   |
| BP unit 2 | OFF   | OFF   | OFF   | ON    |
| BP unit 3 | OFF   | OFF   | ON    | ON    |

DS1 ~ 4 : Factory setting is OFF.

The BP unit 1 through 3 show the first through third unit, respectively. The order of these BP units is flexible.

The above table is only for your reference. The redundancy of addresses can be avoided when the DIP switch settings are individually specified.

With the DIP switch settings reprogrammed, power on the outdoor unit and BP unit again. Check for address redundancy.



**Note:** If an error message is displayed on the indoor unit, BP unit or outdoor unit, follow its code and description.



## 1.4 RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

### Outline

1. Measure the power supply voltage and make sure that it falls within the specified range.
2. Test operation should be carried out in either cooling or heating operation.  
In cooling operation, select the lowest programmable temperature (18°C (64°F)); in heating operation, select the highest programmable temperature (30°C (86°F)).
  - ♦ Test operation may be disabled in either operation mode depending on the room temperature.
  - ♦ After test operation is complete, set the temperature to a normal level.  
(26 ~ 28°C (78 ~ 82°F) in cooling, 20 ~ 24°C (68 ~ 75°F) in heating)
  - ♦ For protection, the system does not start for 3 minutes after it is turned off.
3. Carry out the test operation in accordance with the operation manual to ensure that all functions and parts, such as louver movement, are working properly.

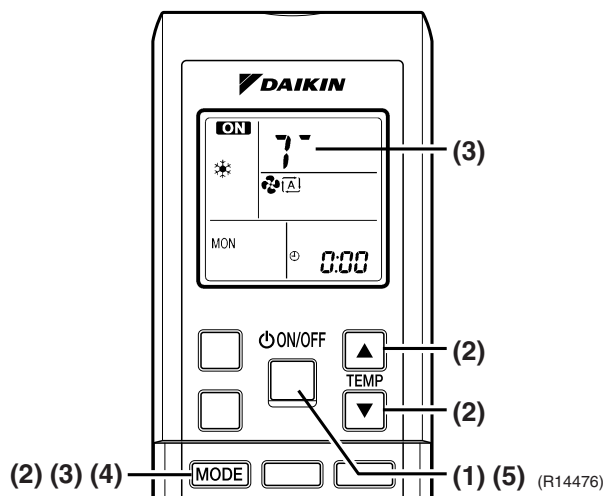


- Note:**
- The air conditioner requires a small amount of power in standby mode. If the system is not to be used for some time after installation, shut off the circuit breaker to eliminate unnecessary power consumption.
  - If the circuit breaker trips to shut off the power to the air conditioner, the system backs up the operation mode. The system then restarts operation with the previous operation mode when the circuit breaker is restored.

### Detail

#### ARC452 Series

- (1) Press the **ON/OFF** button to turn on the system.
- (2) Press the both of **TEMP** buttons and the **MODE** button at the same time.
- (3) Press the **MODE** button twice.  
(? is displayed on the screen to indicate that test operation is selected.)
- (4) Press the **MODE** button and select the operation mode.
- (5) Test operation terminates in approx. 30 minutes and switches into normal mode. To quit a test operation, press the **ON/OFF** button.





## 1.5 SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series

### 1.5.1 Checkpoints

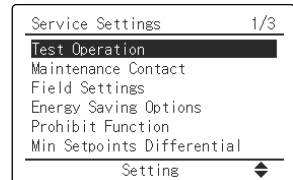
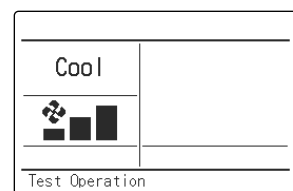
To carry out a test operation, check the following:

- Check that the temperature setting of the remote controller is at the lowest level in cooling operation or use test operation mode.
- Go through the following checklist:

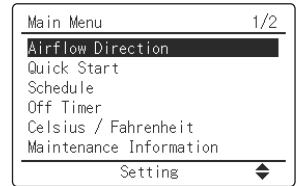
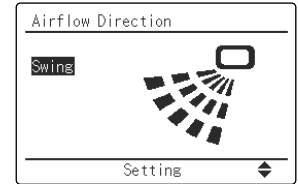
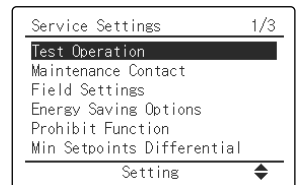
| Checkpoints                                                                  | Cautions or warnings                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Are all units securely installed?                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Dangerous for turning over during storm</li> <li>● Possible damage to pipe connections</li> </ul> |
| Is the ground wire installed according to the applicable local standard?     | Dangerous if electric leakage occurs.                                                                                                      |
| Are all air inlets and outlets of the indoor and outdoor units unobstructed? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Poor cooling</li> <li>● Poor heating</li> </ul>                                                   |
| Does the drain flow out smoothly?                                            | Water leakage                                                                                                                              |
| Is piping adequately heat-insulated?                                         | Water leakage                                                                                                                              |
| Have the connections been checked for refrigerant leakage?                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Poor cooling</li> <li>● Poor heating</li> <li>● Stop</li> </ul>                                   |
| Is the power supply voltage conform to the specifications on the name plate? | Incorrect operation                                                                                                                        |
| Are the cable sizes as specified and according to local regulations?         | Damage of cables                                                                                                                           |
| Are the remote controller signals received by the unit?                      | No operation                                                                                                                               |

### 1.5.2 Test operation



#### BRC1E72

| Step                                  | Action                                                                                           | Remote controller                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Before test operation</b>          |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                   |
| 1                                     | Turn on the power supply more than 6 hours before test operation.                                |                                                                                                   |
| 2                                     | Open the gas stop valve.                                                                         |                                                                                                   |
| 3                                     | Open the liquid stop valve.                                                                      |                                                                                                   |
| <b>How to activate test operation</b> |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                   |
| 4                                     | Press and hold the <b>Cancel</b> button for 4 seconds to enter the <b>Service Settings</b> menu. |                                                                                                   |
| 5                                     | Use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select <b>Test Operation</b> and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button.    | <br>(R18827) |
| 6                                     | <b>Test Operation</b> is displayed on the bottom of the basic screen.                            | <br>(R18828) |
| 7                                     | Push the <b>On/Off</b> button within 10 seconds to start the test operation.                     |                                                                                                   |



| Step                                    | Action                                                                                                    | Remote controller                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>How to check airflow direction</b>   |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                      |
| <b>8</b>                                | Push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button to enter the <b>Main Menu</b> .                                            |                                                                                                      |
| <b>9</b>                                | Use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select <b>Airflow Direction</b> and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button.          |  <p>(R18829)</p>  |
| <b>10</b>                               | Check that the airflow direction is actuated according to the setting and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button. |  <p>(R18830)</p>  |
| <b>How to deactivate test operation</b> |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                      |
| <b>11</b>                               | Press and hold the <b>Cancel</b> button for 4 seconds to enter the <b>Service Settings</b> menu.          |                                                                                                      |
| <b>12</b>                               | Use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select <b>Test Operation</b> in the menu and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button. |  <p>(R18827)</p> |

**BRC7E830**

| Step     | Action                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | Turn on the power supply more than 6 hours before test operation.                                                                                                                               |
| <b>2</b> | Open the gas stop valve.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>3</b> | Open the liquid stop valve.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>4</b> | Set to cooling operation with the remote controller and start operation by pressing <b>ON/OFF</b> button.                                                                                       |
| <b>5</b> | Press the <b>INSPECTION/TEST</b> button (  /TEST ) 2 times and operate at test operation mode for 3 minutes. |
| <b>6</b> | Press the <b>SWING</b> button to make sure the unit is in operation.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>7</b> | Press the <b>INSPECTION/TEST</b> button (  /TEST ) and operate normally.                                     |
| <b>8</b> | Confirm all functions of the unit according to the operation manual.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>9</b> | If the decoration panel has not been installed, turn off the power after the test operation.                                                                                                    |



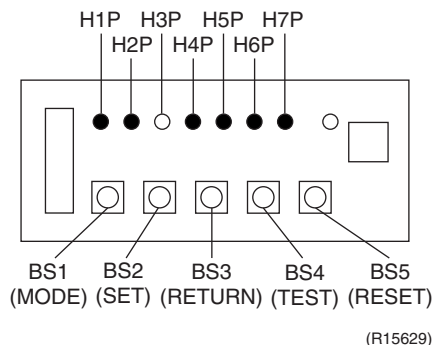
## 2. Field Settings

### 2.1 Outdoor Unit

#### 2.1.1 Setting Mode and Monitor Mode

##### Outline

The following 3 modes can be changed over with the button switches on the service PCB and you can find the present mode by the status of the H1P indicator.



##### (1) Setting mode 1 (H1P off)

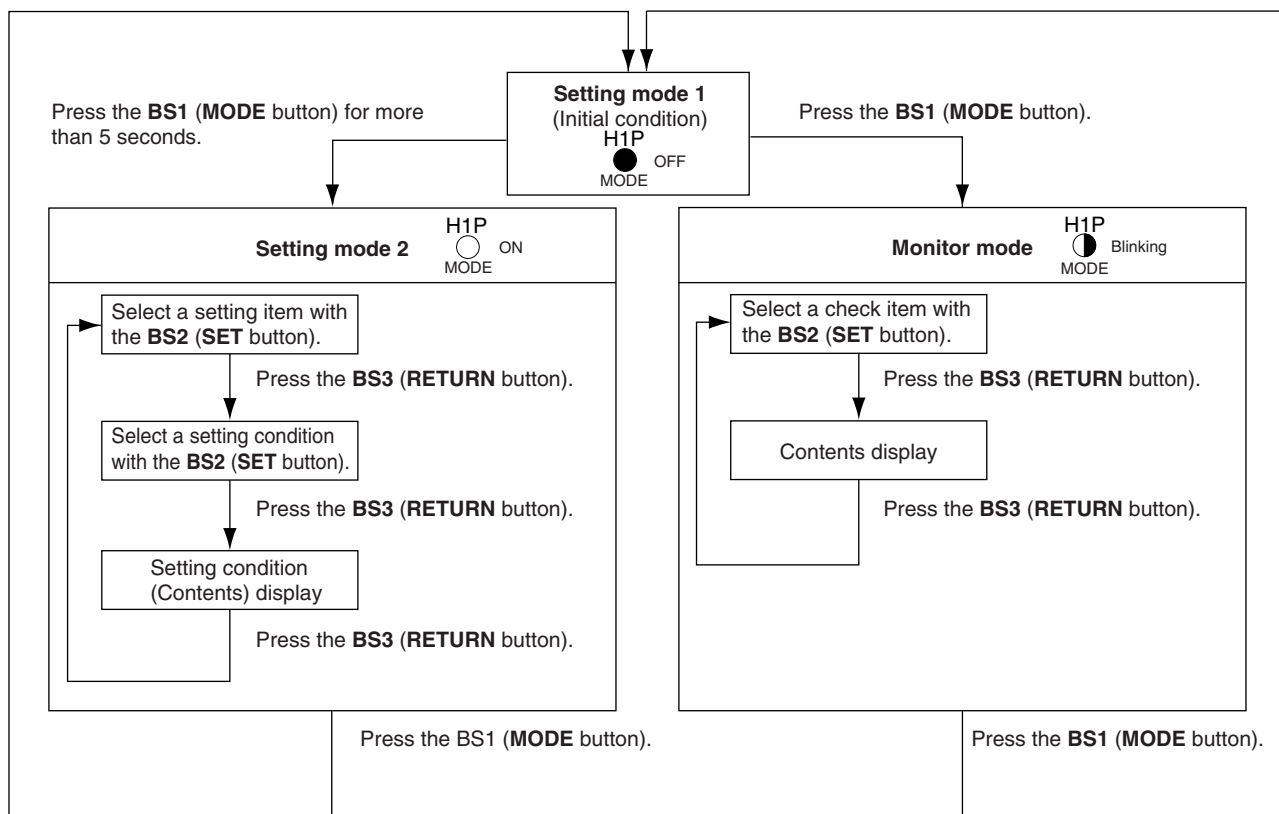
Initial status (normal) : Also indicates during abnormal.

##### (2) Setting mode 2 (H1P on)

Used to modify the operating status and to set program addresses, etc. Usually used in servicing the system.

##### (3) Monitor mode (H1P blinks)

Used to check the program made in setting mode 2.



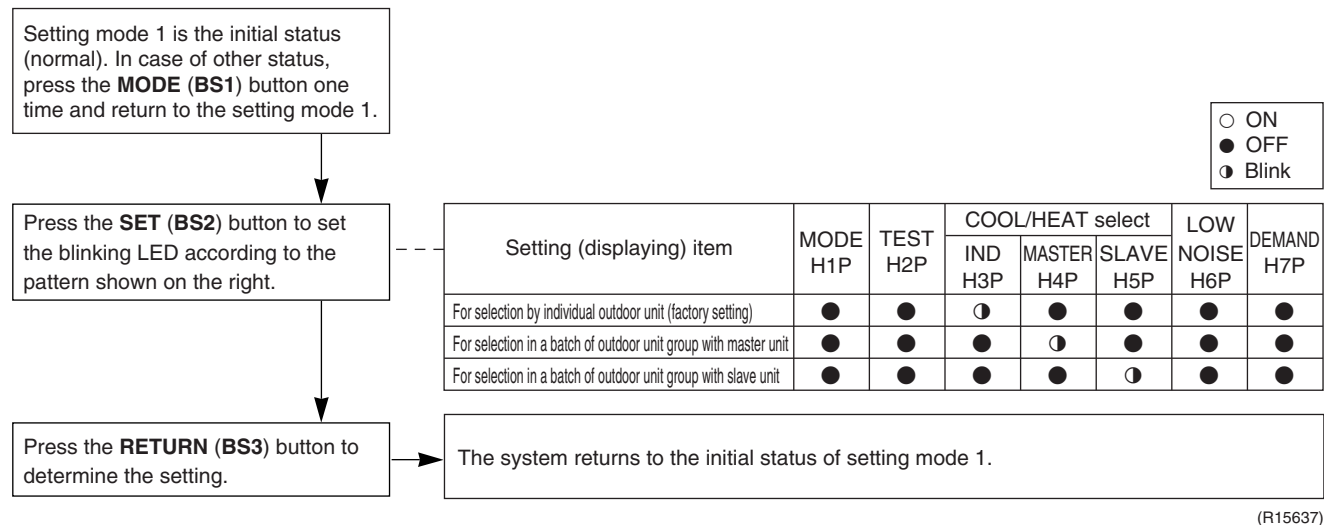


## Setting Mode 1

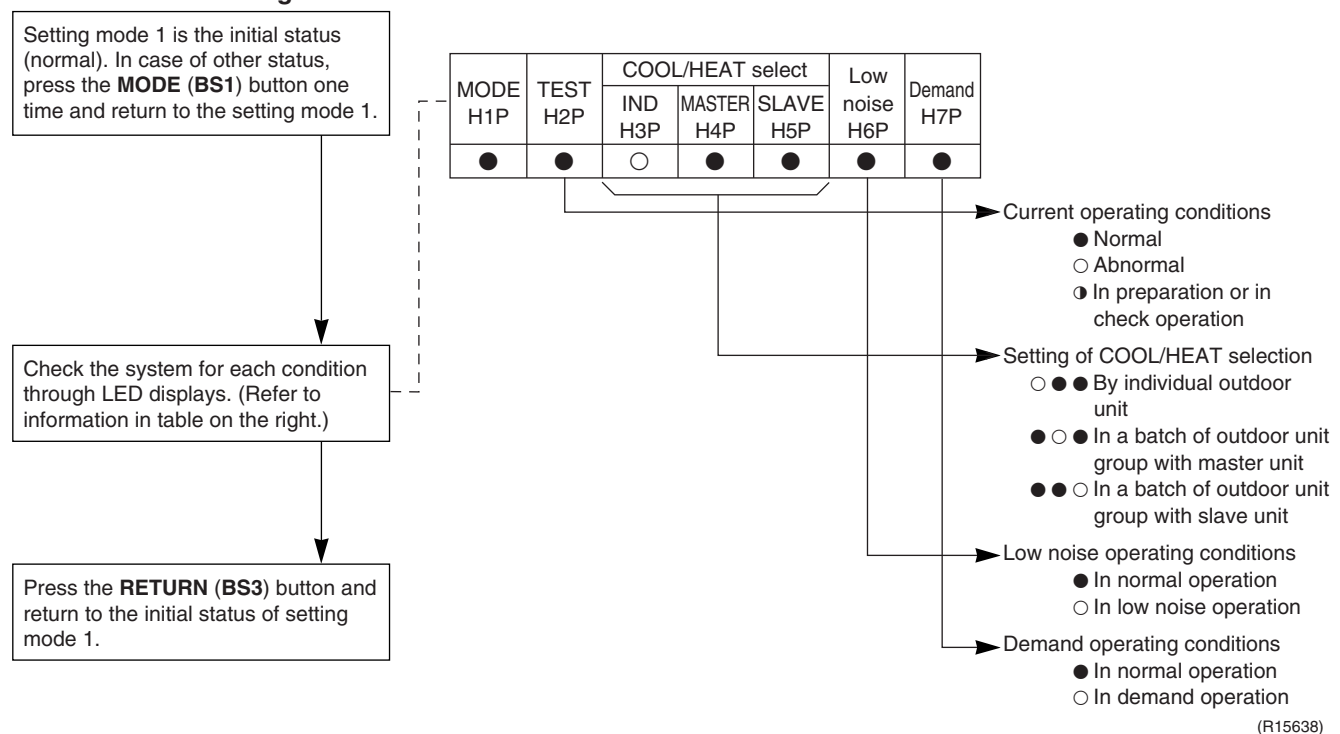
This mode is used to set and check the following items.

1. Set items ..... In order to make COOL/HEAT selection in a batch of outdoor unit group, change the setting.
  - COOL/HEAT selection (IND) ..... Used to select COOL or HEAT by individual outdoor unit (factory setting).
  - COOL/HEAT selection (MASTER) ..... Used to select COOL or HEAT by outdoor unit group with the master unit.
  - COOL/HEAT selection (SLAVE) ..... Used to select COOL or HEAT by outdoor unit group with the slave unit.
2. Check items ..... The following items can be checked.
  - (1) Current operating conditions (Normal / Abnormal / In check operation)
  - (2) Setting conditions of COOL/HEAT selection (Individual / Batch master / Batch slave)
  - (3) Low noise operating conditions (In normal operation / In low noise operation)
  - (4) Demand operating conditions (In normal operation / In demand operation)

### Procedure for changing COOL/HEAT selection setting



### Procedure for checking





## Setting Mode 2

Press the **MODE (BS1)** button for 5 seconds and enter the setting mode 2.

### <Selection of setting items>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button and select a setting item according to the LED pattern shown in the table on the right.

↓  
Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button and decide the item. (The present setting condition is shown.)

### <Selection of setting conditions>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button and select to the setting condition you want.

↓  
Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button and decide the condition.

Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button and return to the initial status of setting mode 2.

\* If you become unsure of how to proceed, press the **MODE (BS1)** button and return to the setting mode 1.

| No. | Setting item                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Cool / heat unified address                                                   | Sets address for cool / heat unified operation.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2   | Low noise / demand address                                                    | Address for low noise / demand operation                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3   | Test operation settings                                                       | Used to conduct test operation without making changes to the PCB and replacing the refrigerant, after the completion of maintenance.                                                                    |
| 5   | Indoor unit forced fan H                                                      | Allows forced operation of indoor unit fan while unit is stopped. (H tap)                                                                                                                               |
| 6   | Indoor unit forced operation                                                  | Allows forced operation of indoor unit.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 8   | Te setting                                                                    | Target evaporation temperature for cooling                                                                                                                                                              |
| 9   | Tc setting                                                                    | Target condensation temperature for heating                                                                                                                                                             |
| 10  | Defrost changeover setting                                                    | Changes the temperature condition for defrost and sets to quick defrost or slow defrost.                                                                                                                |
| 12  | External low noise setting / Demand setting                                   | Reception of external low noise or demand signal                                                                                                                                                        |
| 13  | AIRNET address                                                                | Set address for AIRNET.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 16  | Setting of hot water heater                                                   | Make this setting to conduct heating operation with hot water heater.                                                                                                                                   |
| 20  | Additional refrigerant charge operation setting                               | Carries out additional refrigerant charge operation.                                                                                                                                                    |
| 21  | Refrigerant recovery / vacuuming mode setting                                 | Sets to refrigerant recovery or vacuuming mode.                                                                                                                                                         |
| 22  | Night-time low noise setting                                                  | Sets automatic nighttime low noise operation in a simple way.<br>The operating time is based on Starting Set and Ending Set.                                                                            |
| 25  | Setting of low noise level                                                    | Sets low noise level when the low noise signal is received.                                                                                                                                             |
| 26  | Night-time low noise operation start setting                                  | Sets starting time of nighttime low noise operation. (Night-time low noise setting is also required.)                                                                                                   |
| 27  | Night-time low noise operation end setting                                    | Sets ending time of nighttime low noise operation. (Night-time low noise setting is also required.)                                                                                                     |
| 28  | Power transistor check mode<br>*Check after disconnection of compressor wires | Used for trouble diagnosis of DC compressor. Since the waveform of inverter is output without wiring to the compressor, it is convenient to probe whether the trouble comes from the compressor or PCB. |
| 29  | Capacity precedence setting                                                   | If the capacity control is required, the low noise control is automatically released by this setting during carrying out low noise operation and nighttime low noise operation.                         |
| 30  | Demand setting 1                                                              | Changes target value of power consumption when demand control 1 is received.                                                                                                                            |
| 32  | Constant demand setting                                                       | Enables demand control 1 without external input. (Effective to prevent a problem that circuit breaker of small capacity is shut down due to large load.)                                                |

The numbers in the No. column represent the number of times to press the **SET (BS2)** button.



| No. | Setting item display                            |                       |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  | Setting condition display                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | Setting item                                    | MODE H1P              | TEST H2P                         | C/H selection                    |                                  |                                  | Low noise H6P                    | Demand H7P                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|     |                                                 |                       |                                  | IND H3P                          | Master H4P                       | Slave H5P                        |                                  |                                  | * Factory setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 1   | Cool / heat unified address                     | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | Address 0 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Binary number 1 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>(6 digits) ~ <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>31 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                |
| 2   | Low noise/demand address                        | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Address 0 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Binary number 1 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>(6 digits) ~ <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>31 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                |
| 3   | Test operation settings                         | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | Test operation : OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>Test operation : ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 5   | Indoor unit forced fan H                        | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | Normal operation <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>Indoor forced fan H <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6   | Indoor unit forced operation                    | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Normal operation <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>Indoor forced operation <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 8   | Te setting                                      | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | High <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/><br>Normal (factory setting) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Low <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 9   | Tc setting                                      | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | High <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/><br>Normal (factory setting) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Low <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 10  | Defrost changeover setting                      | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Quick defrost <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/><br>Normal (factory setting) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Slow defrost <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 12  | External low noise setting / demand setting     | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | External low noise/demand: NO <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>External low noise/demand: YES <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 13  | AIRNET address                                  | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | Address 0 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Binary number 1 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>(6 digits) ~ <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>63 <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>                                                                                                                           |
| 16  | Setting of hot water heater                     | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 20  | Additional refrigerant charge operation setting | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | Refrigerant charging: OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>Refrigerant charging: ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 21  | Refrigerant recovery / vacuuming mode setting   | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | Refrigerant recovery / vacuuming: OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>Refrigerant recovery / vacuuming: ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 22  | Night-time low noise setting                    | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Level 1 (outdoor fan with 6 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>Level 2 (outdoor fan with 5 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/><br>Level 3 (outdoor fan with 4 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> |

The numbers in the No. column represent the number of times to press the **SET (BS2)** button.



| No. | Setting item display                         |                       |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  |                                  | Setting condition display                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | Setting item                                 | MODE<br>H1P           | TEST<br>H2P                      | C/H selection                    |                                  |                                  | Low noise<br>H6P                 | Demand<br>H7P                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|     |                                              |                       |                                  | IND<br>H3P                       | Master<br>H4P                    | Slave<br>H5P                     |                                  |                                  | * Factory setting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 25  | Setting of low noise level                   | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | Level 1 (outdoor fan with 6 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>Level 2 (outdoor fan with 5 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>Level 3 (outdoor fan with 4 step or lower) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> |
| 26  | Night-time low noise operation start setting | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | About 20:00 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>About 22:00 (factory setting) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>About 24:00 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                            |
| 27  | Night-time low noise operation end setting   | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | About 6:00 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>About 7:00 <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/><br>About 8:00 (factory setting) <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *                                                                               |
| 28  | Power transistor check mode                  | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 29  | Capacity precedence setting                  | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 30  | Demand setting 1                             | <input type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | 60 % demand <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/><br>70 % demand <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> *<br>80 % demand <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                         |
| 32  | Constant demand setting                      | <input type="radio"/> | <input type="radio"/>            | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | <input checked="" type="radio"/> | OFF <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> *<br>ON <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input checked="" type="radio"/>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

The numbers in the No. column represent the number of times to press the **SET (BS2)** button.



## Monitor Mode

| Press the <b>MODE (BS1)</b> button and enter the monitor mode. |                                                                | LED display |     |     |     |     |     |     | Data display                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| No.                                                            | Check item                                                     | H1P         | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P |                                                                |
| 0                                                              | Various setting                                                | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | See the note below.                                            |
| 1                                                              | Cool / heat unified address                                    | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | Lower 6 digits                                                 |
| 2                                                              | Low noise / demand address                                     | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   |                                                                |
| 3                                                              | Not used                                                       | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   |                                                                |
| 4                                                              | AIRNET address                                                 | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   |                                                                |
| 5                                                              | Number of connected indoor units                               | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   |                                                                |
| 7                                                              | Number of connected zone units (excluding outdoor and BS unit) | ●           | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ○   | Lower 6 digits                                                 |
| 8                                                              | Number of outdoor units                                        | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |                                                                |
| 11                                                             | Number of zone units (excluding outdoor and BS unit)           | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   | ○   |                                                                |
| 12                                                             | Number of terminal blocks                                      | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | Lower 4 digits: upper                                          |
| 13                                                             | Number of terminal blocks                                      | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ●   | ○   | Lower 4 digits: lower                                          |
| 14                                                             | Contents of malfunction (the latest)                           | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ●   | Error code table<br>Refer to page 139 ~ 142.                   |
| 15                                                             | Contents of malfunction (1 cycle before)                       | ●           | ●   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ○   | ○   |                                                                |
| 16                                                             | Contents of malfunction (2 cycle before)                       | ●           | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |                                                                |
| 20                                                             | Contents of retry (the latest)                                 | ●           | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   |                                                                |
| 21                                                             | Contents of retry (1 cycle before)                             | ●           | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   |                                                                |
| 22                                                             | Contents of retry (2 cycle before)                             | ●           | ●   | ○   | ●   | ○   | ○   | ●   | Lower 2 digits:<br>○● Abnormal<br>●○ Normal<br>●● Undetermined |
| 25                                                             | Normal judgment of outdoor units PCB                           | ●           | ●   | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ○   |                                                                |

The numbers in the No. column represent the number of times to press the **SET (BS2)** button.

\* If you become unsure of how to proceed, press the **MODE (BS1)** button and return to the setting mode 1.



### Note: Various Settings

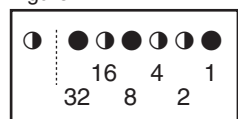
|                                                |        | H1P | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P |
|------------------------------------------------|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Emergency operation / backup operation setting | ON     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|                                                | OFF    | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Defrost select setting                         | Short  | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   | ●   |
|                                                | Medium | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|                                                | Long   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Te setting                                     | H      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●   |
|                                                | M      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|                                                | L      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| Tc setting                                     | H      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   |
|                                                | M      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|                                                | L      | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |



Push the **BS2 (SET)** button and match with the LEDs No. 1 - 15, push the **BS3 (RETURN)** button), and confirm the data for each setting.

★ Data such as addresses and number of units is expressed as binary numbers; the two ways of expressing are as follows:

Figure 1

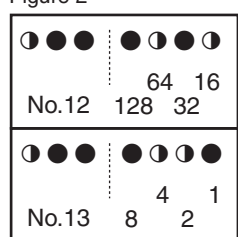


(R12951)

The No. 1 cool / heat unified address is expressed as a binary number consisting of the lower 6 digits. (0 - 63)

In the figure 1, the address is 010110 (binary number), which translates to  $16 + 4 + 2 = 22$  (base 10 number). In other words, the address is 22.

Figure 2



(R12952)

The number of terminal blocks for No. 12 and 13 is expressed as an 8-digit binary number, which is the combination of four upper, and four lower digits for No. 12 and 13 respectively. (0 - 128)

In the figure 2, the address for No. 12 is 0101, the address for No. 13 is 0110, and the combination of the two is 01010110 (binary number), which translates to  $64 + 16 + 4 + 2 = 86$  (base 10 number). In other words, the number of terminal block is 86.

★ Refer to the preceding page for a list of data, etc. for No. 0 - 25.

## 2.1.2 COOL/HEAT Changeover Setting by Dip Switches

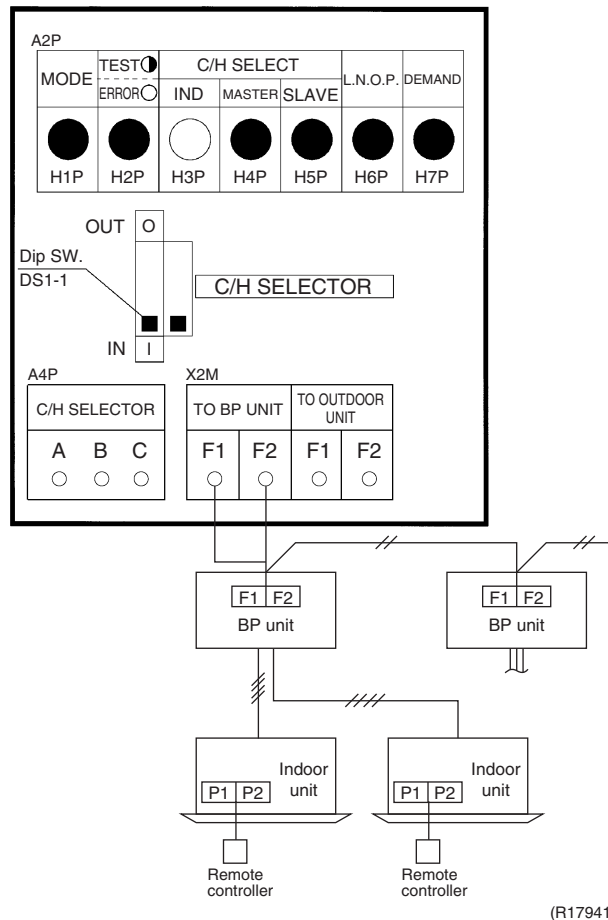
The following field settings are made by dip switches on the service PCB.

| Dip switch |                            | Setting item                   | Description                                                                         |
|------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No.        | Setting                    |                                |                                                                                     |
| DS1-1      | ON (OUT)                   | Cool / Heat changeover setting | It is used for changing over the unit which inputs the COOL/HEAT switching command. |
|            | OFF (IN) (Factory setting) |                                |                                                                                     |
| DS1-2      | ON                         | Not used                       | Do not change the factory settings.                                                 |
|            | OFF (Factory setting)      |                                |                                                                                     |



### (1) Set Cool/Heat Separately for Each Outdoor Unit System by Indoor Unit Remote Controller

- It does not matter whether or not there is outdoor - outdoor unit wiring.
- Set the dip switch DS1-1 of the outdoor unit PCB (A2P) to **IN** (factory setting).
- Set cool/heat switching to **IND** (individual) in the setting mode 1 (factory setting).



<Set the master unit (= indoor unit having the right to select the cooling / heating operation mode).>

#### In the case of wired remote controllers

- After the check operation, **CHANGEOVER UNDER CONTROL** is flashing in all connected remote controllers.
- Select an indoor unit to be used as the master unit in accordance with the request from the customer.  
(It is recommended to select an indoor unit which will be used most often as the master unit.)
- Press the operation mode selector button in the remote controller of the indoor unit selected as the master unit.
- In that remote controller, **CHANGEOVER UNDER CONTROL** disappears. That remote controller controls changeover of the cooling / heating operation mode.
- In other remote controllers, **CHANGEOVER UNDER CONTROL** lights.

For the details, refer to the installation manual supplied together with the indoor unit.

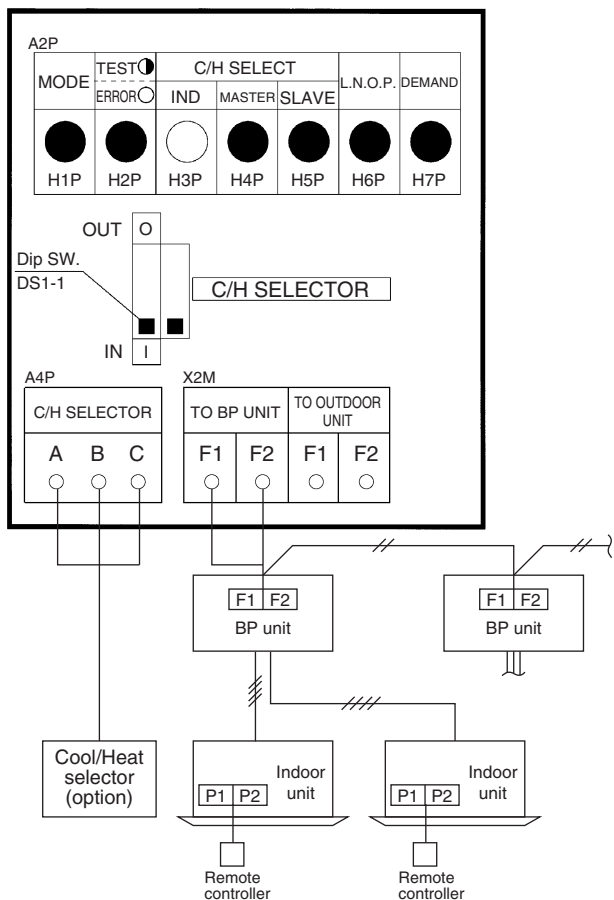
#### In the case of wireless remote controllers

- After the check operation, the timer lamp is flashing in all connected indoor units.
- Select an indoor unit to be used as the master unit in accordance with the request from the customer.  
(It is recommended to select an indoor unit which will be used most often as the master unit.)
- Press the operation selector mode button in the remote controller of the indoor unit selected as the master unit. A peep sound is emitted, and the timer lamp turns off in all indoor units.
- That indoor unit controls changeover of the cooling / heating operation mode.



## (2) Set Cool/Heat Separately for Each Outdoor Unit System by Cool/Heat Selector

- ◆ Connect the cool/heat selector (option) to the terminals A, B, C on the outdoor unit PCB (A4P).
- ◆ It does not matter whether or not there is outdoor - outdoor unit wiring.
- ◆ Set the dip switch DS1-1 of the outdoor unit PCB (A2P) to **OUT**.
- ◆ Set cool/heat switching to **IND** (individual) in the setting mode 1 (factory setting).



(R17942)



## 2.1.3 Setting of Low Noise Operation and Demand Operation

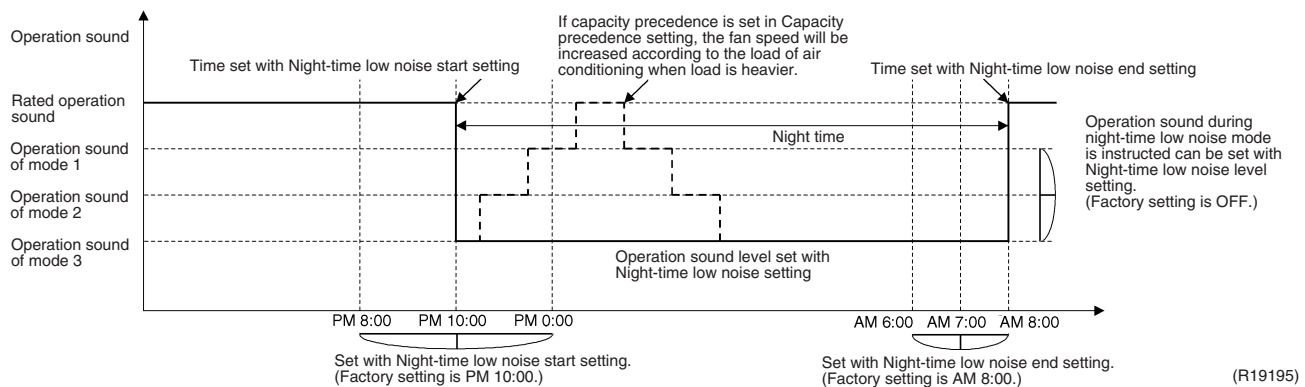
### Setting of Low Noise Operation

By connecting the external contact input to the low noise input of the outdoor unit external control adaptor (optional), you can lower operating noise by 2 ~ 3 dB.

**When the low noise operation is automatically carried out at night (The external control adaptor for outdoor unit is not required)**

1. While in setting mode 2, select the setting condition (i.e., Mode 1, Mode 2, or Mode 3) for set item No. 22 (Setting of nighttime low noise level).
2. If necessary, while in setting mode 2, select the setting condition (i.e., 20:00, 22:00, or 24:00) for set item No. 26 (Setting of start time of nighttime low noise operation).  
(Use the start time as a guide since it is estimated according to outdoor temperatures.)
3. If necessary, while in setting mode 2, select the setting condition (i.e., 06:00, 07:00, or 08:00) for set item No. 27 (Setting of end time of nighttime low noise operation).  
(Use the end time as a guide since it is estimated according to outdoor temperatures.)
4. If necessary, while in setting mode 2, set the setting condition for set item No. 29 (Setting of capacity precedence) to ON.  
(If the condition is set to ON, when the air-conditioning load reaches a high level, the system enters to normal operation mode even during nighttime.)

### Image of operation





## Setting of Demand Operation

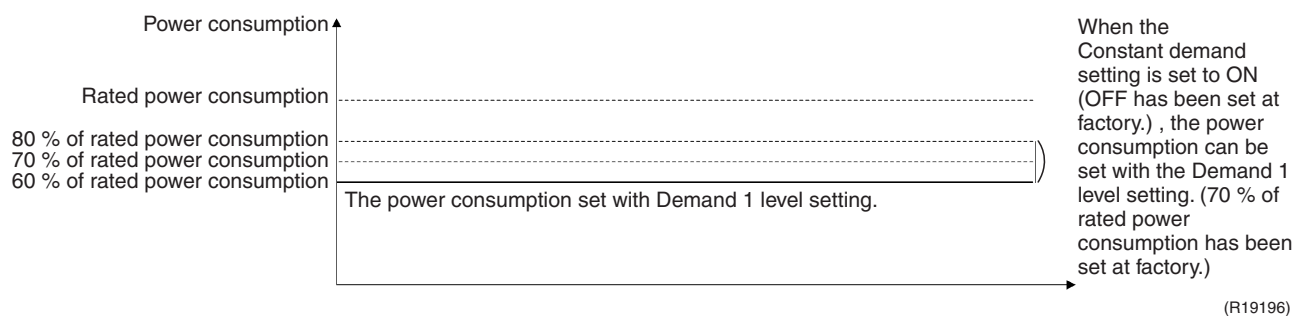
By connecting the external contact input to the demand input of the outdoor unit external control adaptor (optional), the power consumption of unit operation can be saved suppressing the compressor operating condition.

| Set item | Condition | Content                                                   |
|----------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Demand   | Mode 1    | The compressor operates at approx. 60% or less of rating. |
|          | Mode 2    | The compressor operates at approx. 70% or less of rating. |
|          | Mode 3    | The compressor operates at approx. 80% or less of rating. |

**When the constant demand operation is carried out. (Use of the external control adaptor for outdoor unit is not required.)**

1. While in setting mode 2, make setting of the set item No. 32 (Setting of constant demand) to ON.
2. While in setting mode 2, select the set item No. 30 (Setting of Demand 1 level) and then set the setting condition to targeted mode.

## Image of operation





## Detailed Setting Procedure of Low Noise Operation and Demand Control

## 1. Setting mode 1 (H1P off)

In setting mode 2, push the **BS1 (MODE)** button one time. → The system enters setting mode 1 and the H1P goes off.

In setting mode 1, the H6P (In low noise operation) and the H7P (In demand control) keep lighting.

## 2. Setting mode 2 (H1P on)

(1) In setting mode 1, push and hold the **BS1 (MODE)** button for more than 5 seconds. → The system enters setting mode 2 and the H1P lights up.

(2) Push the **BS2 (SET)** button several times and match the LED display with the Setting No. you want.

(3) Push the **BS3 (RETURN)** button one time, and the present setting content is displayed.

→ Push the **BS2 (SET)** button several times and match the LED display with the setting content (as shown on next page) you want.

(4) Push the **BS3 (RETURN)** button two times. → The system returns to (1).

(5) Push the **BS1 (MODE)** button one time. → The system returns to setting mode 1 and the H1P goes off.

○: ON ●: OFF ◐: Blink

|             |                                              | (1)                             |     |     |     |     |     |     | (2)                            |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               | (3)                             |     |     |     |                                                   |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Setting No. | Setting contents                             | Setting No. indication          |     |     |     |     |     |     | Setting No. indication         |     |     |     |     |     |                       | Setting contents | Setting contents indication (Initial setting) |                                 |     |     |     |                                                   |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              | H1P                             | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                            | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P                   |                  | H1P                                           | H2P                             | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P                                               | H7P |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 12          | External low noise setting / Demand setting  | ○                               | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●                              | ●   | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | NO (Factory setting)  | ○                | ●                                             | ●                               | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                                                 |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 22          | Night-time low noise setting                 |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | YES                   | ○                | ●                                             | ●                               | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●                                                 |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | OFF (Factory setting) | ○                | ●                                             | ●                               | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                                                 |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | Level 1               | ○                | ●                                             | ●                               | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                                                 |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | Level 2               | ○                | ●                                             | ●                               | ●   | ●   | ○   | ●                                                 |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 26          | Night-time low noise operation start setting |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | ○                     | ●                | ○                                             | ○                               | ●   | ○   | ●   | PM 8:00                                           | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | PM 10:00 (Factory setting)                        | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | PM 0:00                                           | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● | ● |
| 27          | Night-time low noise operation end setting   |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | ○                     | ●                | ○                                             | ○                               | ●   | ○   | ○   | AM 6:00                                           | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | AM 7:00                                           | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | AM 8:00 (Factory setting)                         | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● | ● |
| 29          | Capacity precedence setting                  |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | ○                     | ●                | ○                                             | ○                               | ○   | ●   | ○   | Low noise precedence (Factory setting)            | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | Capacity precedence                               | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● |
| 30          | Demand setting 1                             |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     | ○                     | ●                | ○                                             | ○                               | ○   | ○   | ●   | 60 % of rated power consumption                   | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | 70 % of rated power consumption (Factory setting) | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     |                                |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               |                                 |     |     |     | 80 % of rated power consumption                   | ○   | ● | ● | ● | ○ | ● | ● |
| 32          | Constant demand setting                      | ○                               | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | OFF (Factory setting)          | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                     | ○                |                                               |                                 |     |     |     |                                                   |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              |                                 |     |     |     |     |     |     | ON                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                     | ●                |                                               |                                 |     |     |     |                                                   |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|             |                                              | Setting mode indication section |     |     |     |     |     |     | Setting No. indication section |     |     |     |     |     |                       |                  |                                               | Set contents indication section |     |     |     |                                                   |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |

Setting mode indication section

Setting No. indication section

Set contents indication section

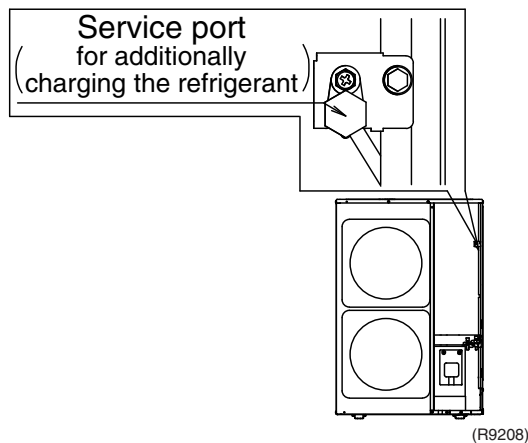


## 2.1.4 Setting of Refrigerant Additional Charging Operation

When the outdoor unit is stopped and the entire quantity of refrigerant cannot be charged from the stop valve on the liquid side, make sure to charge the remaining quantity of refrigerant using this procedure. If the refrigerant quantity is insufficient, the unit may malfunction.

- (1) Turn ON the power of the indoor unit and the outdoor unit.
- (2) Make sure to completely open the stop valve on the gas side and the stop valve on the liquid side.
- (3) Connect the refrigerant charge hose to the service port (for additionally charging the refrigerant).
- (4) In the stopped status, set to ON the refrigerant additional charging operation (A) in setting mode 2 (H1P: Turn on).
- (5) The operation is automatically started.  
(The LED indicator H2P flickers, and **Test Operation** and **Under Centralized Control** are displayed on the remote controller.)
- (6) After charging the specified quantity of refrigerant, press the **RETURN (BS3)** button to stop the operation.  

The operation is automatically stopped within 30 minutes.  
 If charging is not completed within 30 minutes, set and perform the refrigerant additional charging operation (A) again.  
If the refrigerant additional charging operation is stopped soon, the refrigerant may be overcharged.  
Never charge extra refrigerant.
- (7) Disconnect the refrigerant charge hose.



## 2.1.5 Setting of Refrigerant Recovery Mode

When carrying out the refrigerant collection on site, fully open the respective expansion valve of indoor and outdoor units.

All indoor and outdoor unit's operation are prohibited.

### <Operation procedure>

- (1) In setting mode 2 with units in stop mode, set the item No.21 (refrigerant recovery / vacuuming mode) to ON. The respective expansion valve of indoor and outdoor units are fully opened. **Test Operation** and **Under Centralized Control** are displayed on the remote controller, and the indoor / outdoor unit operation is prohibited.  
After setting, do not cancel setting mode 2 until completion of refrigerant recovery operation.
- (2) Collect the refrigerant using a refrigerant recovery unit. (See the instruction attached to the refrigerant recovery unit for more detail.)
- (3) Press the **MODE (BS1)** button once and return to setting mode 2.



## 2.1.6 Setting of Vacuuming Mode

In order to perform vacuuming operation at site, fully open the expansion valves of indoor and outdoor units and turn on some solenoid valves.

### <Operating procedure>

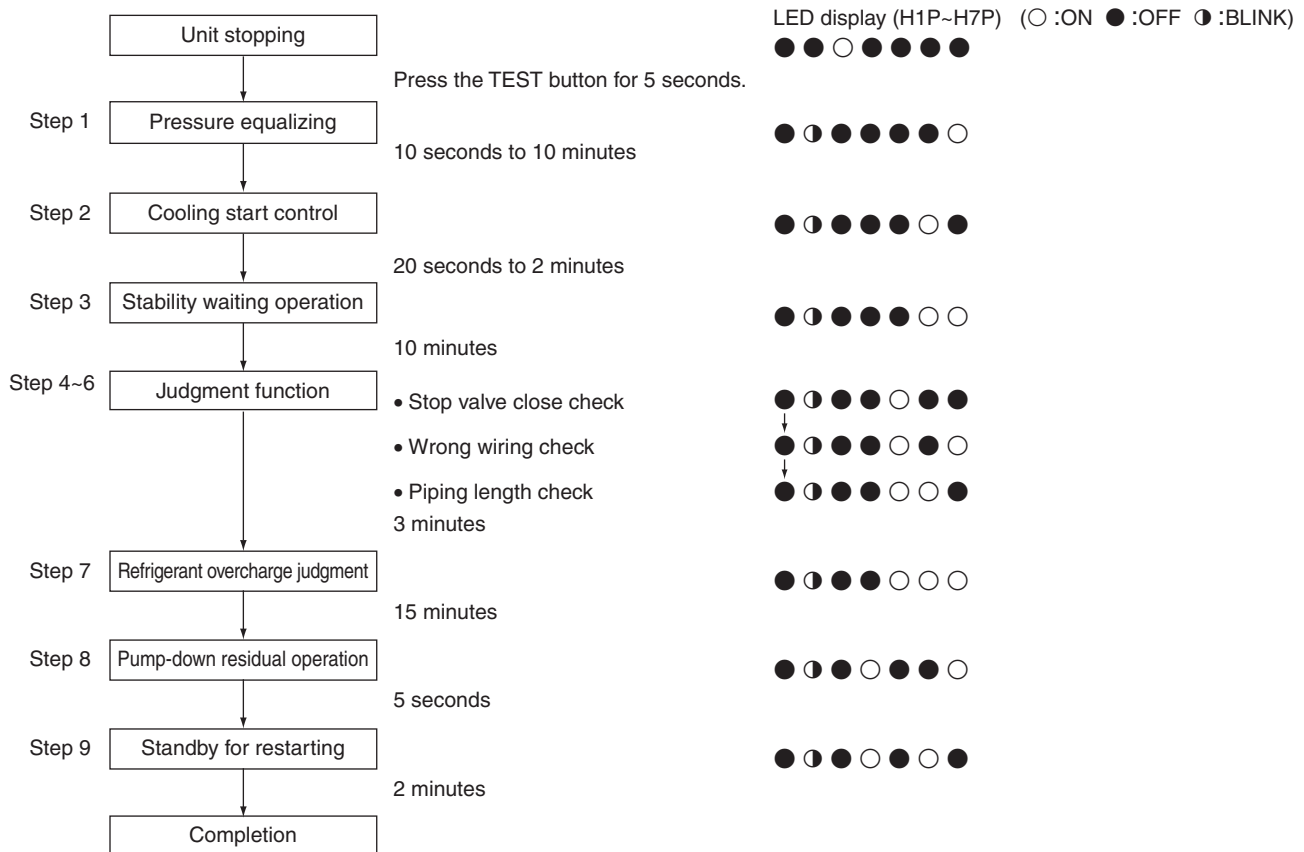
- (1) In setting mode 2 with units in stop mode, set the item No.21 (refrigerant recovery / vacuuming mode) to ON. The respective expansion valve of indoor and outdoor units are fully opened. **Test Operation** and **Under Centralized Control** are displayed on the remote controller, and the indoor / outdoor unit operation is prohibited.

After setting, do not cancel setting mode 2 until completion of Vacuuming operation.

- (2) Use the vacuum pump to perform vacuuming operation.
- (3) Press the **MODE (BS1)** button once and reset setting mode 2.

## 2.1.7 Check Operation

To prevent any trouble in the period of installation at site, the system is provided with a test operation mode enabling check for incorrect wiring, stop valve left in closed, coming out (or misplacing with suction pipe thermistor) or discharge pipe thermistor and judgment of piping length, refrigerant overcharging, and learning for the minimum opening degree of electronic expansion valve.



(R12957)

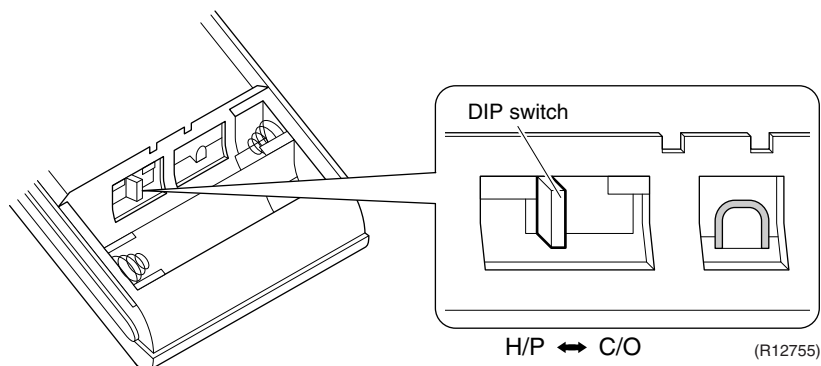


## 2.2 RA Indoor Unit: CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

### 2.2.1 Model Type Setting

#### ARC452A21, ARC452A23

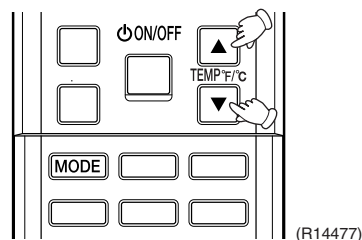
- The remote controller is common to the heat pump model and cooling only model. Use the DIP switch on the remote controller to set the model type.
- Set the DIP switch as shown in the illustration. (The factory set is the heat pump side.)
  - Heat pump model: Set the DIP switch to H/P.
  - Cooling only model: Set the DIP switch to C/O.



### 2.2.2 Temperature Display Switch

#### ARC452 Series

- You can select Fahrenheit or Celsius for temperature display.
- Press the **TEMP▲** and **▼** buttons simultaneously for 5 seconds to change the unit of temperature display.





## 2.2.3 When 2 Units are Installed in 1 Room

### Outline

When 2 indoor units are installed in 1 room, 1 of the 2 indoor units and the corresponding wireless remote controller can be set for different address.

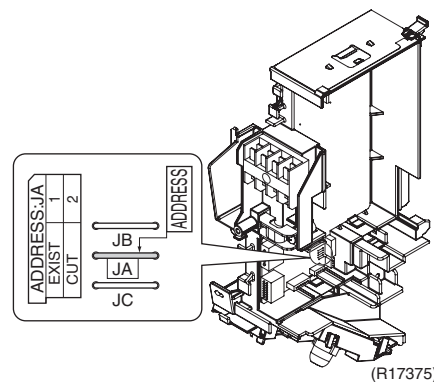
Both the indoor unit PCB and the wireless remote controller need alteration.

The method of address setting varies depending on the type of indoor unit and the series of wired remote controller. Refer to the following pages for the appropriate indoor unit and wireless remote controller.

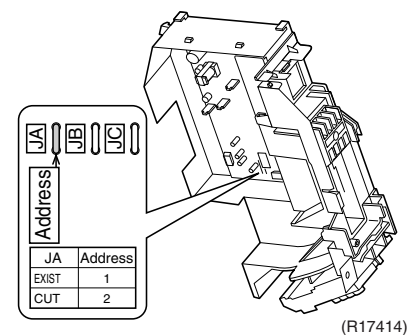
### CTXS/FTXS Series

- (1) Remove the front grille.
- (2) Remove the electrical box.
- (3) Remove the shield plate of the electrical box.
- (4) Cut the address setting jumper JA on the PCB.

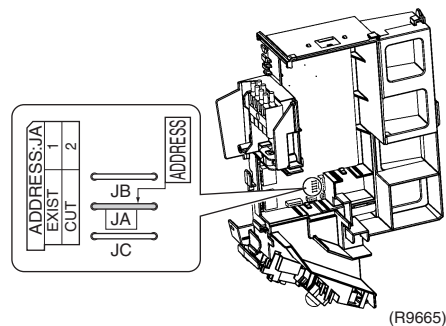
#### CTXS07LVJU



#### CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU



#### FTXS15/18/24LVJU



### Caution

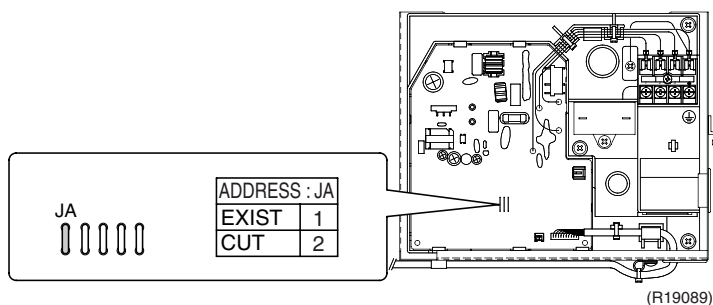
**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut a wrong jumper.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.



## CDXS/FDXS Series

- Cut the jumper JA on PCB.



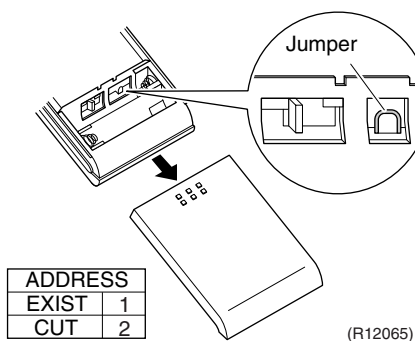
### Caution

**Replace the PCB if you accidentally cut a wrong jumper.**

Jumpers are necessary for electronic circuit. Improper operation may occur if you cut any of them.

## Wireless Remote Controller

- (1) Remove the cover and take it off.
- (2) Cut the address setting jumper.



## 2.2.4 Jumper Settings

| Jumper (on indoor unit PCB) | Function                                                                                          | When connected (factory set)                 | When cut                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| JB                          | Fan speed setting when compressor stops for thermostat OFF. (effective only at cooling operation) | Fan speed setting; Remote controller setting | The fan stops.                                                                                        |
| JC                          | Power failure recovery function                                                                   | Auto-restart                                 | The unit does not resume operation after recovering from a power failure. Timer settings are cleared. |



For the location of the jumper, refer to the following pages.

CTXS07LVJU: page 18

CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU: page 20

FTXS15/18/24LVJU: page 22

FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU: page 24



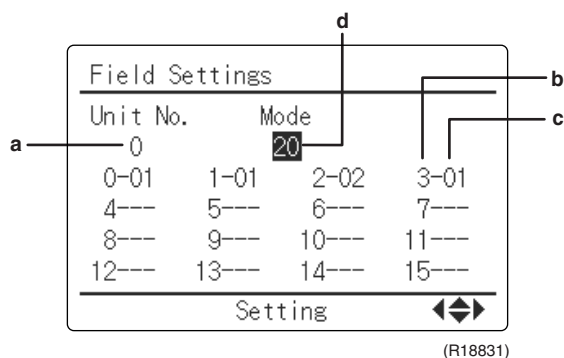
## 2.3 SA Indoor Unit: FFQ Series

### 2.3.1 How to Change the Field Settings

#### Outline

If optional accessories are mounted on the indoor unit, the indoor unit setting may have to be changed. Refer to the instruction manual for each optional accessory.

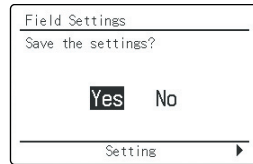
#### BRC1E72



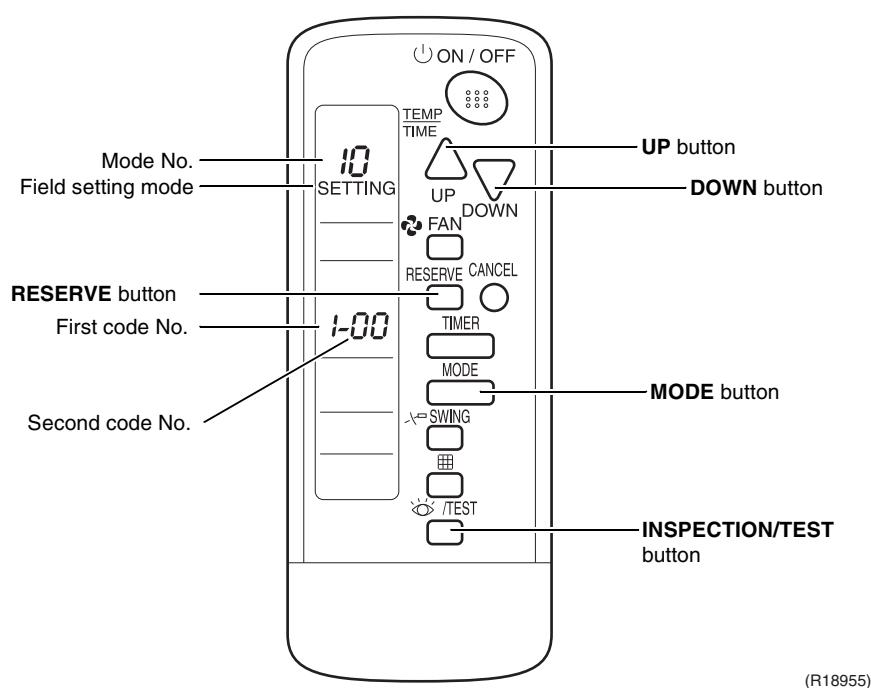
- a Unit No.
- b First code No.
- c Second code No.
- d Mode

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Remote controller                                                                                            |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Press and hold the <b>Cancel</b> button for 4 seconds to enter the <b>Service Settings</b> menu.                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                              |
| 2    | Use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select <b>Field Settings</b> and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button.                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>(R18832)</p>                                                                                              |
| 3    | Use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select the desired Mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>(R18831)</p>                                                                                              |
| 4    | During group control, when setting by each indoor unit ( <b>Mode 20, 21, 22 or 23</b> have been selected), push the <b>◀</b> button to highlight and <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select the Unit No. to be set. This operation is unnecessary when setting by group. |                                                                                                              |
| 5    | Highlight the second code No. to be changed using the <b>◀▶</b> buttons, and use the <b>▼▲</b> buttons to select the desired second code No.                                                                                                                  | <p>(R18833)</p> <p>When setting by group, all of the second code No. that may be set are displayed as *.</p> |



| Step | Action                                                                      | Remote controller                                                                                                                                                         |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6    | Push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button to display the confirmation screen.          |                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 7    | Use the ◀▶ buttons to select <b>Yes</b> and push the <b>Menu/OK</b> button. |  <p>(R18834)</p> <p>When multiple setting changes are needed, repeat steps 3 to 7.</p> |
| 8    | Push the <b>Cancel</b> button 2 times to return to basic screen.            |                                                                                                                                                                           |

## BRC7E830



To set the field settings, you have to change:

- Mode No.
- First code No.
- Second code No.

| Step | Action                                                                                                    |
|------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Press the <b>INSPECTION/TEST</b> button for 4 seconds during normal mode to enter the field setting mode. |
| 2    | Press the <b>MODE</b> button to select the desired mode No.                                               |
| 3    | Press the <b>UP</b> button to select the first code No.                                                   |
| 4    | Press the <b>DOWN</b> button to select the second code No.                                                |
| 5    | Press the <b>RESERVE</b> button to confirm the setting.                                                   |
| 6    | Press the <b>INSPECTION/TEST</b> button to return to the normal mode.                                     |



## 2.3.2 Overview of the Field Settings

| Mode No.<br>(Note 1) | First Code No. | Description of setting                                                                  |                 | Second Code No. (Note 2)                                                                |                    |                                                                                                    |                    |                                                         |           |
|----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
|                      |                |                                                                                         |                 | 01                                                                                      |                    | 02                                                                                                 |                    | 03                                                      | 04        |
| 10 (20)              | 0              | Filter cleaning sign interval                                                           | Longlife filter | Light                                                                                   | Approx. 2,500 hrs. | Heavy                                                                                              | Approx. 1,250 hrs. | —                                                       | —         |
|                      | 2              | Priority of thermistor sensors for space temperature control                            |                 | The return air thermistor is primary and the remote controller thermistor is secondary. |                    | The remote controller thermistor is not utilized. Only the return air thermistor will be utilized. |                    | Only the remote controller thermistor will be utilized. | —         |
|                      | 3              | Filter cleaning sign                                                                    |                 | Display                                                                                 |                    | No display                                                                                         |                    | —                                                       | —         |
|                      | 5              | Room temperature value reported to multizone controllers                                |                 | Return air thermistor                                                                   |                    | Thermistor designated by 10-2 above (Note 3)                                                       |                    | —                                                       | —         |
| 12 (22)              | 1              | Forced ON/OFF from outside function                                                     |                 | Forced OFF                                                                              |                    | ON/OFF operation                                                                                   |                    | —                                                       | —         |
|                      | 2              | Thermostat differential changeover (setting for when using remote sensor) (Note 4)      |                 | 1°C (2°F)                                                                               |                    | 0.5°C (1°F)                                                                                        |                    | —                                                       | —         |
| 13 (23)              | 1              | Selection of airflow direction (setting for when a blocking pad kit has been installed) |                 | 4-way flow                                                                              |                    | 3-way flow                                                                                         |                    | 2-way flow                                              | —         |
|                      | 4              | Airflow direction range setting                                                         |                 | Upper                                                                                   |                    | Normal                                                                                             |                    | Lower                                                   | —         |
| 1c                   | 1              | Thermistor sensor for auto changeover and setback control by the remote controller      |                 | Utilize the return air thermistor                                                       |                    | Utilize the remote controller thermistor                                                           |                    | —                                                       | —         |
|                      | 3              | Access permission level setting                                                         |                 | Level 2                                                                                 |                    | Level 3                                                                                            |                    | —                                                       | —         |
| 1e                   | 2              | Setback availability                                                                    |                 | N/A                                                                                     |                    | Heat only                                                                                          |                    | Cool only                                               | Cool/Heat |

■ : factory setting



### Note:

- Field settings are normally applied to the entire remote control group, however if individual indoor units in the remote control group require specific settings or for confirmation that settings have been established, utilize the mode number in parenthesis.
- Any features not supported by the installed indoor unit will not be displayed.
- When mode 10-2-01 is selected, only the return air temperature value is reported to the multizone controller.
- The actual default value will depend upon the indoor unit model.



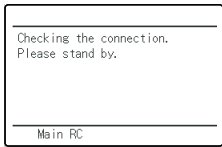
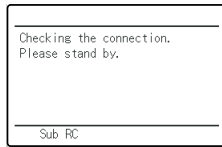
## 2.3.3 MAIN / SUB Setting when Using 2 Wired Remote Controllers

### Outline

The MAIN / SUB setting is necessary when 1 indoor unit is controlled by 2 remote controllers. When you use 2 remote controllers (control panel and separate remote controller), set one to MAIN and the other to SUB.

### Detail

The remote controllers are factory set to MAIN, so you only have to change one remote controller from MAIN to SUB.

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                          | Remote controller                                                                                |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Put on the power for both remote controllers.                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                  |
| 2    | Determine which one is the sub/main remote controller.                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                  |
| 3    | When <b>Checking the connection. Please stand by.</b> is displayed on both remote controllers, push and hold the <b>Mode</b> button of the sub remote controller for 4 seconds. | <br>(R18973)  |
| 4    | The sub remote controller now displays <b>Sub RC</b> .<br><br>Note) The main remote controller still displays <b>Main RC</b> .                                                  | <br>(R18974) |
| 5    | After a few seconds, the basic screen is displayed.                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                  |



### 2.3.4 Address and MAIN / SUB Setting for Wireless Remote Controller

**Outline**

If several wireless remote controller units are used together in the same room (including the case where both group control and individual remote controller control are used together), be sure to set the addresses for the receiver and wireless remote controller. (For group control, see the attached installation manual for the indoor unit.) If using together with a wired remote controller, you have to change the MAIN / SUB setting on the signal receiver PCB.

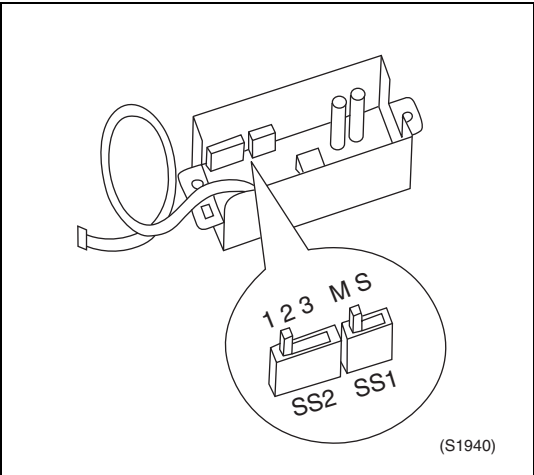
**Signal Receiver PCB**

Set the address setting switch (SS2) on the signal receiver PCB according to the table below.

| Unit No.                     | No.1        | No.2        | No.3        |
|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Address setting switch (SS2) | <br>(S1935) | <br>(S1936) | <br>(S1937) |

When using both a wired and a wireless remote controller for 1 indoor unit, the wired controller should be set to MAIN. Therefore, set the MAIN / SUB setting switch (SS1) on the signal receiver PCB to SUB.

|                                 | MAIN        | SUB         |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| MAIN / SUB setting switch (SS1) | <br>(S1938) | <br>(S1939) |



After completing setting, seal off the opening of the address setting switch (SS2) and the MAIN / SUB setting switch (SS1) with the attached sealing pad.



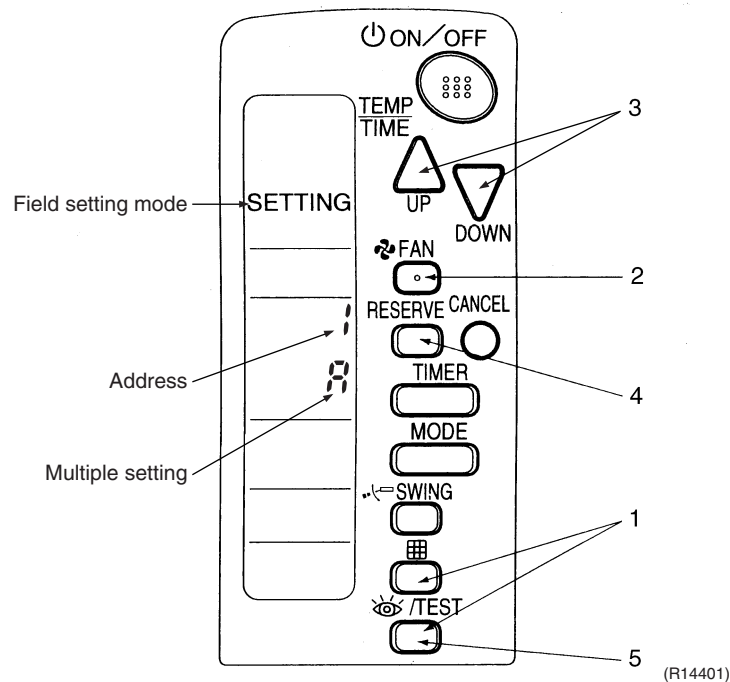
### Wireless Remote Controller (Factory Set is 1)

1. Hold down the **FILTER SIGN RESET** (⌘) button and the **INSPECTION/TEST** button at the same time for at least 4 seconds to enter the field setting mode. (SETTING is indicated on the display).
2. Press the **FAN** button and select A or b. Each time the button is pressed, the display switches between A and b.
3. Press the **UP** button and **DOWN** button to set the address.

→ 1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 6

Address can be set from 1 ~ 6, but set it to 1 ~ 3 and to same address as the receiver. (The receiver does not work with address 4 ~ 6.)

4. Press the **RESERVE** button to confirm the setting.
5. Hold down the **INSPECTION/TEST** button for at least 1 second to exit the field setting mode and return to the normal display.



### Multiple Settings A/b

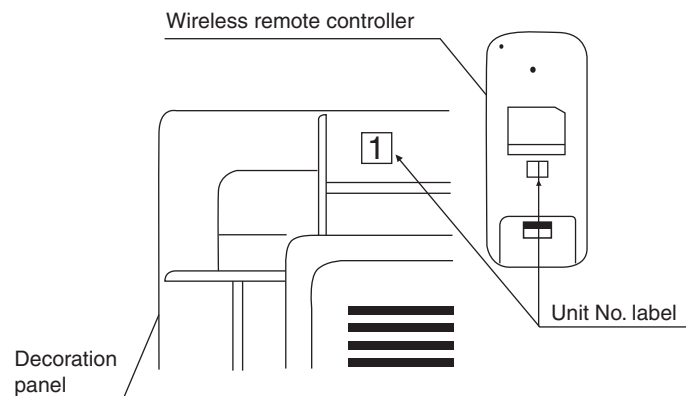
When the indoor is controlled by outside controller (central remote controller, etc.), it sometimes does not respond to ON/OFF command or temperature setting command from the remote controller. Check what setting the customer needs and make the multiple setting as shown below.

| Remote Controller   |                                                           | Indoor Unit                                                                                               |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Multiple Setting    | Remote Controller Display                                 | Controlled by other air conditioners or devices                                                           | Other condition |
| A: Standard         | All items are displayed.                                  | ON/OFF command and temperature setting command cannot be accepted. (1 long beep or 3 short beeps emitted) |                 |
| b: Multiple display | Operations set only is displayed shortly after execution. | All the commands can be accepted (2 short beeps)                                                          |                 |



**After Setting**

Stick the unit No. label at the decoration panel air discharge outlet as well as on the back of the wireless remote controller.



(R12961)



**Note:** Set the unit No. of the receiver and the wireless remote controller to be the same. If the settings differ, the signal from the remote controller cannot be received.







---

# Part 7

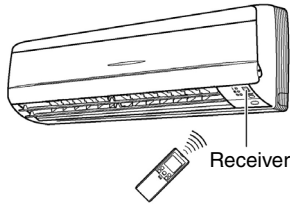
## Remote Controller

- 1. CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU ..... 118
- 2. CTXS07LVJU, FTXS15/18/24LVJU ..... 120
- 3. FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU ..... 122
- 4. FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU ..... 124
  - 4.1 <BRC1E72> Wired Remote Controller..... 124
  - 4.2 <BRC7E830> Wireless Remote Controller ..... 130



# 1. CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU

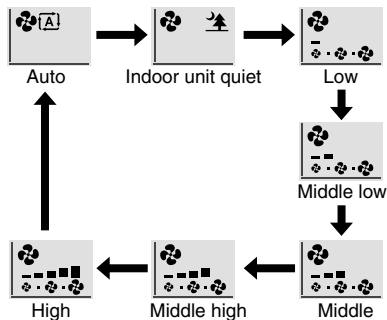
## Signal transmitter



- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit will not operate.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.
- The maximum distance for communication is approximately 23 ft. (7 m).

## FAN setting button

- Selects the airflow rate setting every time you press this button.



- In indoor unit quiet operation, operation sound becomes weak. (The airflow rate also decreases.)
- In DRY operation, the airflow rate setting is not available.

## Display (LCD)

- Displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

## TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons

- Changes the temperature setting.

|          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| ☐ : AUTO | 18 ~ 30 °C<br>(64 ~ 86 °F) |
| ☐ : DRY  | Not available              |
| ☐ : COOL | 18 ~ 32 °C<br>(64 ~ 90 °F) |
| ☐ : HEAT | 10 ~ 30 °C<br>(50 ~ 86 °F) |
| ☐ : FAN  | Not available              |

## ON/OFF button

- Press this button once to start operation.  
Press once again to stop it.

## POWERFUL <sup>★1</sup> button

- POWERFUL operation.

< ARC452A9 >

(R18850)

## Reference

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                    |      |
|----|--------------------|------|
| ★1 | POWERFUL operation | P.73 |
|----|--------------------|------|



### Note:

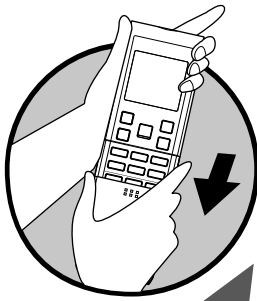
Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))



## Open the Front Cover

**MODE button**

- Selects the operation mode.

**QUIET button**

- OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.
- QUIET operation is not available in FAN and DRY operation.
- QUIET operation and POWERFUL operation cannot be used at the same time. Priority is given to the function you pressed last.

**SENSOR button (INTELLIGENT EYE operation<sup>\*2</sup>)**

- To start INTELLIGENT EYE operation, press the SENSOR button.  
 is displayed on the LCD.
- To cancel the INTELLIGENT EYE operation, press the SENSOR button again.  
 disappears from the LCD.

**OFF TIMER button**

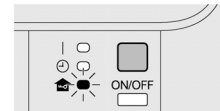
- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

**TIMER CANCEL button**

- Cancels the timer setting.

**HOME LEAVE<sup>\*3</sup> button**

- Press this button to start HOME LEAVE operation. The HOME LEAVE lamp lights up.



- Press the button again to cancel HOME LEAVE operation.

**SWING<sup>\*4</sup> button**

- Adjusts the airflow direction.
- When you press the SWING button, the louver moves up and down, or (and) the fin moves right and left. The louver (fin) stops when you press the SWING button again.

**ON TIMER button**

- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

**CLOCK<sup>\*5</sup> button****SELECT button**

- Changes the ON/OFF TIMER settings.

(R18851)

**Reference**

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                           |      |
|----|---------------------------|------|
| ★2 | INTELLIGENT EYE operation | P.72 |
| ★3 | HOME LEAVE operation      | P.70 |

|    |                    |      |
|----|--------------------|------|
| ★4 | Auto-swing setting | P.63 |
| ★5 | Clock setting      | P.74 |

**Note:**

Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

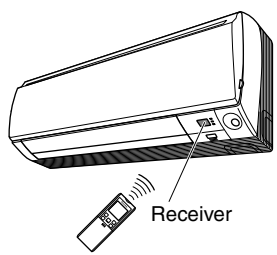
DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))



## 2. CTXS07LVJU, FTXS15/18/24LVJU

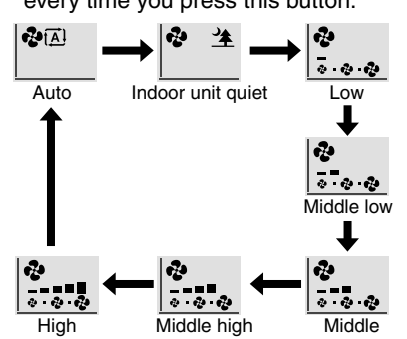
### Signal transmitter



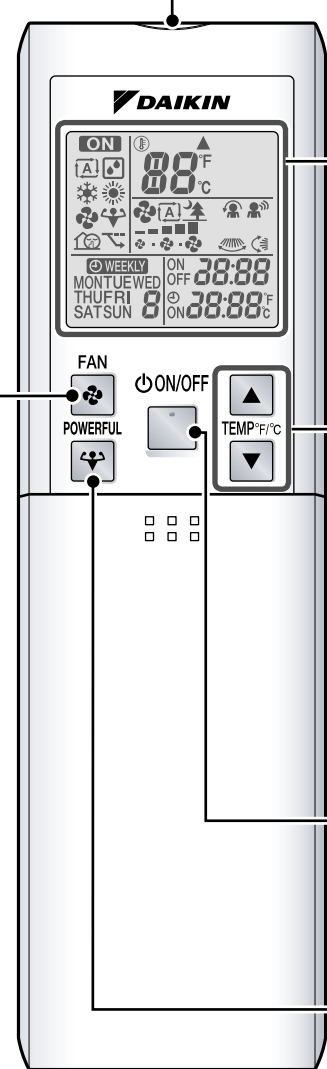
- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit will not operate.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.
- The maximum distance for communication is approximately 23 ft. (7 m).

### FAN setting button

- Selects the airflow rate setting every time you press this button.



- In indoor unit quiet operation, operation sound becomes weak. (The airflow rate also decreases.)
- In DRY operation, the airflow rate setting is not available.



### Display (LCD)

- Displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

### TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons

- Changes the temperature setting.

|          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| Ⓐ : AUTO | 18 ~ 30 °C<br>(64 ~ 86 °F) |
| ☐ : DRY  | Not available              |
| ❄ : COOL | 18 ~ 32 °C<br>(64 ~ 90 °F) |
| ☀ : HEAT | 10 ~ 30 °C<br>(50 ~ 86 °F) |
| 🌀 : FAN  | Not available              |

### ON/OFF button

- Press this button once to start operation.  
Press once again to stop it.

### POWERFUL\*1 button

- POWERFUL operation.

&lt; ARC452A21 &gt;

(R18852)

### Reference

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                    |      |
|----|--------------------|------|
| ★1 | POWERFUL operation | P.73 |
|----|--------------------|------|



### Note:

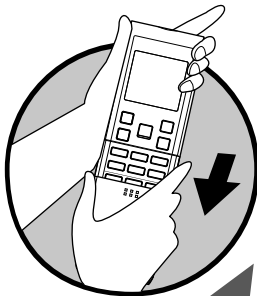
Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))



## Open the Front Cover



### MODE button

- Selects the operation mode.

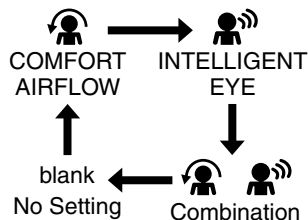


### QUIET button

- OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.
- QUIET operation is not available in FAN and DRY operation.
- QUIET operation and POWERFUL operation cannot be used at the same time. Priority is given to the function you pressed last.

### COMFORT\*<sup>2</sup>/SENSOR\*<sup>3</sup> button

- Every time you press the COMFORT/SENSOR button, the setting changes in the following order.



### OFF TIMER button

- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

### TIMER CANCEL button

- Cancels the timer setting.
- Cannot be used for the WEEKLY TIMER operation.

### ECONO\*<sup>4</sup> button

- ECONO operation.

### SWING\*<sup>5</sup> button

- Adjusts the airflow direction.
- When you press the SWING button, the louver moves up and down, or (and) the fin moves right and left. The louver (fin) stops when you press the SWING button again.

### WEEKLY button

- WEEKLY : WEEKLY button
- PROGRAM : PROGRAM button
- COPY : COPY button
- BACK : BACK button
- NEXT : NEXT button
- WEEKLY TIMER\*<sup>6</sup> operation.

### ON TIMER button

- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

### CLOCK\*<sup>7</sup> button

### SELECT button

- Changes the ON/OFF TIMER and WEEKLY TIMER settings.

(R18853)

## Reference

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                           |          |
|----|---------------------------|----------|
| ★2 | COMFORT AIRFLOW operation | P.64, 66 |
| ★3 | INTELLIGENT EYE operation | P.72     |
| ★4 | ECONO operation           | P.69     |

|    |                        |      |
|----|------------------------|------|
| ★5 | Auto-swing setting     | P.63 |
| ★6 | WEEKLY TIMER operation | P.75 |
| ★7 | Clock setting          | P.74 |



### Note:

Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

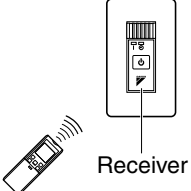
DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))

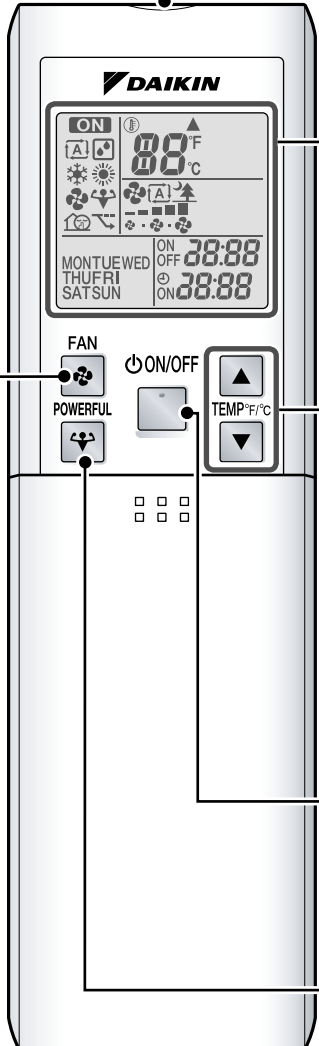


### 3. FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU

#### Signal transmitter



- To use the remote controller, aim the transmitter at the indoor unit. If there is anything to block signals between the unit and the remote controller, such as a curtain, the unit will not operate.
- Do not drop the remote controller. Do not get it wet.
- The maximum distance for communication is approximately 13 ft (4 m).



#### Display (LCD)

- Displays the current settings. (In this illustration, each section is shown with all its displays on for the purpose of explanation.)

#### TEMPERATURE adjustment buttons

- Changes the temperature setting.

|          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| Ⓐ : AUTO | 18 ~ 30 °C<br>(64 ~ 86 °F) |
| ☐ : DRY  | Not available              |
| ❄ : COOL | 18 ~ 32 °C<br>(64 ~ 90 °F) |
| ☀ : HEAT | 10 ~ 30 °C<br>(50 ~ 86 °F) |
| 🌀 : FAN  | Not available              |

#### ON/OFF button

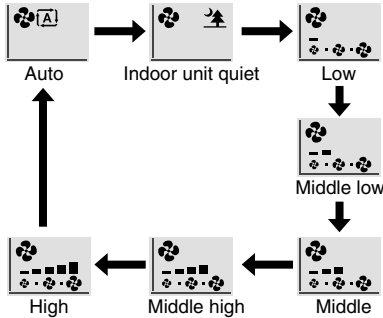
- Press this button once to start operation. Press once again to stop it.

#### POWERFUL <sup>★1</sup> button

- POWERFUL operation.

#### FAN setting button

- Selects the airflow rate setting every time you press this button.



- In indoor unit quiet operation, operation sound becomes weak. (The airflow rate also decreases.)
- In DRY operation, the airflow rate setting is not available.

&lt; ARC452A23 &gt;

(R18861)

#### Reference

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                    |      |
|----|--------------------|------|
| ★1 | POWERFUL operation | P.73 |
|----|--------------------|------|



#### Note:

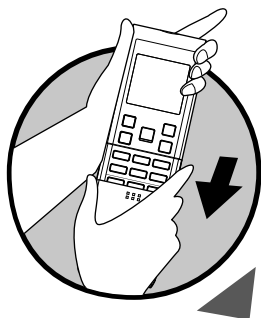
Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))



## Open the Front Cover



### MODE button

- Selects the operation mode.



### QUIET button

- OUTDOOR UNIT QUIET operation.
- QUIET operation is not available in FAN and DRY operation.
- QUIET operation and POWERFUL operation cannot be used at the same time. Priority is given to the function you pressed last.

### OFF TIMER button

- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

### ECONO<sup>★2</sup> button

- ECONO operation.

### SELECT button

- Changes the ON/OFF TIMER settings.

### ON TIMER button

- Press this button and adjust the day and time with the SELECT button. Press this button again to complete TIMER setting.

### CLOCK<sup>★3</sup> button

### TIMER CANCEL button

- Cancels the timer setting.

## Reference

Refer to the following pages for detail.

|    |                 |      |
|----|-----------------|------|
| ★2 | ECONO operation | P.69 |
| ★3 | Clock setting   | P.74 |



### Note:

Refer to the operation manual of applicable model for detail. You can download operation manual from DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE:

DISTRIBUTOR'S PAGE → Product Information → Operation/Installation Manual

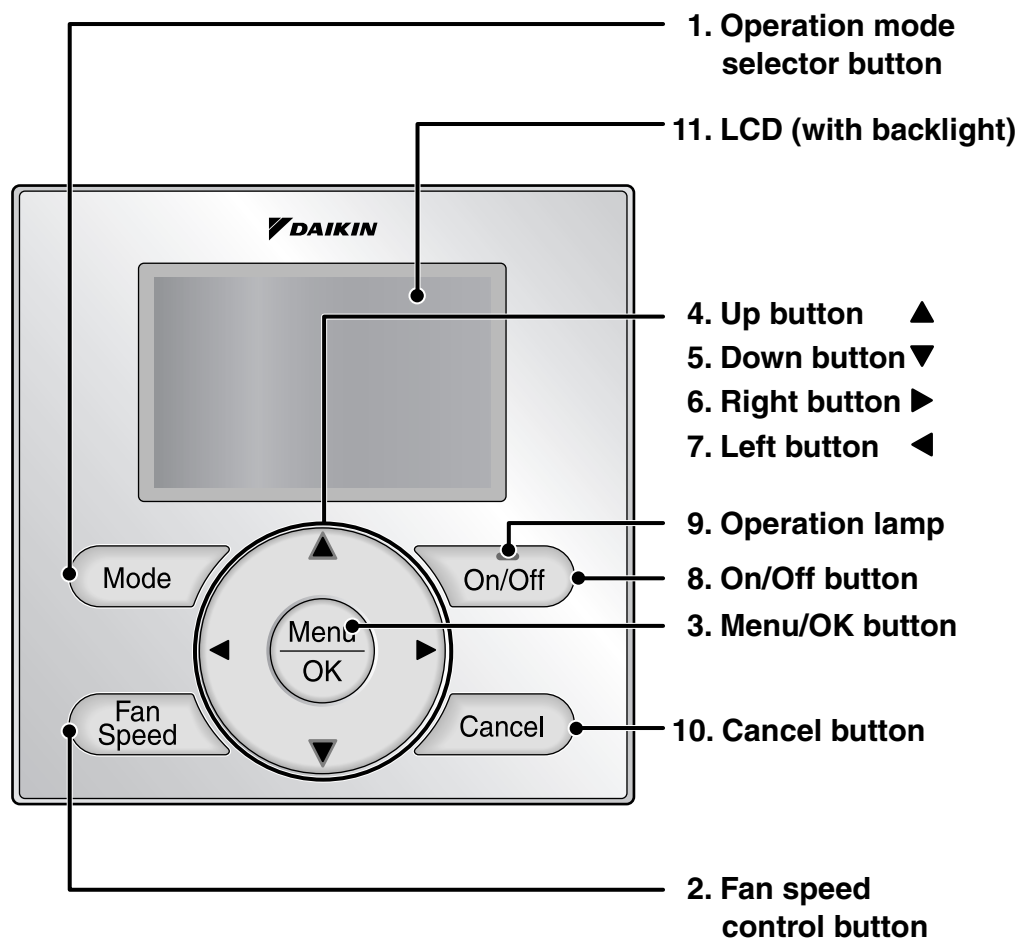
(URL: [http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors\\_admin/user\\_mng/login.php](http://global.daikin.com/Daikin/global/Distributors_admin/user_mng/login.php))

(R18862)



## 4. FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU

### 4.1 <BRC1E72> Wired Remote Controller





---

**1. Operation mode selector button**

---

- Press this button to select the operation mode of your preference.  
\* Available modes vary with the indoor unit model.

---

**2. Fan speed control button**

---

- Press this button to select the fan speed of your preference.  
\* Available fan speeds vary with the indoor unit model.

---

**3. Menu/OK button**

---

- Used to indicate the main menu.
- Used to enter the selected item.

---

**4. Up button ▲**

---

- Used to raise the setpoint.
- The item above the current selection will be highlighted.  
(The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is continuously pressed.)
- Used to change the selected item.

---

**5. Down button ▼**

---

- Used to lower the setpoint.
- The item below the current selection will be highlighted.  
(The highlighted items will be scrolled continuously when the button is continuously pressed.)
- Used to change the selected item.

---

**6. Right button ►**

---

- Used to highlight the next items on the right-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the right-hand direction.

---

**7. Left button ◀**

---

- Used to highlight the next items on the left-hand side.
- Each screen is scrolled in the left-hand direction.

---

**8. On/Off button**

---

- Press this button and system will start.
- Press this button again to stop the system.

---

**9. Operation lamp (Green)**

---

- This lamp illuminates solid during normal operation.
- This lamp blinks if a error occurs.

---

**10. Cancel button**

---

- Used to return to the previous screen.

---

**11. LCD (with backlight)**

---

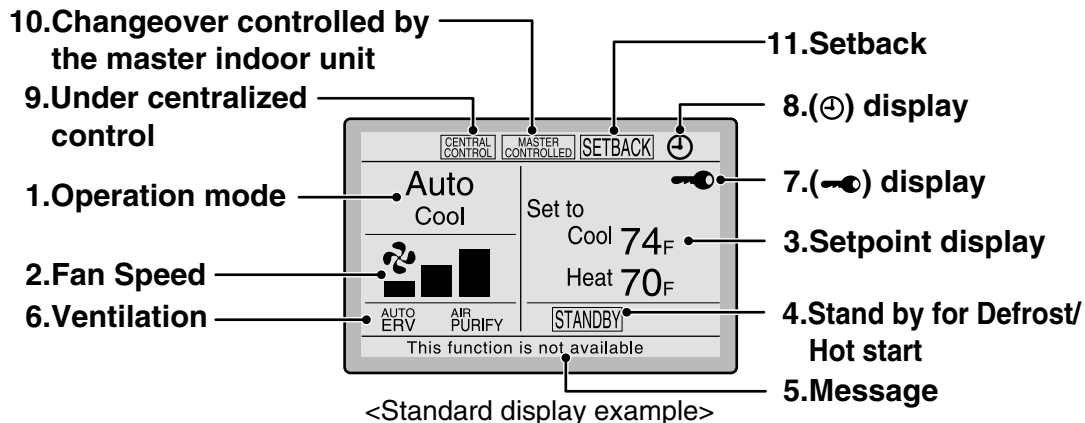
- The backlight will be illuminated for approximately 30 seconds by pressing any button.
- If two remote controllers are used to control a single indoor unit, only the controller to be accessed first will have backlight functionality.



## Liquid Crystal Display

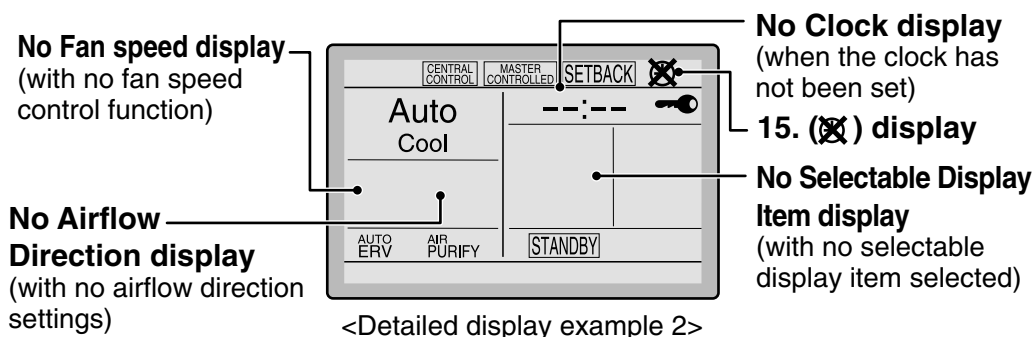
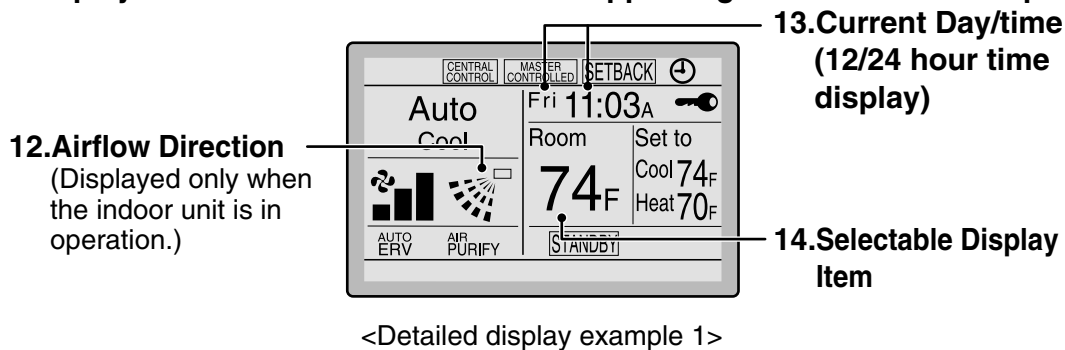
- Three types of liquid crystal display (LCD) are available. The standard display is set by default.
- Detailed and Simple displays can be selected in the main menu.
- The displayed contents of the screen vary with the operation mode of the indoor unit model. (The following display will appear when the indoor unit is in Auto mode.)

### Standard display



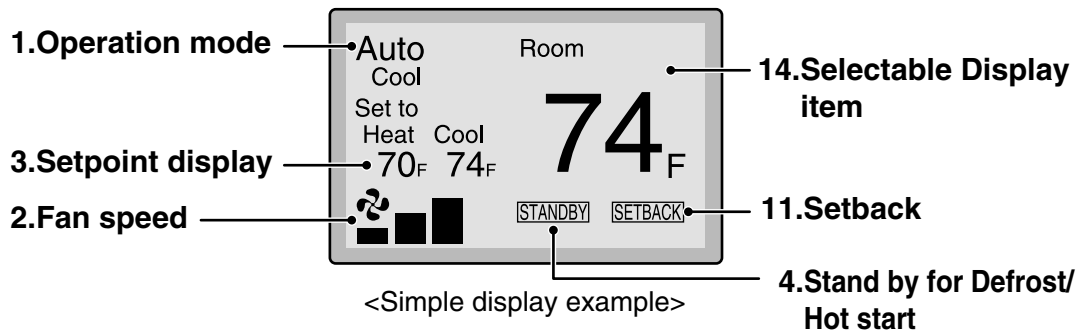
### Detailed Display

- The airflow direction, clock, and selectable item appear on the detailed display screen in addition to the items appearing on the standard display.





### Simple Display



### Common precautions for all display modes

- Depending on the field settings, while the indoor unit is stopped, OFF may be displayed instead of the operation mode and/or the setpoint may not be displayed.



## 1. Operation mode

- Used to display the current operation mode: Cool, Heat, Vent, Fan, Dry or Auto.
- In Auto mode, the actual operation mode (Cool or Heat) will be also displayed.
- Operation mode cannot be changed when OFF is displayed.  
Operation mode can be changed after starting operation.

## 2. Fan Speed

- Used to display the fan speed that is set for the indoor unit.
- The fan speed will not be displayed if the connected model does not have fan speed control functionality.

## 3. Setpoint display

- Used to display the setpoint for the indoor unit.
- Use the Celsius/Fahrenheit item in the main menu to select the temperature unit (Celsius or Fahrenheit).

## 4. Stand by for Defrost/Hot start

**STANDBY**

**If ventilation icon is displayed in this field:**

- Indicates that an energy recovery ventilator is connected.  
For details, refer to the Operation Manual of the ERV.

## 5. Message

**The following messages may be displayed.**

**This function is not available**

- Displayed for a few seconds when an **Operation** button is pressed and the indoor unit does not provide the corresponding function.
- In a remote control group, the message will not be displayed if at least one of the indoor units provides the corresponding function.

**Error: Push Menu button**

**Warning: Push Menu button**

- Displayed if an error or warning is detected.

**Time to clean filter**

**Time to clean element**

**Time to clean filter & element**

- Displayed as a reminder when it is time to clean the filter or element.

## 6. Ventilation

- Displayed when a energy recovery ventilator is connected.
- **Ventilation Mode icon.** (<sup>AUTO</sup>ERV BYPASS)  
These icons indicate the current ventilation mode (ERV only) (AUTO, ERV, BYPASS).
- **Air Purify ICON** (<sup>AIR</sup>PURIFY)  
This icon indicates that the air purifying unit (option) in operation.

## 7. display

- Displayed when the key lock is set.

## 8. display

- Displayed if the Schedule or Off timer is enabled.

## 9. Under Centralized control

- Displayed if the system is under the management of a multi-zone controller (option) and the operation of the system through the remote controller is limited.

## 10. Changeover controlled by the master indoor unit

(VRV only)

- Displayed when another indoor unit on the system has the authority to change the operation mode between cool and heat.



### 11. Setback

---

- The setback icon flashes when the unit is turned on under the setback control.

### 12. Airflow Direction

---

- Displayed when the airflow direction and swing are set.
- If the connected indoor unit model does not include oscillating louvers this item will not be displayed.

### 13. Current Day/Time (12/24 hour time display)

---

- Displayed if the clock is set.
- If the clock is not set, -- : -- will be displayed.
- 12 hour time format is displayed by default.
- Select 12/24 hour time display option in the main menu under Clock & Calendar.

### 14. Selectable Display Item

---

- Displayed if the selectable display item is selected.
- Room temperature is selected by default.

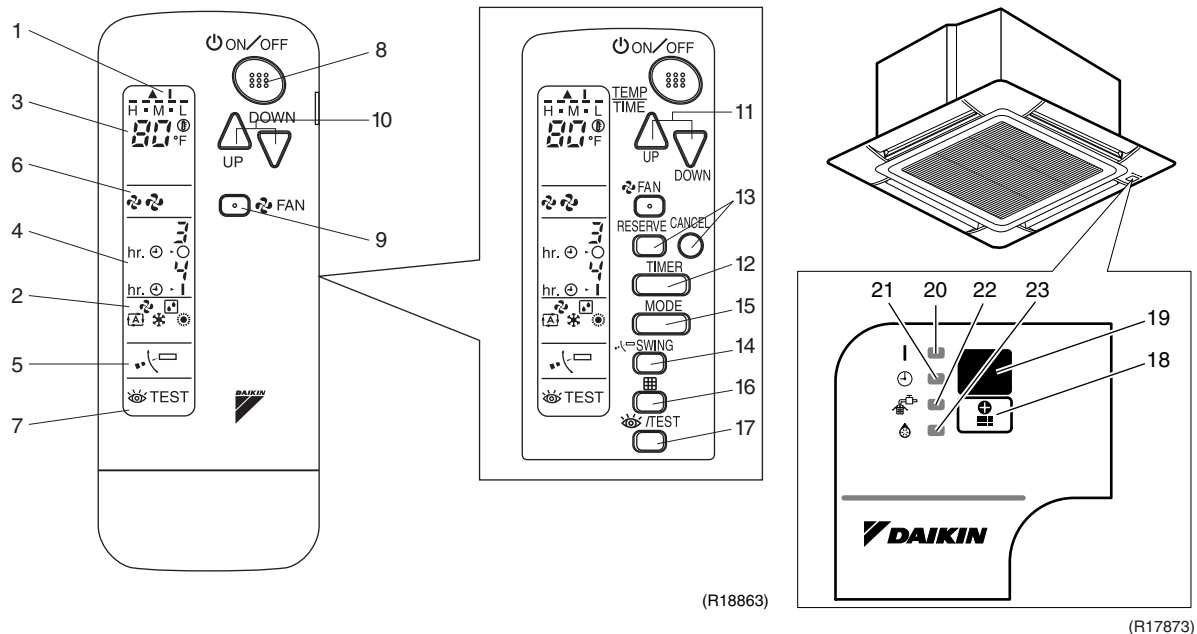
### 15. display

---

- Displayed when the clock needs to be set.
- The schedule function will not work unless the clock is set.



## 4.2 <BRC7E830> Wireless Remote Controller



(R18863)

(R17873)

|    |                                                                                                          |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>DISPLAY ▲ (SIGNAL TRANSMISSION)</b>                                                                   |
| 1  | This lights up when a signal is being transmitted.                                                       |
|    | <b>DISPLAY     (OPERATION MODE)</b>                                                                      |
| 2  | This display shows the current OPERATION MODE.                                                           |
|    | <b>DISPLAY  (SET TEMPERATURE)</b>                                                                        |
| 3  | This display shows the set temperature.                                                                  |
|    | <b>DISPLAY   (PROGRAMMED TIME)</b>                                                                       |
| 4  | This display shows PROGRAMMED TIME of the system start or stop.                                          |
| 5  | <b>DISPLAY  (AIRFLOW LOUVER)</b>                                                                         |
| 6  | <b>DISPLAY  (FAN SPEED)</b><br>The display shows the set fan speed.                                      |
|    | <b>DISPLAY  TEST (INSPECTION/TEST RUN)</b>                                                               |
| 7  | When the INSPECTION/TEST RUN BUTTON is pressed, the display shows the system mode is in.                 |
|    | <b>ON/OFF BUTTON</b>                                                                                     |
| 8  | Press the button and the system will start. Press the button again and the system will stop.             |
|    | <b>FAN SPEED CONTROL BUTTON</b>                                                                          |
| 9  | Press this button to select the fan speed, HIGH or LOW, of your choice.                                  |
|    | <b>TEMPERATURE SETTING BUTTON</b>                                                                        |
| 10 | Use this button for SETTING TEMPERATURE (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller closed.) |

|    |                                                                                                                          |
|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>PROGRAMMING TIMER BUTTON</b>                                                                                          |
| 11 | Use this button for programming START and/or STOP time. (Operates with the front cover of the remote controller opened.) |
| 12 | <b>TIMER MODE START/STOP BUTTON</b>                                                                                      |
| 13 | <b>TIMER RESERVE/CANCEL BUTTON</b>                                                                                       |
| 14 | <b>AIRFLOW DIRECTION ADJUST BUTTON</b>                                                                                   |
|    | <b>OPERATION MODE SELECTOR BUTTON</b>                                                                                    |
| 15 | Press this button to select OPERATION MODE.                                                                              |
|    | <b>FILTER SIGN RESET BUTTON</b>                                                                                          |
| 16 | Refer to the section of MAINTENANCE in the operation manual attached to the indoor unit.                                 |
|    | <b>INSPECTION/TEST RUN BUTTON</b>                                                                                        |
| 17 | This button is used only by qualified service persons for maintenance purposes.                                          |
|    | <b>EMERGENCY OPERATION SWITCH</b>                                                                                        |
| 18 | This switch is readily used if the remote controller does not work.                                                      |
|    | <b>RECEIVER</b>                                                                                                          |
| 19 | This receives the signals from the remote controller.                                                                    |
|    | <b>OPERATING INDICATOR LAMP (Red)</b>                                                                                    |
| 20 | This lamp stays lit while the air conditioner runs. It flashes when the unit is in trouble.                              |
|    | <b>TIMER INDICATOR LAMP (Green)</b>                                                                                      |
| 21 | This lamp stays lit while the timer is set.                                                                              |
|    | <b>AIR FILTER CLEANING TIME INDICATOR LAMP (Red)</b>                                                                     |
| 22 | Lights up when it is time to clean the air filter.                                                                       |
|    | <b>DEFROST LAMP (Orange)</b>                                                                                             |
| 23 | Lights up when the defrosting operation has started.                                                                     |







# Part 8

## Troubleshooting

|                                                                            |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 1. Troubleshooting with LED .....                                          | 134 |
| 1.1 Outdoor Unit .....                                                     | 134 |
| 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit .....                                        | 139 |
| 1.3 Indoor Unit .....                                                      | 140 |
| 2. Service Check Function .....                                            | 141 |
| 2.1 CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....                                    | 141 |
| 2.2 FFQ Series .....                                                       | 144 |
| 3. Error Codes and Description .....                                       | 150 |
| 4. Troubleshooting for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....                 | 152 |
| 4.1 Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality .....                                      | 152 |
| 4.2 Freeze-up Protection Control or Heating Peak-cut Control .....         | 154 |
| 4.3 Fan Motor or Related Abnormality .....                                 | 156 |
| 4.4 Thermistor or Related Abnormality .....                                | 160 |
| 4.5 Check for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series .....                          | 161 |
| 5. Troubleshooting for FFQ Series .....                                    | 163 |
| 5.1 Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality .....                                      | 163 |
| 5.2 Drain Level Control System Abnormality .....                           | 164 |
| 5.3 Fan Motor or Related Abnormality .....                                 | 165 |
| 5.4 Drain System Abnormality .....                                         | 166 |
| 5.5 Thermistor or Related Abnormality .....                                | 167 |
| 5.6 Remote Controller Thermistor Abnormality .....                         | 168 |
| 5.7 Signal Transmission Error between Remote Controller and Indoor Unit .. | 169 |
| 5.8 Signal Transmission Error between MAIN Remote Controller and SUB Re-   |     |
| mote Controller .....                                                      | 170 |
| 5.9 Field Setting Abnormality .....                                        | 171 |
| 6. Troubleshooting for Branch Provider (BP) Unit .....                     | 172 |
| 6.1 Electronic Expansion Valve Abnormality .....                           | 172 |
| 6.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit PCB Abnormality .....                        | 173 |
| 6.3 Branch Provider (BP) Liquid or Gas Pipe Thermistor Abnormality .....   | 174 |
| 6.4 Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and Branch Provider (BP) |     |
| Unit .....                                                                 | 175 |
| 6.5 Transmission Error between Outdoor Unit and Branch Provider (BP)       |     |
| Unit .....                                                                 | 177 |
| 6.6 Check for Branch Provider (BP) Unit .....                              | 178 |
| 7. Troubleshooting for Outdoor Unit .....                                  | 179 |
| 7.1 Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality .....                                     | 179 |
| 7.2 Actuation of High Pressure Switch .....                                | 180 |
| 7.3 Actuation of Low Pressure Sensor .....                                 | 182 |
| 7.4 Compressor Motor Lock .....                                            | 184 |
| 7.5 Outdoor Fan Motor Abnormality .....                                    | 185 |
| 7.6 Moving Part of Electronic Expansion Valve (Y1E, Y3E) Abnormality ..... | 186 |



|                                                                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 7.7 Discharge Pipe Temperature Abnormality .....                                                      | 188 |
| 7.8 Refrigerant Overcharged.....                                                                      | 189 |
| 7.9 Outdoor Temperature Thermistor (R1T) Abnormality .....                                            | 190 |
| 7.10 Discharge Pipe Thermistor (R2T) Abnormality.....                                                 | 191 |
| 7.11 Suction Pipe Thermistor (R3T, R5T) Abnormality .....                                             | 192 |
| 7.12 Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor (R4T) Abnormality .....                                        | 193 |
| 7.13 Outdoor Liquid Pipe Thermistor (R7T) Abnormality .....                                           | 194 |
| 7.14 Subcooling Heat Exchanger Gas Pipe Thermistor (R6T) Abnormality.....                             | 195 |
| 7.15 High Pressure Sensor Abnormality .....                                                           | 196 |
| 7.16 Low Pressure Sensor Abnormality .....                                                            | 197 |
| 7.17 Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality.....                                                                | 198 |
| 7.18 Radiation Fin Temperature Rise .....                                                             | 199 |
| 7.19 Inverter Compressor Abnormality.....                                                             | 200 |
| 7.20 Inverter Current Abnormality .....                                                               | 201 |
| 7.21 Compressor Start-up Error .....                                                                  | 202 |
| 7.22 High Voltage of Capacitor in Main Inverter Circuit .....                                         | 203 |
| 7.23 Radiation Fin Thermistor Abnormality .....                                                       | 204 |
| 7.24 Low Pressure Drop due to Refrigerant Shortage or Electronic Expansion<br>Valve Abnormality ..... | 205 |
| 7.25 Power Supply Insufficient or Instantaneous Failure .....                                         | 207 |
| 7.26 Check Operation is not Conducted .....                                                           | 208 |
| 7.27 Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit in the Same<br>System .....       | 209 |
| 7.28 Excessive Number of Indoor Units .....                                                           | 210 |
| 7.29 Address Duplication of Central Remote Controller.....                                            | 211 |
| 7.30 Transmission Error between Centralized Remote Controller and Indoor<br>Unit .....                | 212 |
| 7.31 System is not Set yet.....                                                                       | 214 |
| 7.32 System Abnormality, Refrigerant System Address Undefined .....                                   | 215 |
| 7.33 Check for Outdoor Unit.....                                                                      | 216 |
| 8. Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics .....                                          | 220 |
| 9. Pressure Sensor .....                                                                              | 222 |
| 10. Method of Replacing Inverter's Power Transistors Modules .....                                    | 223 |

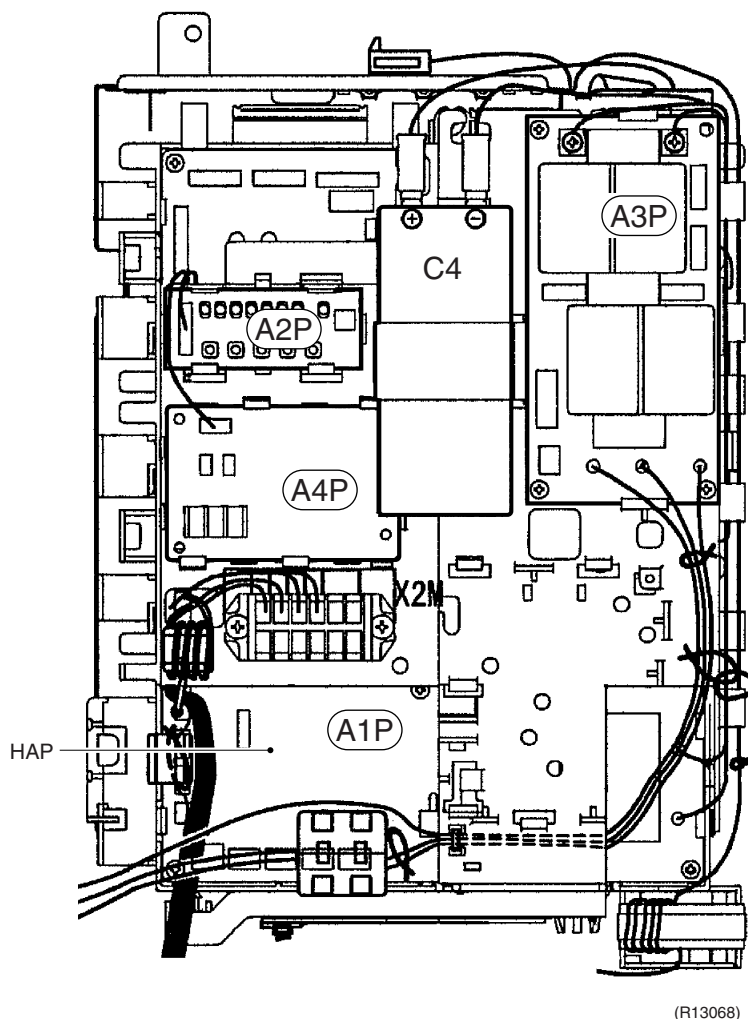


# 1. Troubleshooting with LED

## 1.1 Outdoor Unit

### 1.1.1 Main PCB (A1P)

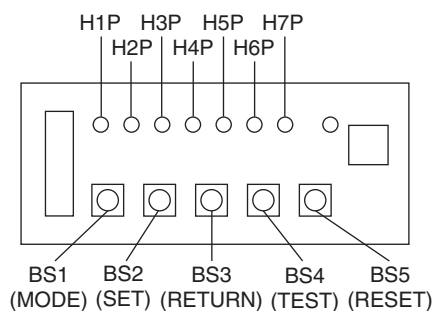
The main PCB (A1P) has a green LED (HAP). When the microcomputer works in order, the LED blinks.



(R13068)

### 1.1.2 Service PCB (A2P)

The service PCB (A2P) has orange LEDs (H1P ~ H7P). You can identify the error code with these LEDs in monitor mode.



(R13069)



## Error code indication in monitor mode

## &lt;Monitor mode&gt;

Press the **MODE (BS1)** button and enter the monitor mode.

## &lt;Selection of check item&gt;

Press the **SET (BS2)** button and select a check item according to the LED pattern of No.14~16 and No.20~22.  
Refer to page 102 for check items.

## &lt;Confirmation of malfunction 1&gt;

Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button once to display the first digit of error code.

## &lt;Confirmation of malfunction 2&gt;

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the second digit of error code.

## &lt;Confirmation of malfunction 3&gt;

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the malfunction location.

## &lt;Confirmation of malfunction 4&gt;

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the malfunction unit and the malfunction location.

Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button and return to the initial status of monitor mode.

Detail description on next page.

| Contents of malfunction                                          |                                        | Error code |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------|
| Outdoor unit PCB abnormality                                     | Detection of DIII-Net                  | E1         |
| Actuation of high pressure switch                                | High pressure switch activated (S1PH)  | E3         |
| Actuation of low pressure sensor                                 | Abnormal Pe                            | E4         |
| Compressor motor lock                                            | Detection of compressor lock           | E5         |
| Outdoor fan motor abnormality                                    | Detection of fan motor lock (M1F)      | E7         |
|                                                                  | Detection of fan motor lock (M2F)      |            |
| Moving part of electronic expansion valve (Y1E, Y3E) abnormality | Y1E (main)                             | E9         |
|                                                                  | Y3E (subcooling)                       |            |
| Outdoor temperature thermistor (R1T) abnormality                 | Short or open circuit (R1T)            | H9         |
| Discharge pipe temperature abnormality                           | Abnormal Tdi                           | F3         |
| Refrigerant overcharged                                          | Refrigerant overcharge                 | F6         |
| Discharge pipe thermistor (R2T) abnormality                      | Short or open circuit (R2T)            | J3         |
| Suction pipe thermistor (R3T, R5T) abnormality                   | Short or open circuit (suction 1: R3T) | J5         |
|                                                                  | Short or open circuit (suction 2: R5T) |            |
| Outdoor heat exchanger thermistor (R4T) abnormality              | Short or open circuit (R4T)            | J6         |
| Outdoor liquid pipe thermistor (R7T) abnormality                 | Short or open circuit (R7T)            | J7         |
| Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe thermistor (R6T) abnormality  | Short or open circuit (R6T)            | J9         |
| High pressure sensor abnormality                                 | Short or open circuit (S1NPH)          | JA         |
| Low pressure sensor abnormality                                  | Short or open circuit (S1NPL)          | JC         |
| Outdoor unit PCB abnormality                                     | Faulty IPM                             | L1         |
|                                                                  | Abnormal current sensor offset         |            |
|                                                                  | Abnormal IGBT                          |            |
|                                                                  | Faulty current sensor                  |            |
|                                                                  | Abnormal SP-PAM overvoltage            |            |
| Radiation fin temperature rise                                   | Overheating (FINTH)                    | L4         |
| Inverter compressor abnormality                                  | Inverter instantaneous overcurrent     | L5         |
| Inverter current abnormality                                     | Electronic thermal switch 1            | L8         |
|                                                                  | Electronic thermal switch 2            |            |
|                                                                  | Out-of-step                            |            |
|                                                                  | Speed down after startup               |            |
|                                                                  | Lightening detection                   |            |
| Compressor start-up error                                        | Stall prevention (Current increasing)  | L9         |
|                                                                  | Stall prevention (Faulty start up)     |            |
|                                                                  | Abnormal waveform in startup           |            |
|                                                                  | Out-of-step                            |            |

\* If you become unsure of how to proceed, press the **MODE (BS1)** button and return to the setting mode 1.



○ : ON   ● : OFF   ◐ : Blink

| Error code | Confirmation of malfunction 1 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 2 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 3 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 4 |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|            | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P |
| E1         | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   |
| E3         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | *1  |
| E4         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| E5         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| E7         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| E9         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| H9         | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | *1  |
| F3         | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | *1  |
| F6         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   |
| J3         | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ●   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | *1  |
| J5         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| J6         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| J7         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| J9         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| JA         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| JC         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| L1         | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
| L4         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | *1  |
| L5         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| L8         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   |     |
| L9         |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ◐   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |
|            |                               |     |     | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐   | ◐                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐   | ◐                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ◐                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |

Display of contents of  
malfunction (first digit)Display of contents of  
malfunction (second digit)Display 1 of  
malfunction in detailDisplay 2 of  
malfunction in detail

\*1

|   |   |        |
|---|---|--------|
| ● | ● | Master |
| ● | ◐ | Slave1 |
| ◐ | ● | Slave2 |
| ◐ | ◐ | System |



<Monitor mode>

Press the **MODE (BS1)** button and enter the monitor mode.

<Selection of check item>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button and select a check item according to the LED pattern of No.14~16 and No.20~22.  
Refer to page 102 for check items.

<Confirmation of malfunction 1>

Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button once to display the first digit of error code.

<Confirmation of malfunction 2>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the second digit of error code.

<Confirmation of malfunction 3>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the malfunction location.

<Confirmation of malfunction 4>

Press the **SET (BS2)** button once to display the malfunction unit and the malfunction location.

Press the **RETURN (BS3)** button and return to the initial status of monitor mode.

Detail description on next page.









| Contents of malfunction                                                                 |                                                                                                | Error code |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| High voltage of capacitor in main inverter circuit                                      | Imbalance of inverter power supply voltage                                                     | P1         |
| Radiation fin thermistor abnormality                                                    | Faulty thermistor of inverter fin                                                              | P4         |
| Low pressure drop due to refrigerant shortage or electronic expansion valve abnormality | Refrigerant shortage alarm                                                                     | U0         |
| Power supply insufficient or instantaneous failure                                      | Insufficient Inverter voltage                                                                  | U2         |
|                                                                                         | Faulty charge of capacitor in main inverter circuit                                            |            |
|                                                                                         | Malfunction due to SP-PAM overvoltage                                                          |            |
|                                                                                         | Malfunction due to P-N short circuit                                                           |            |
| Check operation is not conducted.                                                       |                                                                                                | U3         |
| Transmission error between indoor unit and BP unit                                      | I/O transmission error                                                                         | U4         |
|                                                                                         | I/O transmission error                                                                         |            |
| Transmission error between indoor unit and outdoor unit in the same system              | Indoor unit system abnormal in other system or other indoor unit system abnormal in own system | U9         |
| Field setting switch abnormality or Excessive number of indoor units                    | System transmission malfunction                                                                | UA         |
|                                                                                         | Overconnection malfunction of indoor units                                                     |            |
|                                                                                         | Malfunction of field setting                                                                   |            |
|                                                                                         | Refrigerant abnormal                                                                           |            |
|                                                                                         | Connection error (BP unit)                                                                     |            |
| System abnormality, refrigerant system address undefined                                | Wiring error (Auto-address error)                                                              | UH         |
| System is not set yet                                                                   | Conflict in wiring and piping                                                                  | UF         |

\* If you become unsure of how to proceed, press the **MODE (BS1)** button and return to the setting mode 1.



| Error code | Confirmation of malfunction 1 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 2 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 3 |     |     |     |     |     |     | Confirmation of malfunction 4 |     |     |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|------------|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
|            | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P | H1P                           | H2P | H3P | H4P | H5P | H6P | H7P |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| P1         | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | *1  |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| P4         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| U0         | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| U2         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | *1  |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|            |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|            |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|            |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| U3         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○ | ○ | ○ | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| U4         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○ | ○ | ○ | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| U9         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○ | ○ | ○ | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| UA         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○ | ○ | ○ | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| UH         |                               |     |     |     |     |     |     | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○ | ○ | ○ | ● | ● | ● | ● |
| UF         | ●                             |     |     | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ○                             | ○   | ○   | ●   | ●   | ●   | ●   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

Display 2 of malfunction in detail

|    |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |        |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| *1 |  |  | Master |
|    |  |  | Slave1 |
|    |  |  | Slave2 |
|    |  |  | System |

























# 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit

☀: ON, ●: OFF, ⚡: Blinks, —: No matter

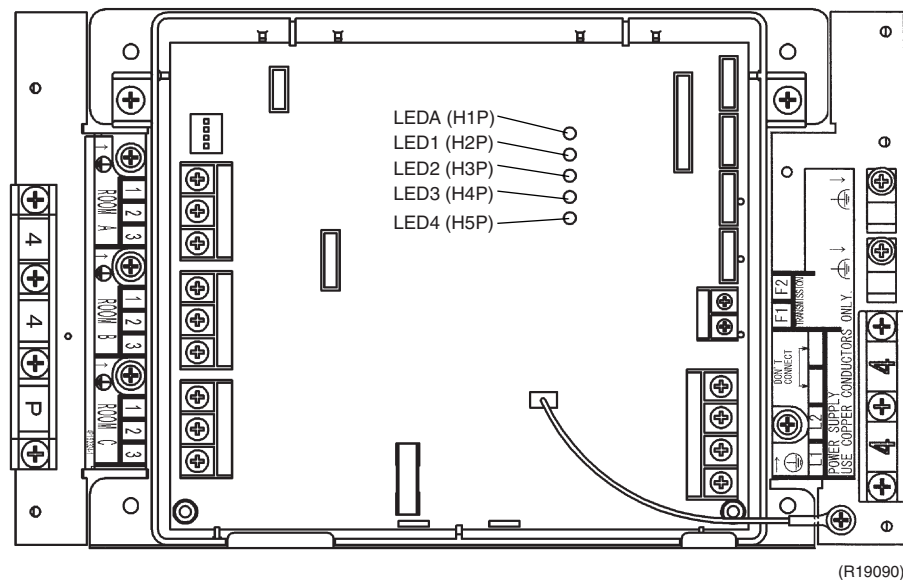
Green : Blinks in normal condition

Red : OFF in normal condition

| BP Unit LED Indication                                                            |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   | Description                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Green                                                                             | Red                                                                               |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                         |
| A                                                                                 | 1                                                                                 | 2                                                                                 | 3                                                                                 | 4                                                                                 |                                                                                         |
|  |  |  |  |  | Normal condition                                                                        |
|  |  |  |  |  | Defective electronic expansion valve or anti-icing control in non-operating indoor unit |
|  |  |  |  |  | Defective thermistor                                                                    |
|  |  |  |  |  | Freeze-up protection control in operating indoor unit or standby indoor unit            |
|  | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | Defective BP unit PCB (See note.)                                                       |
|  | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | —                                                                                 | Power supply abnormality (See note.)                                                    |



**Note:** Turn the power off then on again. If the LED display recurs, the BP unit PCB is defective.



(R19090)



## 1.3 Indoor Unit

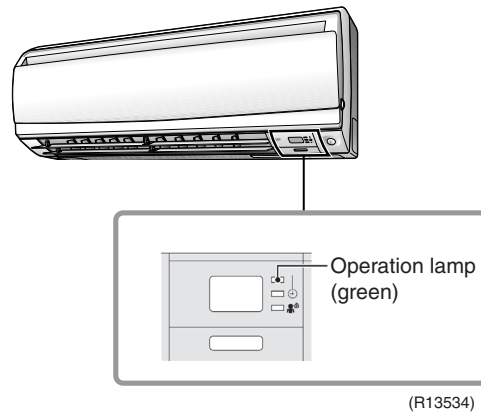
### Operation Lamp

The operation lamp blinks when any of the following errors is detected.

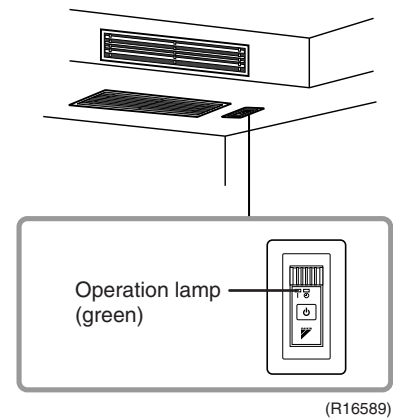
1. When a protection device of the indoor or outdoor unit is activated, or when the thermistor malfunctions.
  2. When a signal transmission error occurs between the indoor and outdoor units.
- In either case, conduct the diagnostic procedure described in the following pages.

#### CTXS/FTXS series

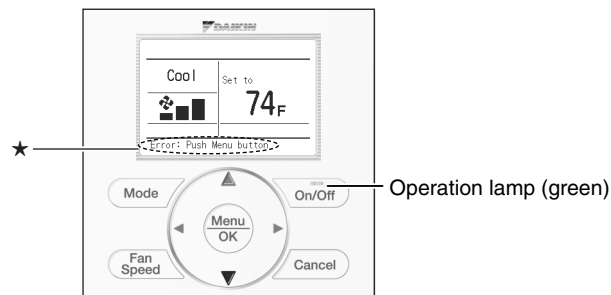
(Ex: CTXS07LVJU, FTXS09/12LVJU)



#### CDXS/FDXS series



#### BRC1E72



★The error or warning message also blinks on the basic screen. (R18816)

#### BRC7E830

In case of wireless remote controller, a signal receiver PCB and a display PCB are installed on indoor unit. When the error occurs, the operation lamp on the display PCB blinks.



#### Caution:

When operation stops suddenly and the operation lamp blinks, it could be operation mode conflict. Check followings;

Are the operation modes all the same for the indoor units connected to multi system outdoor unit? If not, set all the indoor units to the same operation mode and confirm that the operation lamp is not blinking.

Moreover, when the operation mode is automatic, set all the indoor unit operation mode as cooling or heating and check again if the operation lamp is normal.

If the lamp stops blinking after the above steps, there is no malfunction.

\* Operation stops and operation lamp blinks only for indoor unit which different operation mode is set later. (The first set operation mode has priority.)

### Service Monitor

The indoor unit has one green LED (LED A) on the control PCB. When the microcomputer works in order, the LED A blinks.

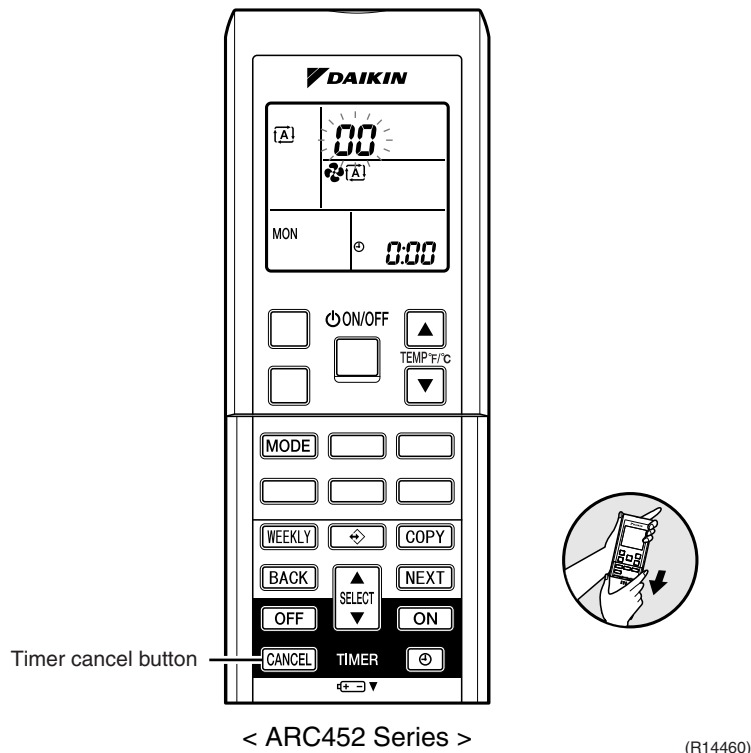


## 2. Service Check Function

### 2.1 CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

#### Check Method 1

1. When the timer cancel button is held down for 5 seconds, **00** is displayed on the temperature display screen.



2. Press the timer cancel button repeatedly until a long beep sounds.

■ The code indication changes in the sequence shown below.

| No. | Code | No. | Code | No. | Code |
|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|
| 1   | 00   | 13  | 07   | 25  | UR   |
| 2   | 04   | 14  | R3   | 26  | UH   |
| 3   | LS   | 15  | H8   | 27  | PY   |
| 4   | ES   | 16  | H9   | 28  | L3   |
| 5   | H6   | 17  | 09   | 29  | L4   |
| 6   | H0   | 18  | 04   | 30  | H7   |
| 7   | R6   | 19  | 05   | 31  | U2   |
| 8   | 07   | 20  | J3   | 32  | ER   |
| 9   | U0   | 21  | U6   | 33  | PH   |
| 10  | F3   | 22  | ES   | 34  | FR   |
| 11  | RS   | 23  | R1   | 35  | H1   |
| 12  | FS   | 24  | E1   | 36  | PS   |



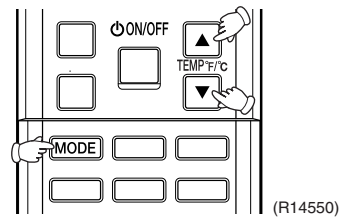
#### Note:

1. A short beep or two consecutive beeps indicate non-corresponding codes.
2. To return to the normal mode, hold the timer cancel button down for 5 seconds. When the remote controller is left untouched for 60 seconds, it also returns to the normal mode.
3. Not all the error codes are displayed. When you cannot find the error code, try the check method 2. (→ Refer to page 146.)

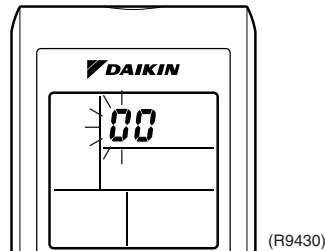


**Check Method 2**

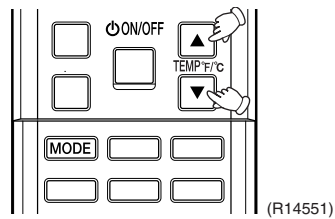
1. Press the 3 buttons (**TEMP▲**, **TEMP▼**, **MODE**) at the same time to enter the diagnosis mode.



The left-side number blinks.



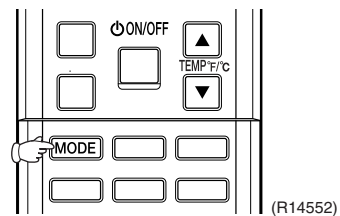
2. Press the **TEMP ▲** or **▼** button and change the number until you hear the two consecutive beeps or the long beep.



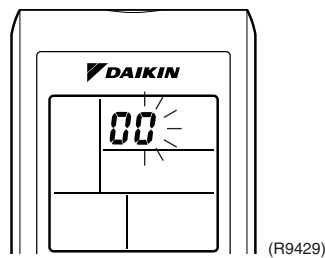
3. Diagnose by the sound.

- ★beep : The left-side number does not correspond with the error code.
- ★two consecutive beeps : The left-side number corresponds with the error code but the right-side number does not.
- ★long beep : Both the left-side and right-side number correspond with the error code.  
The numbers indicated when you hear the long beep are the error code.  
Error codes and description → Refer to page 154, 155.

4. Press the **MODE** button.

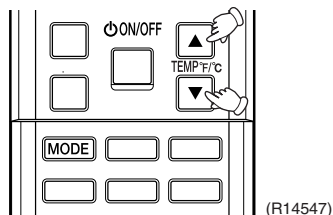


The right-side number blinks.

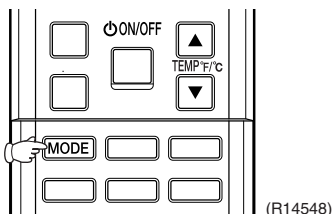




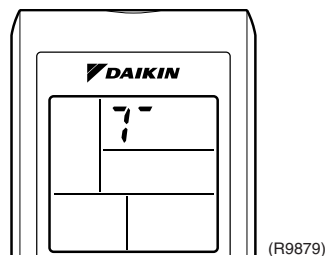
5. Press the **TEMP ▲** or **▼** button and change the number until you hear the long beep.



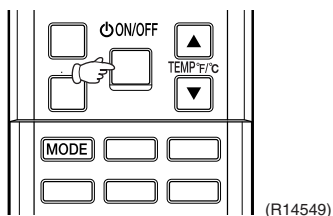
6. Diagnose by the sound.
- ★beep : The left-side number does not correspond with the error code.
  - ★two consecutive beeps : The left-side number corresponds with the error code but the right-side number does not.
  - ★long beep : Both the left-side and right-side number corresponds with the error code.
7. Determine the error code.  
The numbers indicated when you hear the long beep are the error code.  
Error codes and description → Refer to page 154, 155.
8. Press the **MODE** button to exit from the diagnosis mode.



The display **7<sup>-</sup>** means the test operation mode.  
Refer to page 93 for test operation.



9. Press the **ON/OFF** button twice to return to the normal mode.



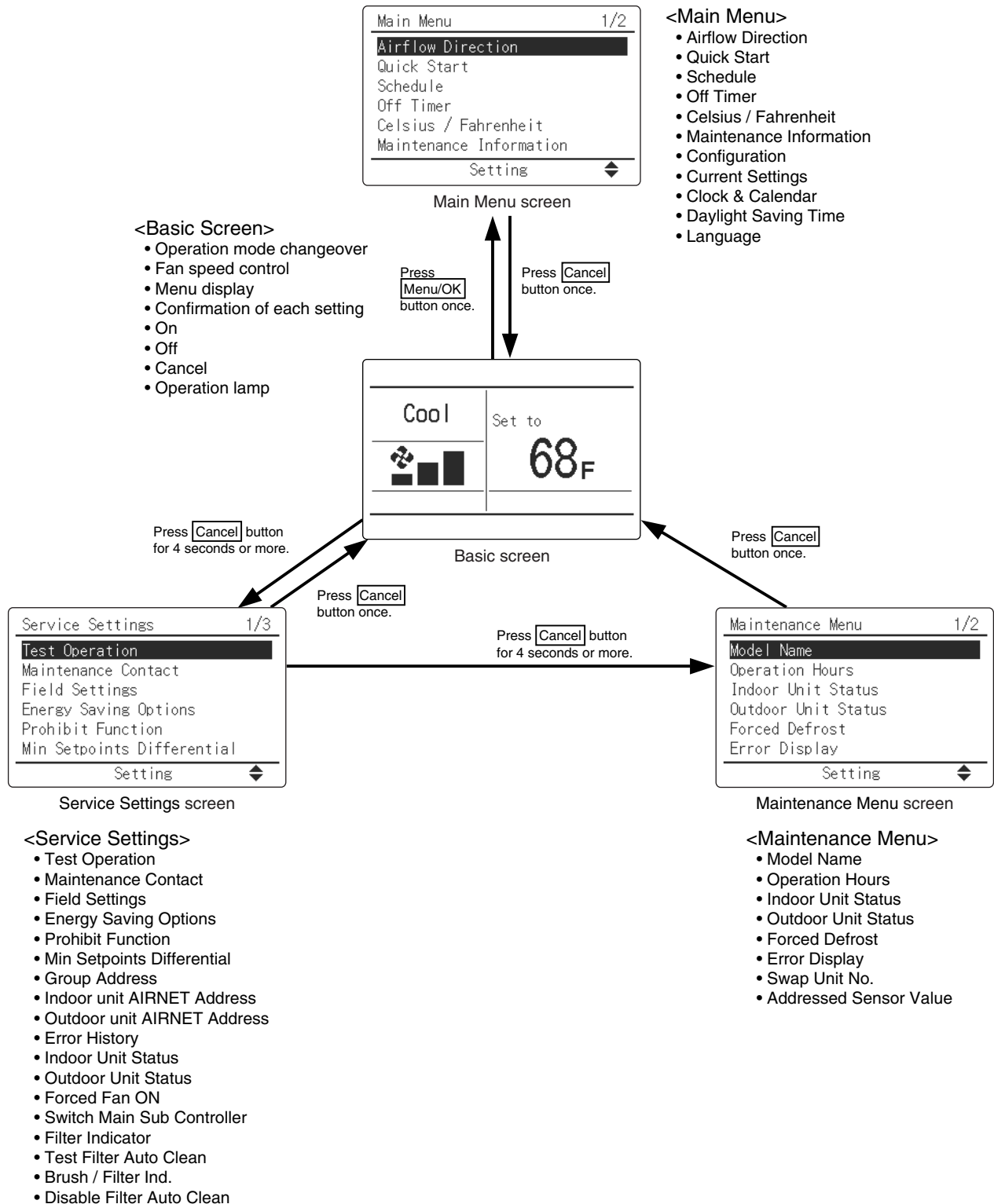
**Note:** When the remote controller is left untouched for 60 seconds, it returns to the normal mode.



## 2.2 FFQ Series

### 2.2.1 BRC1E72

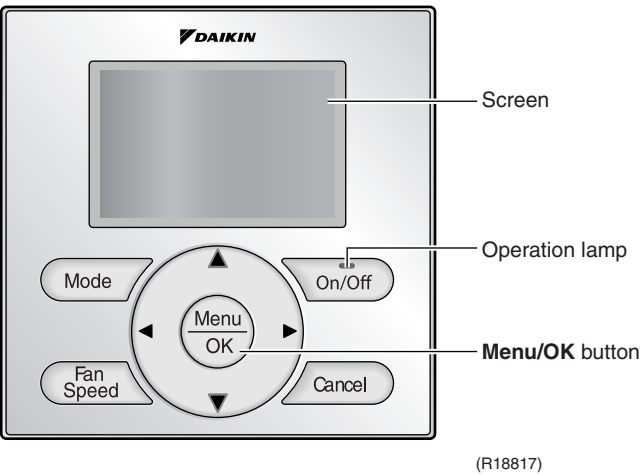
#### Relations Between Modes





Service Check  
Function

The following message is displayed on the screen when a error (or a warning) occurs during operation.  
Check the error code and take the corrective action specified for the particular model.



(1) Check if it is error or warning.

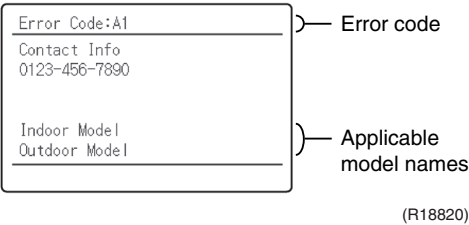
|                   | Operation status                    | Display                                                                                                                    |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Abnormal shutdown | The system stops operating.         | The operation lamp (green) starts to blink. The message <b>Error: Push Menu button</b> blinks at the bottom of the screen. | <p>(R18971)</p> |
| Warning           | The system continues its operation. | The operation lamp (green) remains on. The message <b>Warning: Push Menu button</b> blinks at the bottom of the screen.    | <p>(R18972)</p> |

(2) Take corrective action.

- Press the **Menu/OK** button to check the error code.



- Take the corrective action specific to the model.

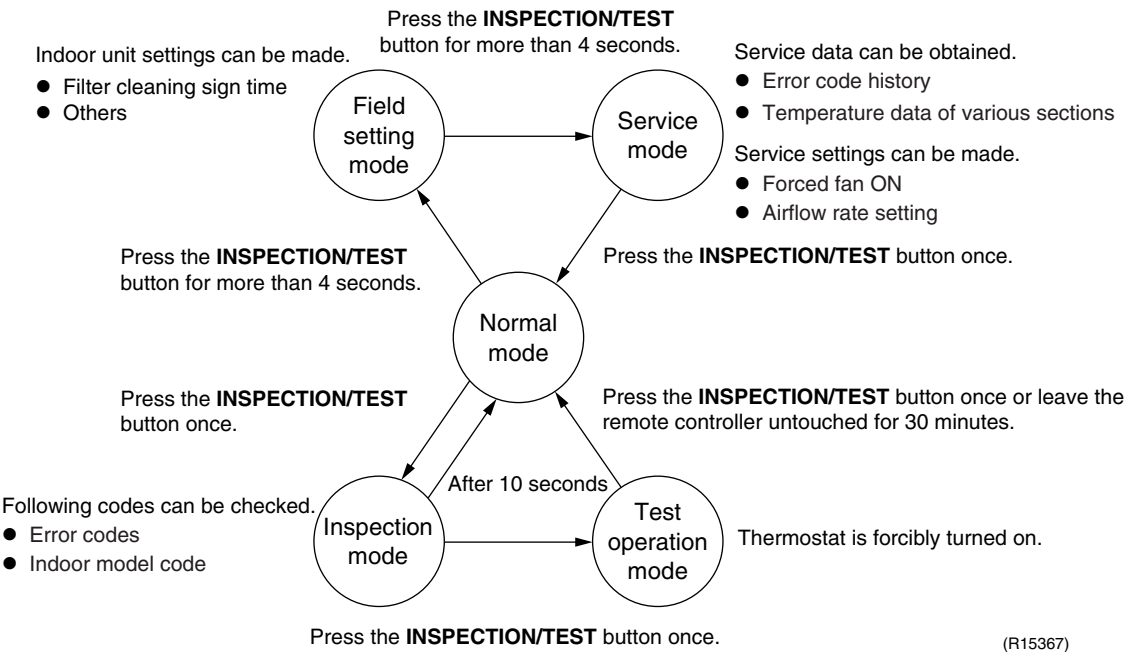




2.2.2 BRC7E830


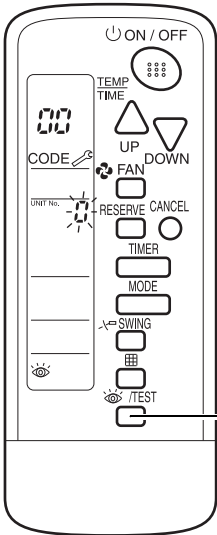
Relations  
Between Modes

The following modes can be selected by using the **INSPECTION/TEST** button on the remote controller.

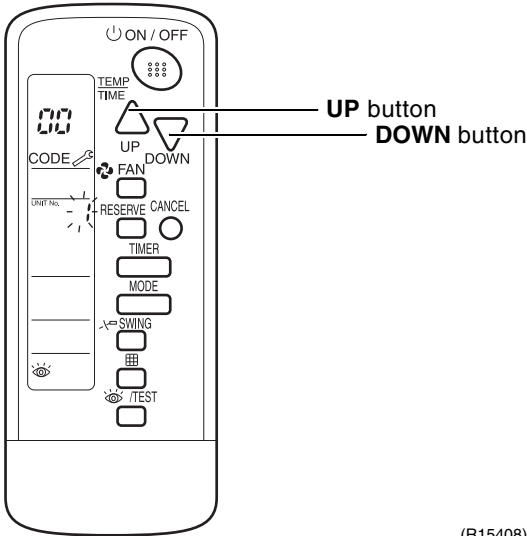

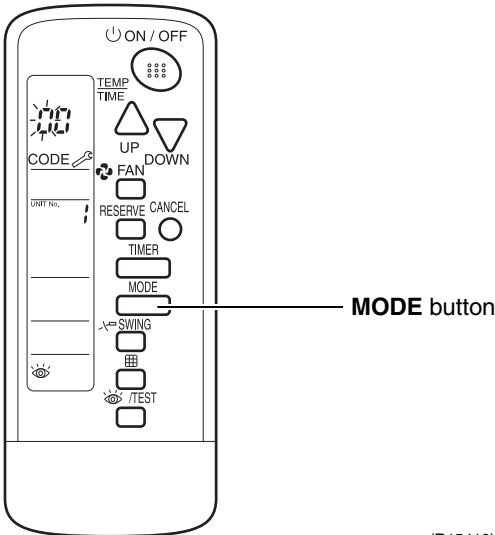


Service Check  
Function

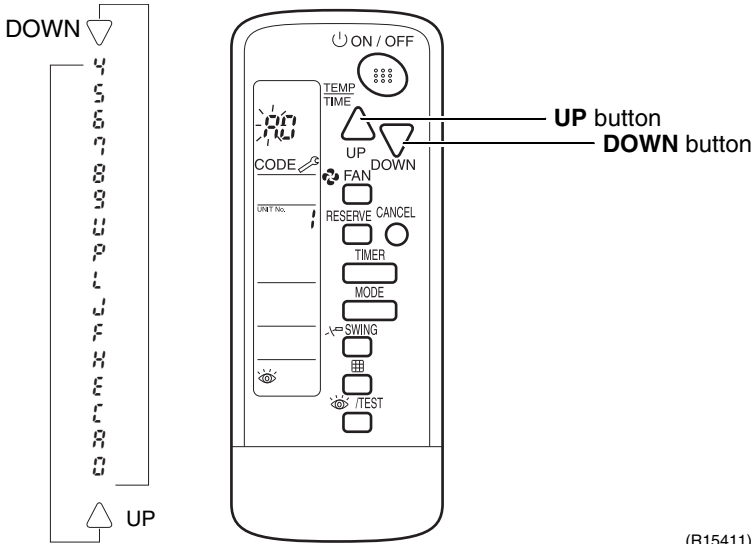
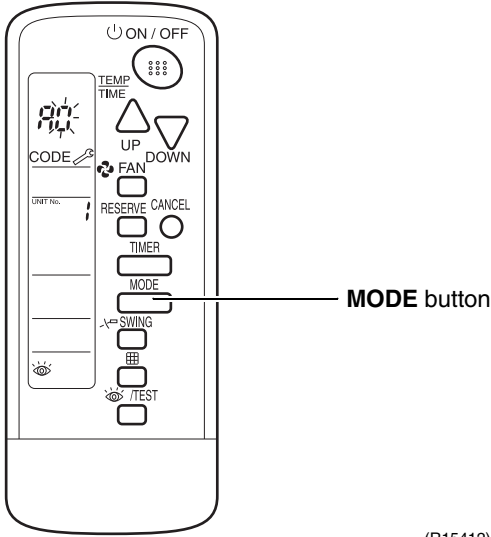
To find the error code, proceed as follows:

| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | <p>Press the <b>INSPECTION/TEST</b> button to enter the inspection mode. Then the figure  blinks on the UNIT No. display.</p> <div><p>INSPECTION/TEST button</p></div> <p>(R14392)</p> |

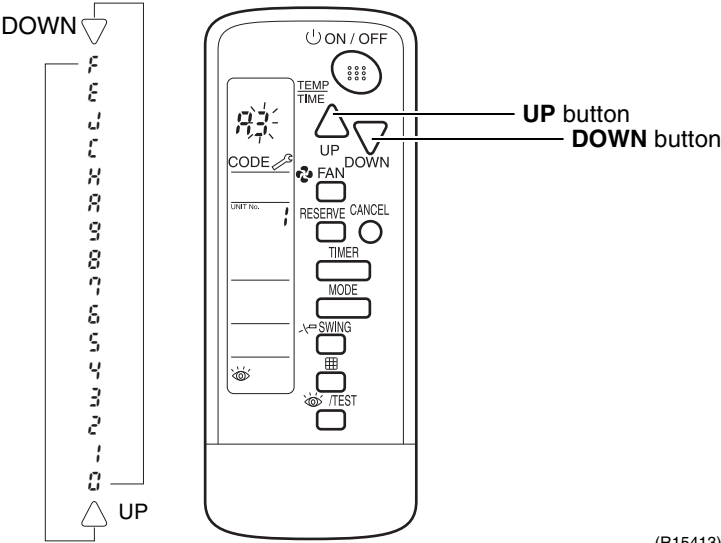
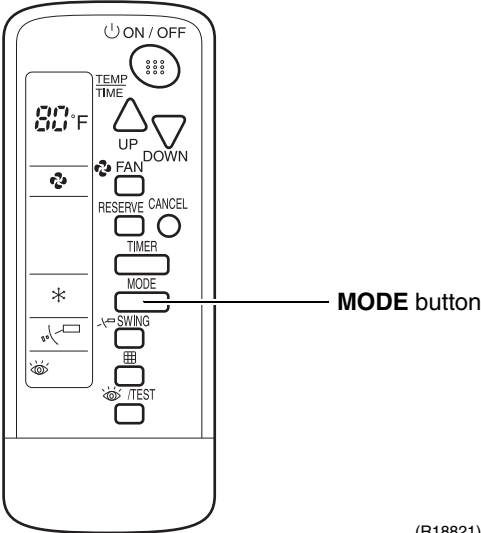


| Step              | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------|---------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 2                 | <div><p>Press the <b>UP</b> or <b>DOWN</b> button and change the UNIT No. until the receiver of the remote controller starts to beep.</p><div><p>(R15408)</p></div><table><tr><th>If you hear...</th><th>Then...</th></tr><tr><td>3 short beeps</td><td>Follow all steps below.</td></tr><tr><td>1 short beep</td><td>Follow steps 3 and 4. Continue the operation in step 4 until you hear a continuous beep. This continuous beep indicates that the error code is confirmed.</td></tr><tr><td>1 continuous beep</td><td>There is no abnormality.</td></tr></table></div> | If you hear... | Then... | 3 short beeps | Follow all steps below. | 1 short beep | Follow steps 3 and 4. Continue the operation in step 4 until you hear a continuous beep. This continuous beep indicates that the error code is confirmed. | 1 continuous beep | There is no abnormality. |
| If you hear...    | Then...                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |
| 3 short beeps     | Follow all steps below.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |
| 1 short beep      | Follow steps 3 and 4. Continue the operation in step 4 until you hear a continuous beep. This continuous beep indicates that the error code is confirmed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |
| 1 continuous beep | There is no abnormality.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |
| 3                 | <div><p>Press the <b>MODE</b> button. The left  (upper digit) indication of the error code blinks.</p><div><p>(R15410)</p></div></div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                |         |               |                         |              |                                                                                                                                                           |                   |                          |



| Step              | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 4                 | <p>Press the <b>UP</b> or <b>DOWN</b> button to change the error code upper digit until the receiver of the remote controller starts to beep.</p> <div><p>(R15411)</p></div> <table><tr><th>If you hear...</th><th>Then...</th></tr><tr><td>2 short beeps</td><td>The upper digit matches.</td></tr><tr><td>1 short beep</td><td>No digits match.</td></tr><tr><td>1 continuous beep</td><td>Both upper and lower digits match.</td></tr></table> | If you hear... | Then... | 2 short beeps | The upper digit matches. | 1 short beep | No digits match. | 1 continuous beep | Both upper and lower digits match. |
| If you hear...    | Then...                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |
| 2 short beeps     | The upper digit matches.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |
| 1 short beep      | No digits match.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |
| 1 continuous beep | Both upper and lower digits match.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |
| 5                 | <p>Press the <b>MODE</b> button. The right 8 (lower digit) indication of the error code blinks.</p> <div><p>(R15412)</p></div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                |         |               |                          |              |                  |                   |                                    |



| Step | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6    | <p>Press the <b>UP</b> or <b>DOWN</b> button and change the error code lower digit until the receiver of the remote controller generates a continuous beep.</p>  <p>(R15413)</p>                  |
| 7    | <p>Press the <b>MODE</b> button to return to the normal mode. If you do not press any button for 1 minutes, the remote controller automatically returns to the normal mode.</p>  <p>(R18821)</p> |




### 3. Error Codes and Description

|              | Error code | Description                                                             | Reference page |                |         |              |
|--------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------|--------------|
|              |            |                                                                         | RA Indoor Unit | SA Indoor Unit | BP Unit | Outdoor Unit |
| Indoor Unit  | <b>A1</b>  | Indoor unit PCB abnormality                                             | 156            | 167            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>A3</b>  | Drain level control system abnormality                                  | —              | 168            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>A5</b>  | Freeze-up protection control or heating peak-cut control                | 158            | —              | —       | —            |
|              | <b>A6</b>  | Fan motor or related abnormality                                        | 160, 162       | 169            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>A9</b>  | Electronic expansion valve abnormality                                  | —              | —              | 176     | —            |
|              | <b>AF</b>  | Drain system abnormality                                                | —              | 170            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>C4</b>  | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor 1 (liquid pipe) or related abnormality | 164            | 171            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>C5</b>  | Indoor heat exchanger thermistor 2 or related abnormality               | —              | 171            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>C9</b>  | Room temperature thermistor or related abnormality                      | 164            | 171            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>CJ</b>  | Remote controller thermistor abnormality                                | —              | 172            | —       | —            |
| Outdoor Unit | <b>E1</b>  | Outdoor unit PCB abnormality                                            | —              | —              | —       | 183          |
|              | <b>E2</b>  | Branch provider (BP) unit PCB abnormality                               | —              | —              | 177     | —            |
|              | <b>E3</b>  | Actuation of high pressure switch                                       | —              | —              | —       | 184          |
|              | <b>E4</b>  | Actuation of low pressure sensor                                        | —              | —              | —       | 186          |
|              | <b>E5</b>  | Compressor motor lock                                                   | —              | —              | —       | 188          |
|              | <b>E7</b>  | Outdoor fan motor abnormality                                           | —              | —              | —       | 189          |
|              | <b>E9</b>  | Moving part of electronic expansion valve (Y1E, Y3E) abnormality        | —              | —              | —       | 190          |
|              | <b>F3</b>  | Discharge pipe temperature abnormality                                  | —              | —              | —       | 192          |
|              | <b>F6</b>  | Refrigerant overcharged                                                 | —              | —              | —       | 193          |
|              | <b>H9</b>  | Outdoor temperature thermistor (R1T) abnormality                        | —              | —              | —       | 194          |
|              | <b>J0</b>  | Branch provider (BP) liquid or gas pipe thermistor abnormality          | —              | —              | 178     | —            |
|              | <b>J3</b>  | Discharge pipe thermistor (R2T) abnormality                             | —              | —              | —       | 195          |
|              | <b>J5</b>  | Suction pipe thermistor (R3T, R5T) abnormality                          | —              | —              | —       | 196          |
|              | <b>J6</b>  | Outdoor heat exchanger thermistor (R4T) abnormality                     | —              | —              | —       | 197          |
|              | <b>J7</b>  | Outdoor liquid pipe thermistor (R7T) abnormality                        | —              | —              | —       | 198          |
|              | <b>J9</b>  | Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe thermistor (R6T) abnormality         | —              | —              | —       | 199          |
|              | <b>JA</b>  | High pressure sensor abnormality                                        | —              | —              | —       | 200          |
|              | <b>JC</b>  | Low pressure sensor abnormality                                         | —              | —              | —       | 201          |
|              | <b>L1</b>  | Outdoor unit PCB abnormality                                            | —              | —              | —       | 202          |



|              | Error code | Description                                                                             | Reference page |                |         |              |
|--------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------|--------------|
|              |            |                                                                                         | RA Indoor Unit | SA Indoor Unit | BP Unit | Outdoor Unit |
| Outdoor Unit | <b>L4</b>  | Radiation fin temperature rise                                                          | —              | —              | —       | 203          |
|              | <b>L5</b>  | Inverter compressor abnormality                                                         | —              | —              | —       | 204          |
|              | <b>L8</b>  | Inverter current abnormality                                                            | —              | —              | —       | 205          |
|              | <b>L9</b>  | Compressor start-up error                                                               | —              | —              | —       | 206          |
|              | <b>P1</b>  | High voltage of capacitor in main inverter circuit                                      | —              | —              | —       | 207          |
|              | <b>P4</b>  | Radiation fin thermistor abnormality                                                    | —              | —              | —       | 208          |
| System       | <b>U0</b>  | Low pressure drop due to refrigerant shortage or electronic expansion valve abnormality | —              | —              | —       | 209          |
|              | <b>U2</b>  | Power supply insufficient or instantaneous failure                                      | —              | —              | —       | 211          |
|              | <b>U3</b>  | Check operation is not conducted.                                                       | —              | —              | —       | 212          |
|              | <b>U4</b>  | Signal transmission error between indoor unit and Branch provider (BP) unit             | —              | —              | 179     | —            |
|              | <b>U5</b>  | Signal transmission error between remote controller and indoor unit                     | —              | 173            | —       | —            |
|              | <b>U8</b>  | Signal transmission error between MAIN remote controller and SUB remote controller      | —              | 174            | —       | —            |
| System       | <b>U9</b>  | Signal transmission error between indoor unit and outdoor unit in the same system       | —              | —              | —       | 213          |
|              | <b>UA</b>  | Field setting abnormality                                                               | —              | 175            | —       | —            |
|              |            | Excessive number of indoor units                                                        | —              | —              | —       | 214          |
|              | <b>UC</b>  | Address duplication of central remote controller                                        | —              | —              | —       | 215          |
|              | <b>UE</b>  | Transmission error between centralized remote controller and indoor unit                | —              | —              | —       | 216          |
|              | <b>UF</b>  | System is not set yet.                                                                  | —              | —              | —       | 218          |
|              | <b>UH</b>  | System abnormality, refrigerant system address undefined                                | —              | —              | —       | 219          |
|              | <b>UJ</b>  | Transmission error between outdoor unit and Branch provider (BP) unit                   | —              | —              | 181     | —            |

 The system keeps operating even though the error code is indicated, however, be sure to check and repair.



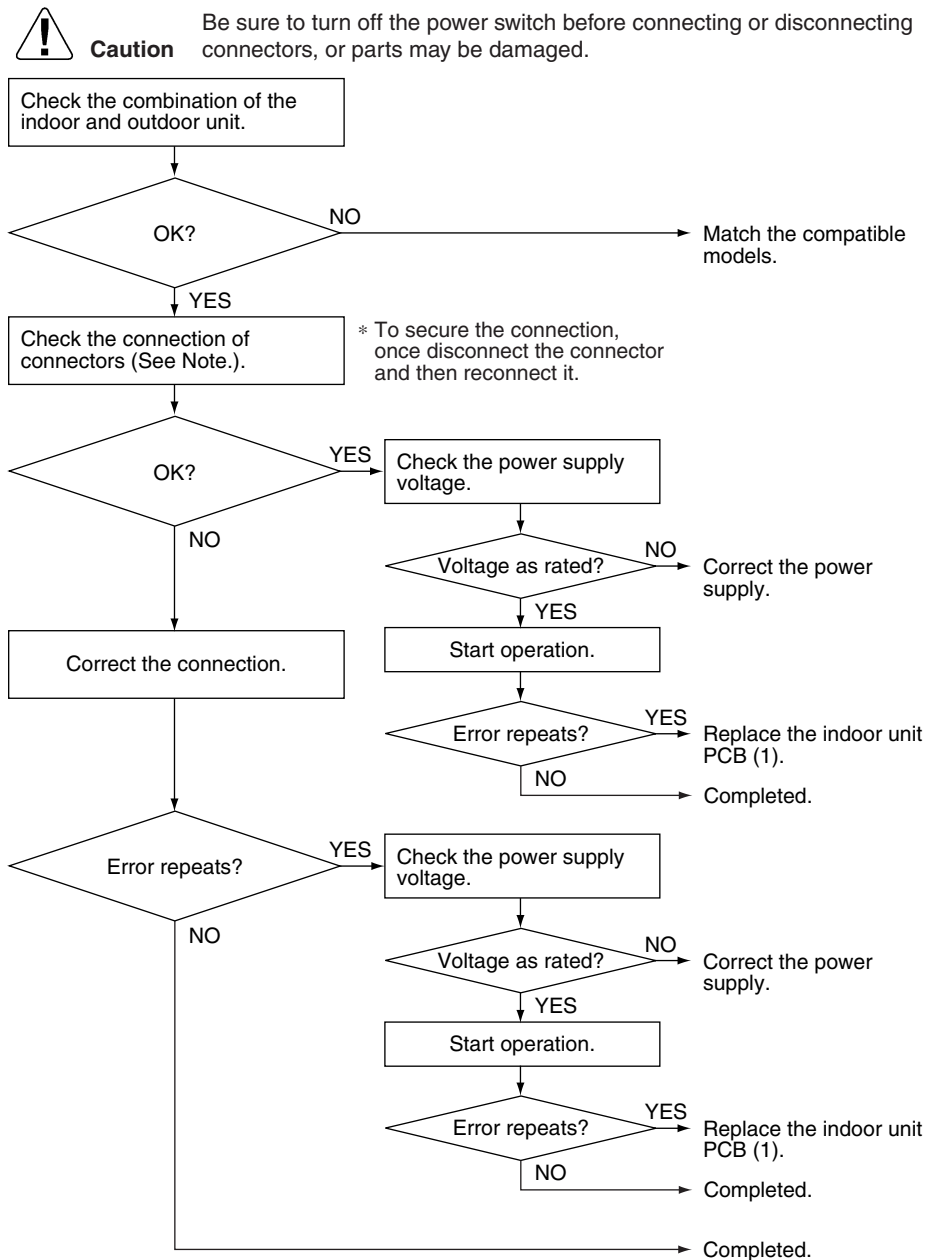
## 4. Troubleshooting for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

### 4.1 Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>A1</b>                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Method of Error Detection | The system checks if the circuit works properly within the microcomputer of the indoor unit.                                                                                                       |
| Error Decision Conditions | The system cannot set the internal settings.                                                                                                                                                       |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Wrong models interconnected</li><li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li><li>■ Disconnection of connector</li><li>■ Reduction of power supply voltage</li></ul> |



# Troubleshooting



(R18860)

**Note:** Check the following connector.

| Model Type       | Connector                                 |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| CTXS/FTXS series | Terminal board ~ Control PCB (H1, H2, H3) |
| CDXS/FDXS series | Terminal board ~ Control PCB (H1, H2, H3) |



## 4.2 Freeze-up Protection Control or Heating Peak-cut Control

### Error Code

**A5**

### Method of Error Detection

- Freeze-up protection control  
During cooling operation, the freeze-up protection control (operation halt) is activated according to the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger thermistor.
- Heating peak-cut control  
During heating operation, the temperature detected by the indoor heat exchanger thermistor is used for the heating peak-cut control (operation halt, outdoor fan stop, etc.)

### Error Decision Conditions

- Freeze-up protection control  
During cooling operation, the indoor heat exchanger temperature is below 0°C (32°F).
- Heating peak-cut control  
During heating operation, the indoor heat exchanger temperature is above 65°C (149°F).

### Supposed Causes

- Short-circuited air
- Clogged air filter of the indoor unit
- Dust accumulation on the indoor heat exchanger
- Defective indoor heat exchanger thermistor
- Defective indoor unit PCB



# Troubleshooting

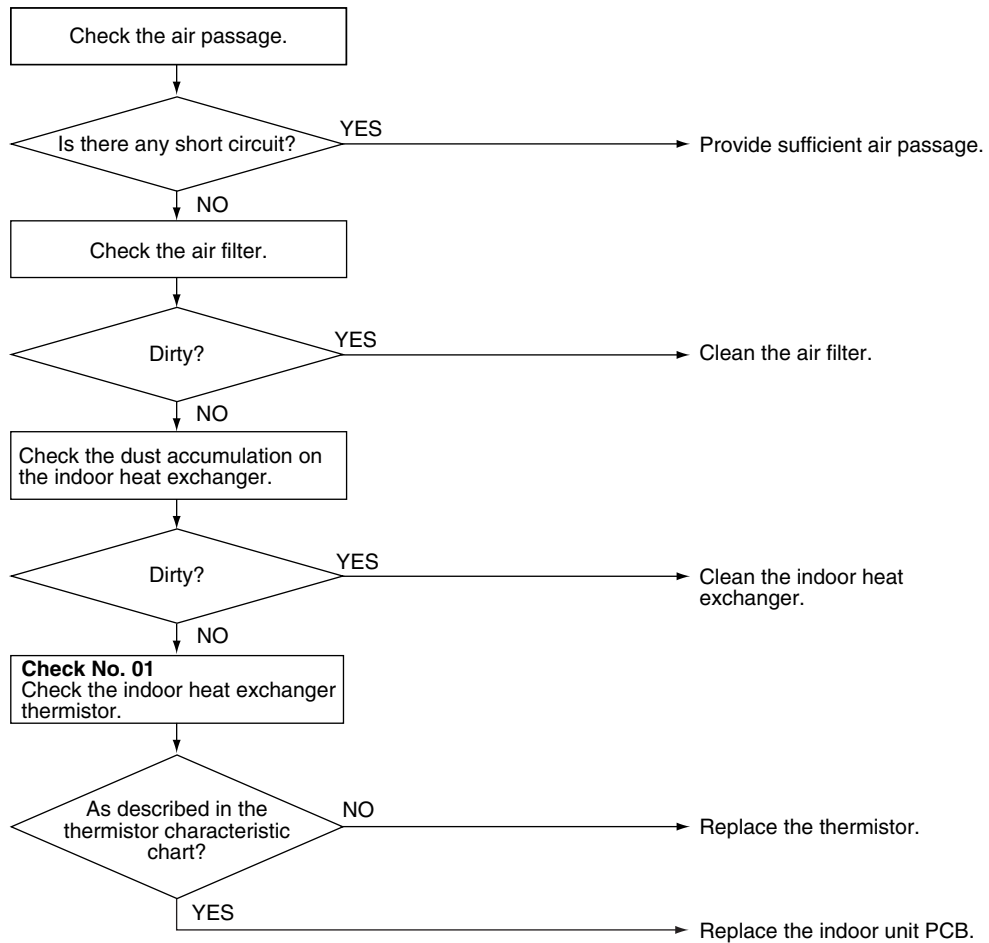


**Check No.01**  
**Refer to P.165**



## Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R18864)



## 4.3 Fan Motor or Related Abnormality

### 4.3.1 DC Motor (CTXS/FTXS Series)

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>A6</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Method of Error Detection | The rotation speed detected by the Hall IC during fan motor operation is used to determine abnormal fan motor operation.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Error Decision Conditions | The detected rotation speed does not reach the demanded rotation speed of the target tap, and is less than 50% of the maximum fan motor rotation speed.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Supply voltage is not as specified.</li><li>■ Layer short inside the fan motor winding</li><li>■ Breaking of wire inside the fan motor</li><li>■ Breaking of the fan motor lead wires</li><li>■ Defective capacitor of the fan motor</li><li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li></ul> |



# Troubleshooting

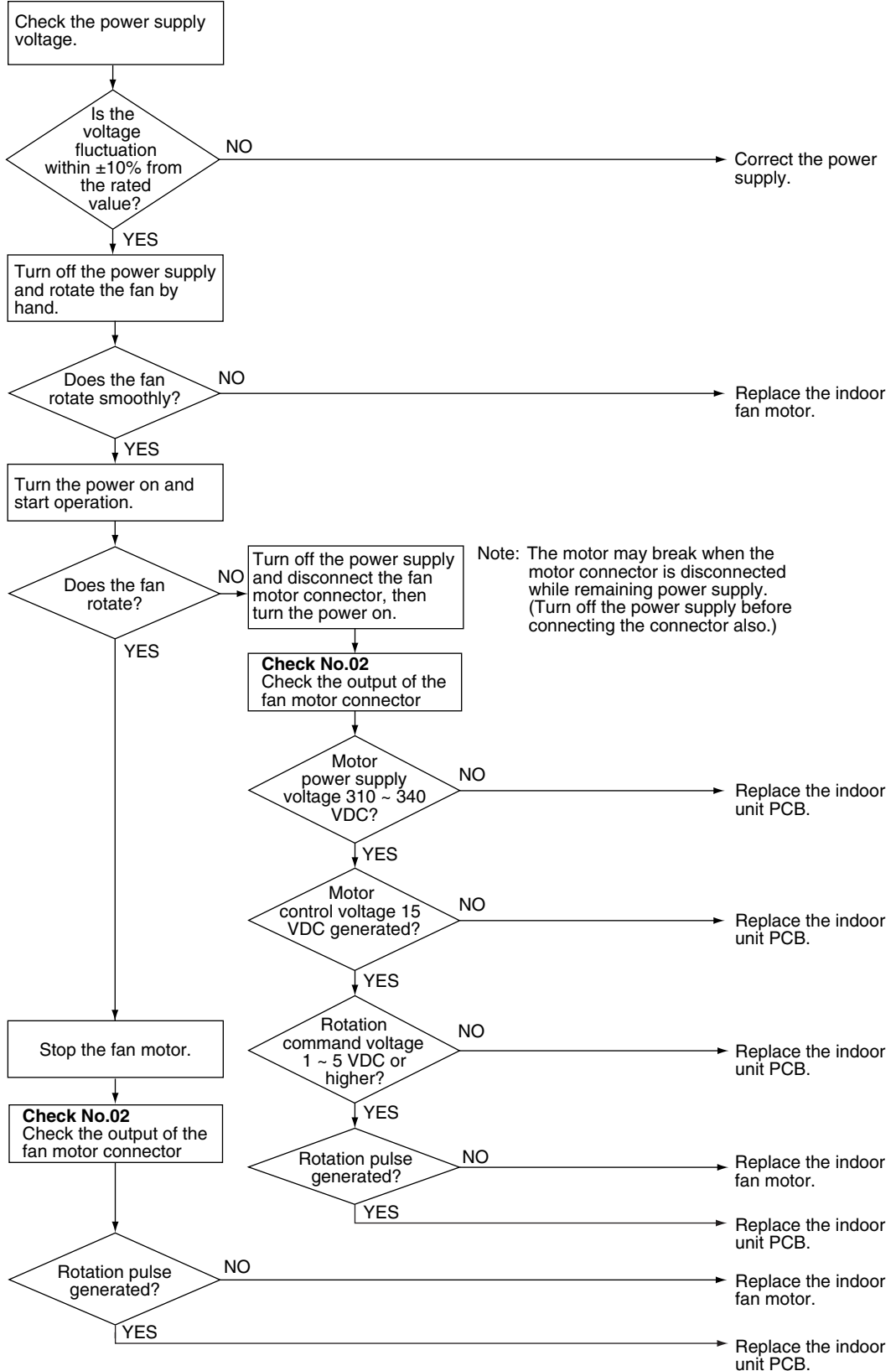


**Check No.02**  
Refer to P.166



## Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19157)



### 4.3.2 AC Motor (CDXS/FDXS Series)

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error code                | <b>A6</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Method of Error Detection | The rotation speed detected by the Hall IC during fan motor operation is used to determine abnormal fan motor operation.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Error Decision Conditions | The detected rotation speed does not reach the demanded rotation speed of the target tap, and is less than 50% of the maximum fan motor rotation speed.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Supply voltage is not as specified.</li><li>■ Layer short inside the fan motor winding</li><li>■ Breaking of wire inside the fan motor</li><li>■ Breaking of the fan motor lead wires</li><li>■ Defective capacitor of the fan motor</li><li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li></ul> |



# Troubleshooting

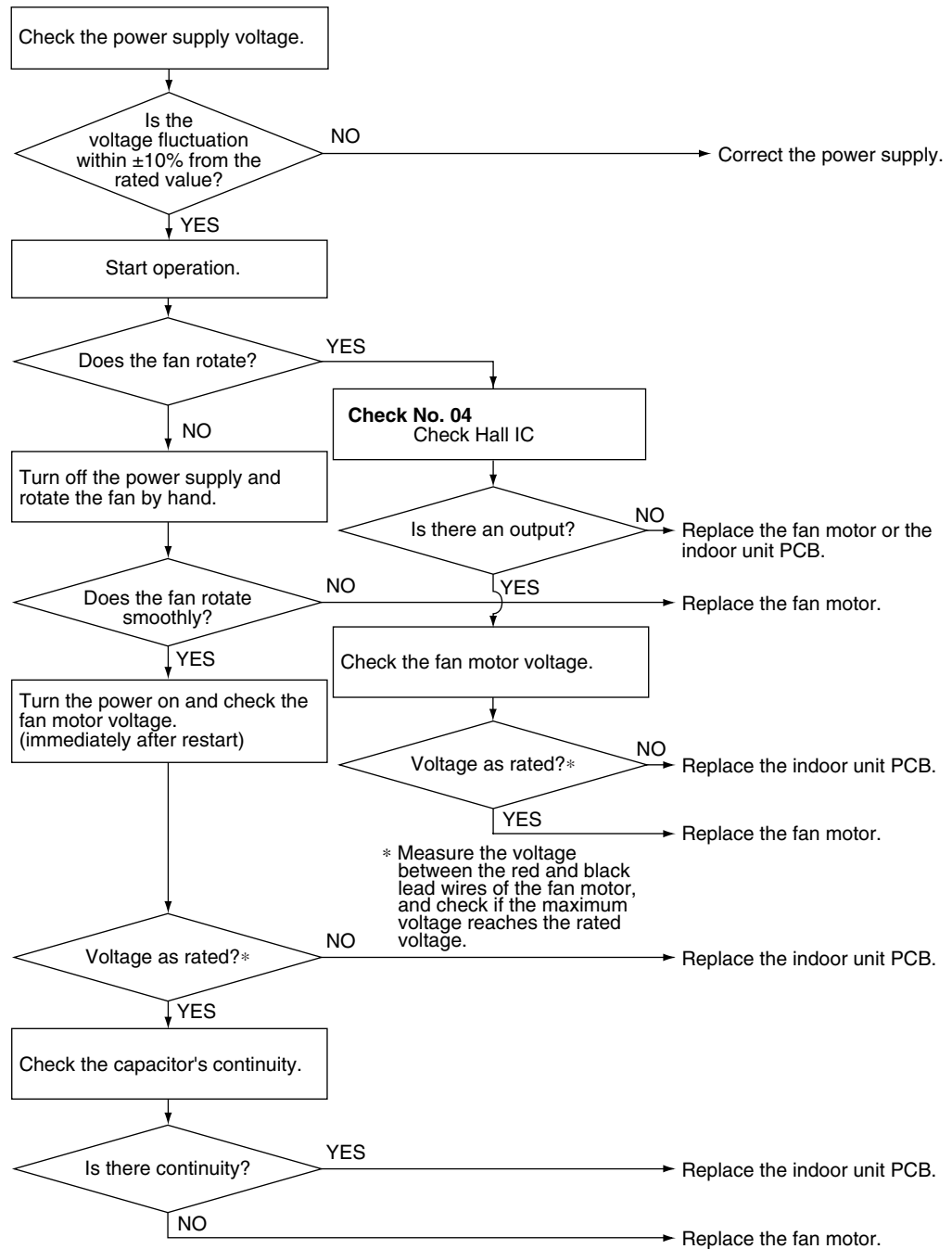


**Check No.04**  
Refer to P.166



## Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19123)



## 4.4 Thermistor or Related Abnormality

### Error Code

**C4, C9**

### Method of Error Detection

The temperatures detected by the thermistors are used to determine thermistor errors.

### Error Decision Conditions

The thermistor input is more than 4.96 V or less than 0.04 V during compressor operation.

### Supposed Causes

- Disconnection of connector
- Defective thermistor corresponding to the error code
- Defective indoor unit PCB

### Troubleshooting

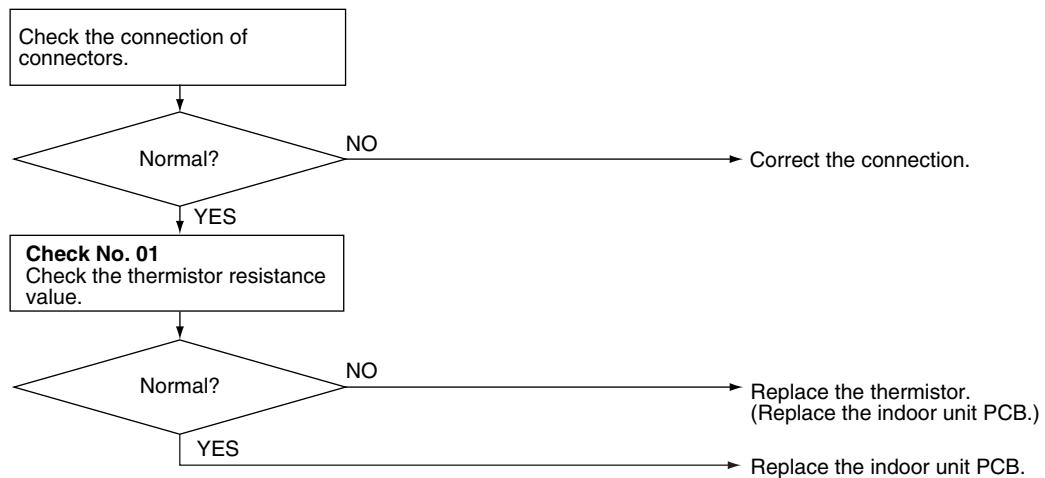


**Check No.01**  
Refer to P.165



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15717)

**C4** : Indoor heat exchanger thermistor

**C9** : Room temperature thermistor



## 4.5 Check for CTXS, FTXS, CDXS, FDXS Series

### 4.5.1 Thermistor Resistance Check

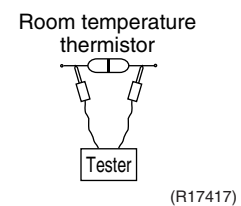
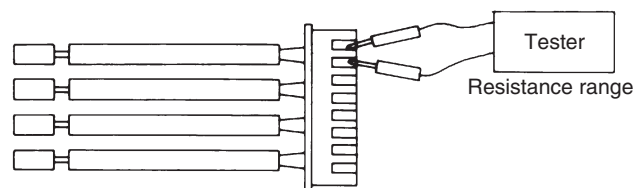
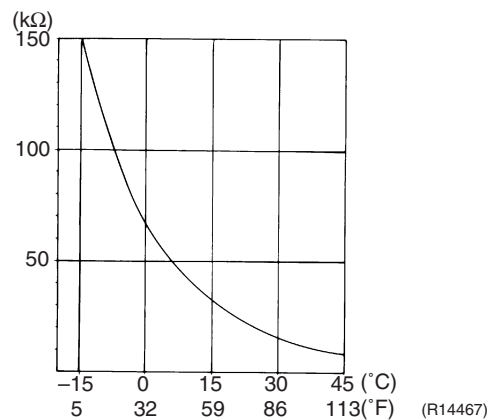
#### Check No.01

Disconnect the connectors of the thermistors from the PCB, and measure the resistance of each thermistor using tester.

The data is for reference purpose only.

| Temperature (°C / °F) | Resistance (kΩ) |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| -20 / -4              | 197.8           |
| -15 / 5               | 148.2           |
| -10 / 14              | 112.1           |
| -5 / 23               | 85.60           |
| 0 / 32                | 65.93           |
| 5 / 41                | 51.14           |
| 10 / 50               | 39.99           |
| 15 / 59               | 31.52           |
| 20 / 68               | 25.02           |
| 25 / 77               | 20.00           |
| 30 / 86               | 16.10           |
| 35 / 95               | 13.04           |
| 40 / 104              | 10.62           |
| 45 / 113              | 8.707           |
| 50 / 122              | 7.176           |

(R25°C (77°F) = 20 kΩ, B = 3950 K)



- When the room temperature thermistor is directly mounted on a PCB, remove the PCB from the control PCB to measure the resistance.
- When the connector of indoor heat exchanger thermistor is soldered on a PCB, remove the thermistor and measure the resistance.

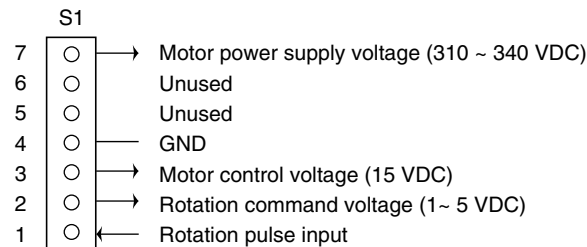


## 4.5.2 Fan Motor Connector Check

### Check No.02

#### CTXS/FTXS Series

1. Check the connection of connector.
2. Check motor power supply voltage output (pins 4 - 7).
3. Check motor control voltage (pins 4 - 3).
4. Check rotation command voltage output (pins 4 - 2).
5. Check rotation pulse input (pins 4 - 1).



(R12404)

## 4.5.3 Hall IC Check

### Check No.04

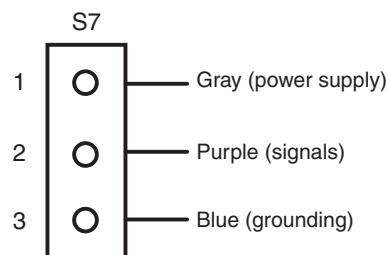
#### CDXS/FDXS Series

1. Check the connector connection.
2. With the power on, operation off, and the connector connected, check the following.
  - \*Output voltage of about 5 V between pins 1 and 3.
  - \*Generation of 3 pulses between pins 2 and 3 when the fan motor is operating.

If NG in step 1 → Defective PCB → Replace the PCB.

If NG in step 2 → Defective Hall IC → Replace the fan motor.

If OK in both steps 1 and 2 → Replace the PCB.



(R14211)



# 5. Troubleshooting for FFQ Series

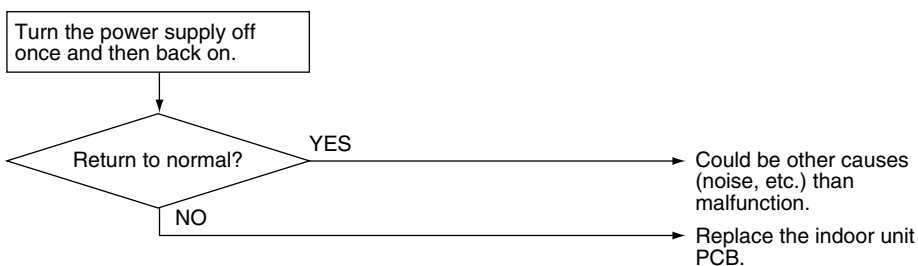
## 5.1 Indoor Unit PCB Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>A1</b>                                                                                                                                                             |
| Method of Error Detection | The system checks the data from EEPROM.                                                                                                                               |
| Error Decision Conditions | When data could not be correctly received from the EEPROM<br>EEPROM : Type of nonvolatile memory. Maintains memory contents even when the power supply is turned off. |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ External factor (noise etc.)</li> <li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li> </ul>                                                 |
| Troubleshooting           |                                                                                                                                                                       |



**Caution**

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15319)



## 5.2 Drain Level Control System Abnormality

### Error Code

# A3

### Method of Error Detection

The float switch detects error.

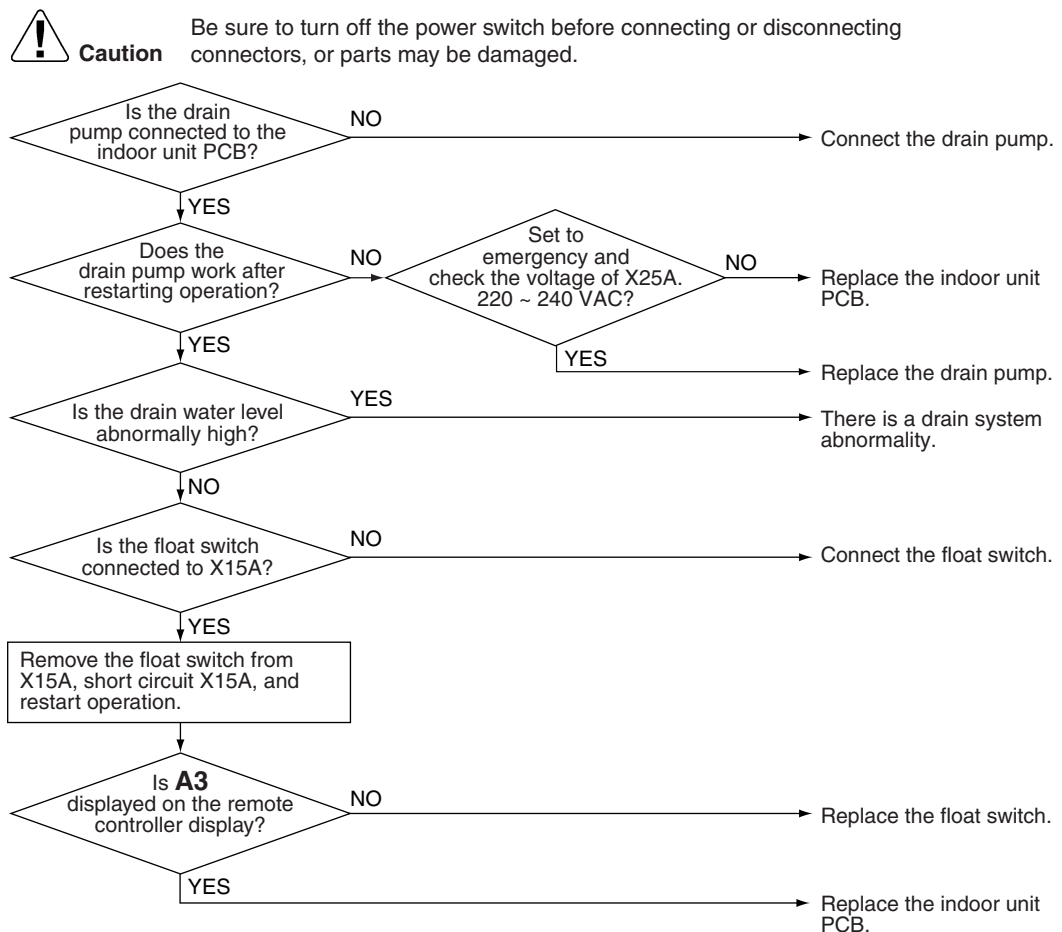
### Error Decision Conditions

When the water level reaches its upper limit and when the float switch turns OFF

### Supposed Causes

- Defective drain pump
- Improper drain piping work
- Clogged drain piping
- Defective float switch
- Defective indoor unit PCB
- Defective short circuit connector X15A on indoor unit PCB

### Troubleshooting



(R19188)



# 5.3 Fan Motor or Related Abnormality

## Error Code

**A6**

## Method of Error Detection

The signal from the fan motor detects abnormal fan speed.

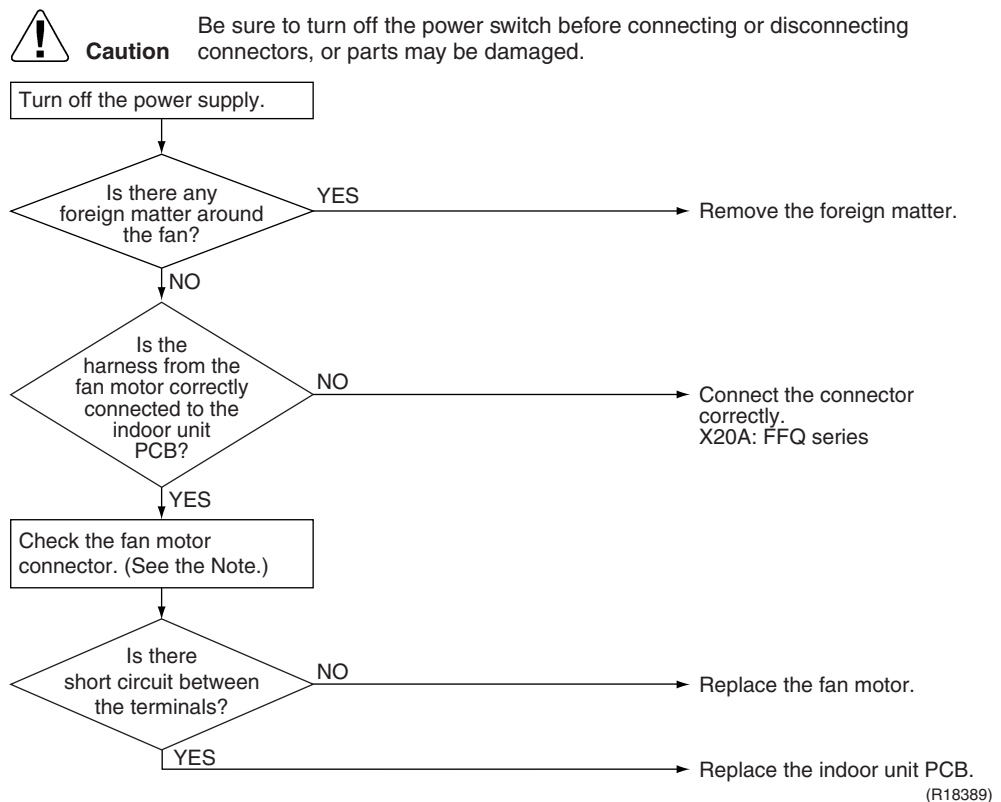
## Error Decision Conditions

The fan rotations are not detected while the output voltage to the fan is at its maximum.

## Supposed Causes

- Disconnection, short circuit or disengagement of connector in fan motor harness
- Defective fan motor (disconnection, poor insulation)
- Abnormal signal from fan motor (faulty circuit)
- Defective indoor unit PCB
- Momentary fluctuation of power supply voltage
- Fan motor lock  
(Caused by motor or other external factors)
- Fan does not rotate due to tangled foreign matters.

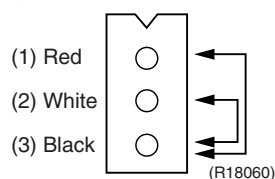
## Troubleshooting



### Note:

1. Check the connector of fan motor. (Power supply cable)
2. Turn OFF the power supply.
3. Measure the resistance between the terminals at the motor side connectors to check that there is no short circuit, while the connector is disconnected.

### FFQ series



| Measuring points | Resistance for judgement |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) - (3)        | 88.2 Ω ± 10%             |
| (2) - (3)        | 85.5 Ω ± 10%             |



## 5.4 Drain System Abnormality

### Error Code

# AF

### Method of Error Detection

Water leakage is detected based on the float switch ON/OFF changeover while the compressor is not operating.

### Error Decision Conditions

When the float switch changes from ON to OFF while the compressor is OFF

### Supposed Causes

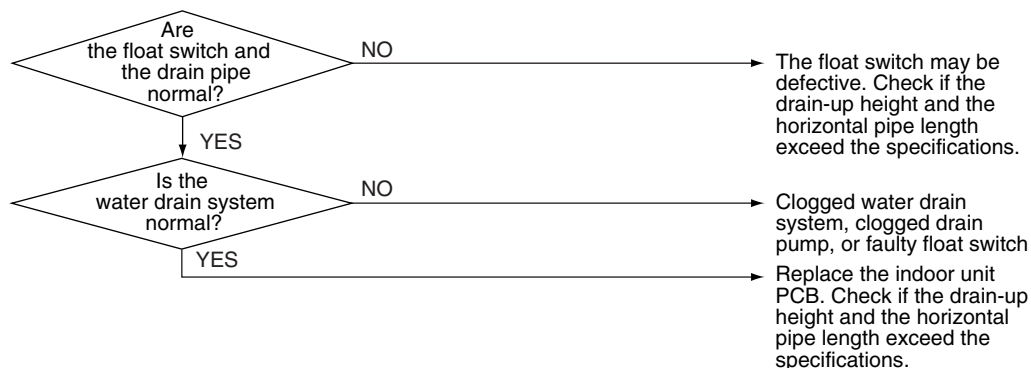
- Error in the drain pipe installation
- Defective float switch
- Defective indoor unit PCB

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R16022)



## 5.5 Thermistor or Related Abnormality

### Error Code

## C4, C5, C9

### Method of Error Detection

The temperatures detected by the thermistors determine thermistor errors.

### Error Decision Conditions

The thermistor input is more than 4.96 V or less than 0.04 V during compressor operation.

### Supposed Causes

- Disconnection of connector
- Defective thermistor corresponding to the error code
- Defective indoor unit PCB

### Troubleshooting

If the cause of the problem is related to the thermistors, the thermistors should be checked prior to changing the indoor unit PCB.

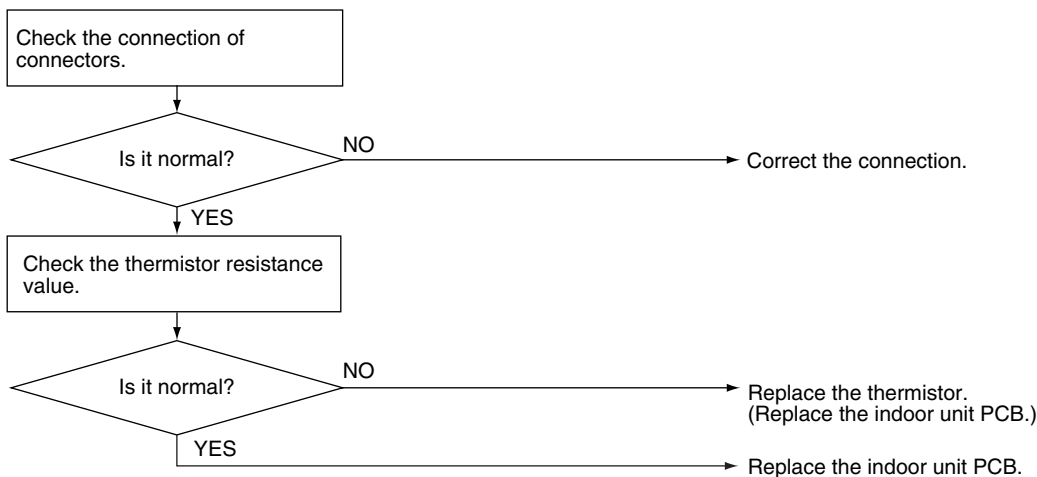
To check the thermistors, proceed as follows:

| Step | Action                                                                                               |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Disconnect the thermistor from the indoor unit PCB.                                                  |
| 2    | Read the temperature and the resistance value.                                                       |
| 3    | Check if the measured values correspond with the values in the table of thermistor resistance check. |



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19138)

**C4** : Indoor heat exchanger thermistor 1 (liquid pipe) (R2T)

**C5** : Indoor heat exchanger thermistor 2 (R3T)

**C9** : Room temperature thermistor (R1T)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



## 5.6 Remote Controller Thermistor Abnormality

### Error Code

**CJ**

### Method of Error Detection

Even if remote controller thermistor is malfunctioning, the system can operate with the system thermistor.

Malfunction detection is carried out by the temperature detected by the remote controller thermistor.

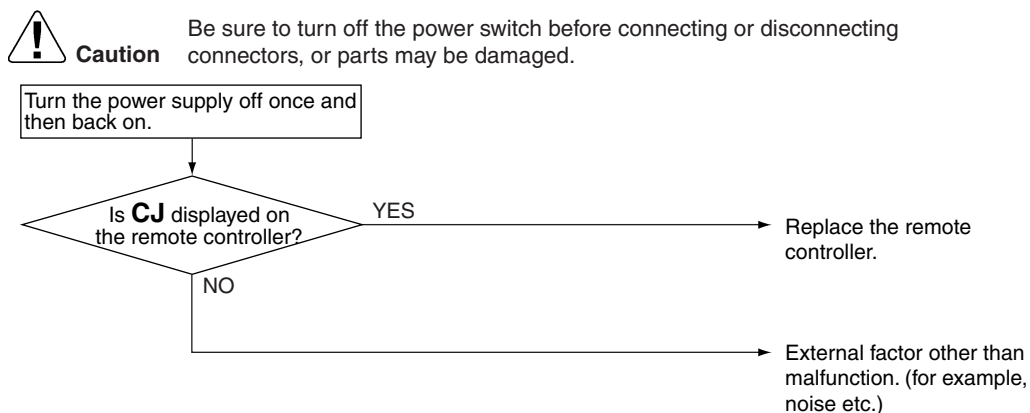
### Error Decision Conditions

The remote controller thermistor disconnected or shorted while the unit is running.

### Supposed Causes

- Defective thermistor
- Broken wire

### Troubleshooting



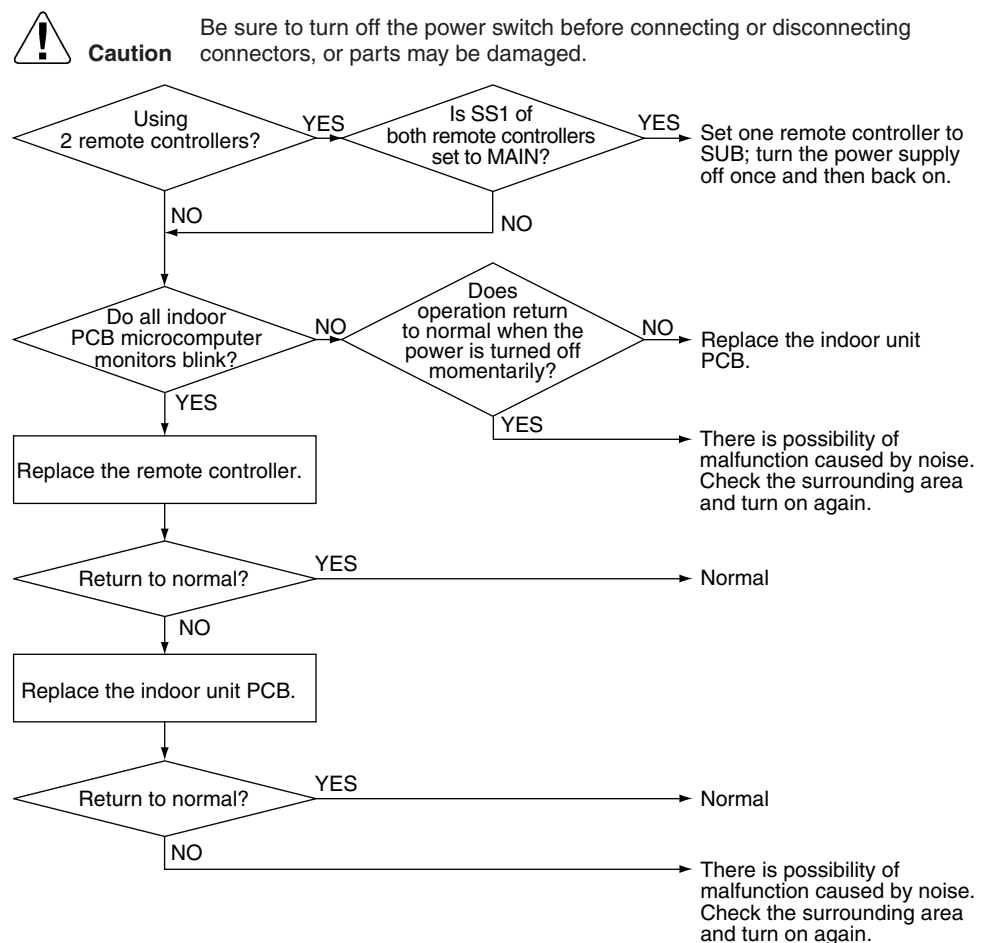
(R11300)



# 5.7 Signal Transmission Error between Remote Controller and Indoor Unit

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | U5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Method of Error Detection | In case of controlling with 2 remote controllers, check the system using microcomputer if signal transmission between indoor unit and remote controller (main and sub) is normal.                                                                              |
| Error Decision Conditions | Normal transmission does not continue for specified period.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Connection of 2 main remote controllers (when using 2 remote controllers)</li> <li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li> <li>■ Defective remote controller</li> <li>■ Signal transmission error caused by noise</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting



(R19197)



## 5.8 Signal Transmission Error between MAIN Remote Controller and SUB Remote Controller

### Error Code

# U8

### Method of Error Detection

In case of controlling with 2 remote controllers, check the system using microcomputer if signal transmission between indoor unit and remote controller (main and sub) is normal.

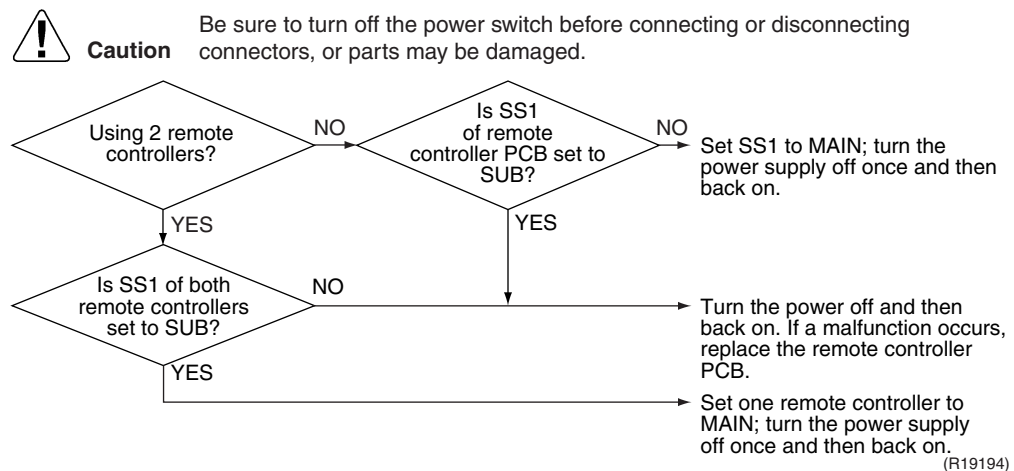
### Error Decision Conditions

Normal transmission does not continue for specified period.

### Supposed Causes

- Remote controller is set to SUB when using 1 remote controller
- Connection of 2 sub remote controllers (when using 2 remote controllers)
- Defective remote controller PCB

### Troubleshooting





# 5.9 Field Setting Abnormality

Error Code

UA

Method of Error Detection

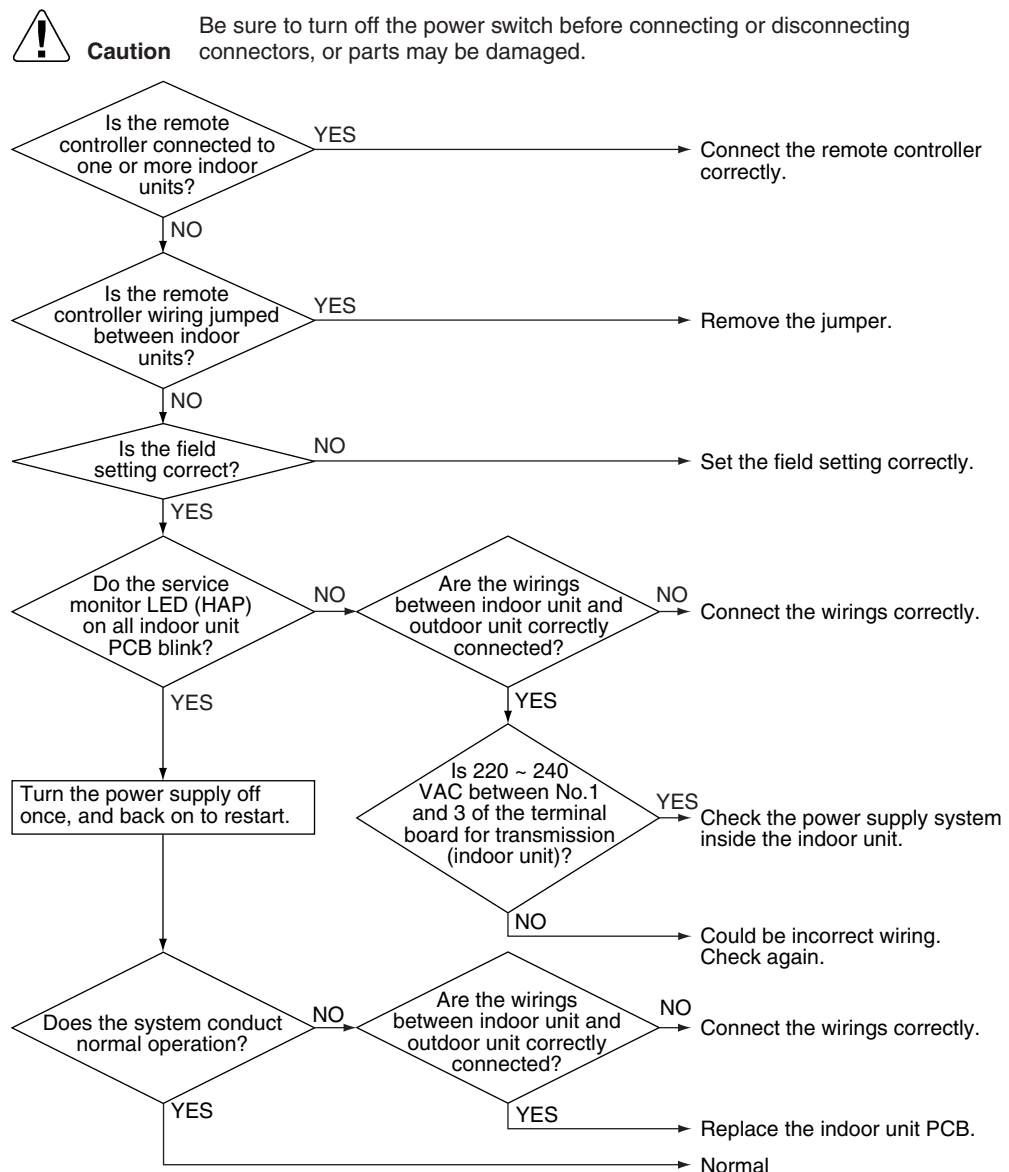
Error Decision Conditions

Incorrect field setting

Supposed Causes

- Defective indoor unit PCB
- Defective outdoor unit PCB
- Defective power supply PCB
- Indoor-outdoor, indoor-indoor unit transmission wiring
- Defective remote controller wiring

Troubleshooting



(R17253)



## 6. Troubleshooting for Branch Provider (BP) Unit

### 6.1 Electronic Expansion Valve Abnormality

Error Code

**A9**Method of Error  
Detection

Detection by checking continuity and lack of connector

Error Decision  
Conditions

No voltage applied when turning the power supply on

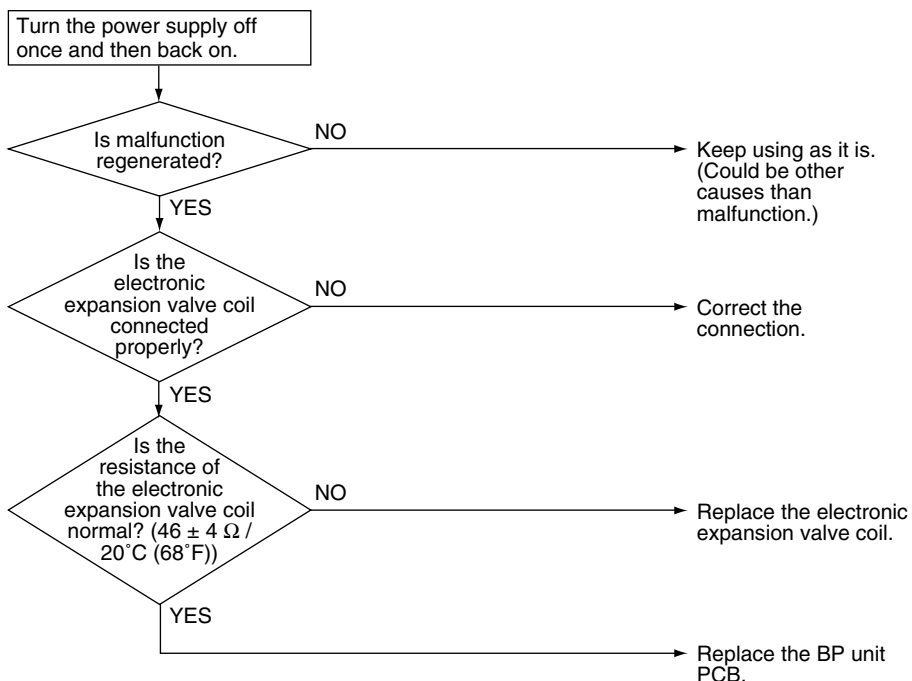
Supposed  
Causes

- Broken harness of electronic expansion valve coil
- Incorrect connection of connectors for electronic expansion valve coil

Troubleshooting

**Caution**

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19091)



## 6.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit PCB Abnormality

### Error Code

**E2**

### Method of Error Detection

Check data from EEPROM

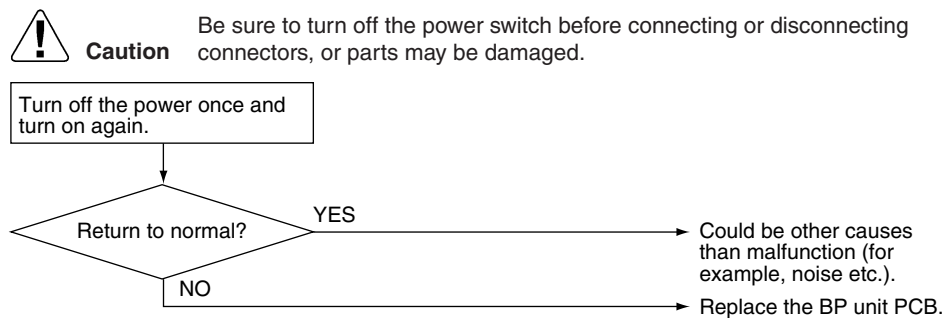
### Error Decision Conditions

When data could not be correctly received from the EEPROM  
EEPROM : Type of nonvolatile memory. Maintains memory contents even when the power supply is turned off.

### Supposed Causes

- Defective BP unit PCB

### Troubleshooting



(R13278)



## 6.3 Branch Provider (BP) Liquid or Gas Pipe Thermistor Abnormality

Error Code

**J0**

Method of Error Detection

Error Decision Conditions

When the BP liquid or gas pipe thermistor has short circuit or open circuit

Supposed Causes

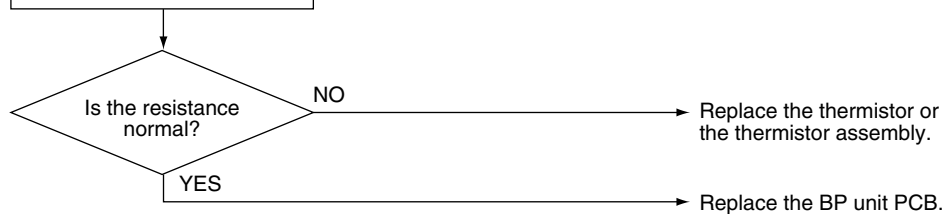
- Defective BP liquid or gas pipe thermistor
- Incorrect connection of BP liquid or gas pipe thermistor

Troubleshooting

**Caution**

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

Disconnect the thermistor connectors from the BP unit PCB and measure the resistance.



(R17944)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



## 6.4 Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and Branch Provider (BP) Unit

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>U4</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Method of Error Detection | The data received from the BP unit in signal transmission is checked whether it is normal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the data sent from the BP unit cannot be received normally, or when the content of the data is abnormal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Defective BP unit PCB</li><li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li><li>■ Signal transmission error due to wiring error</li><li>■ Signal transmission error due to disturbed power supply waveform</li><li>■ Signal transmission error due to breaking of connection wires (wire No. 2).</li></ul> |



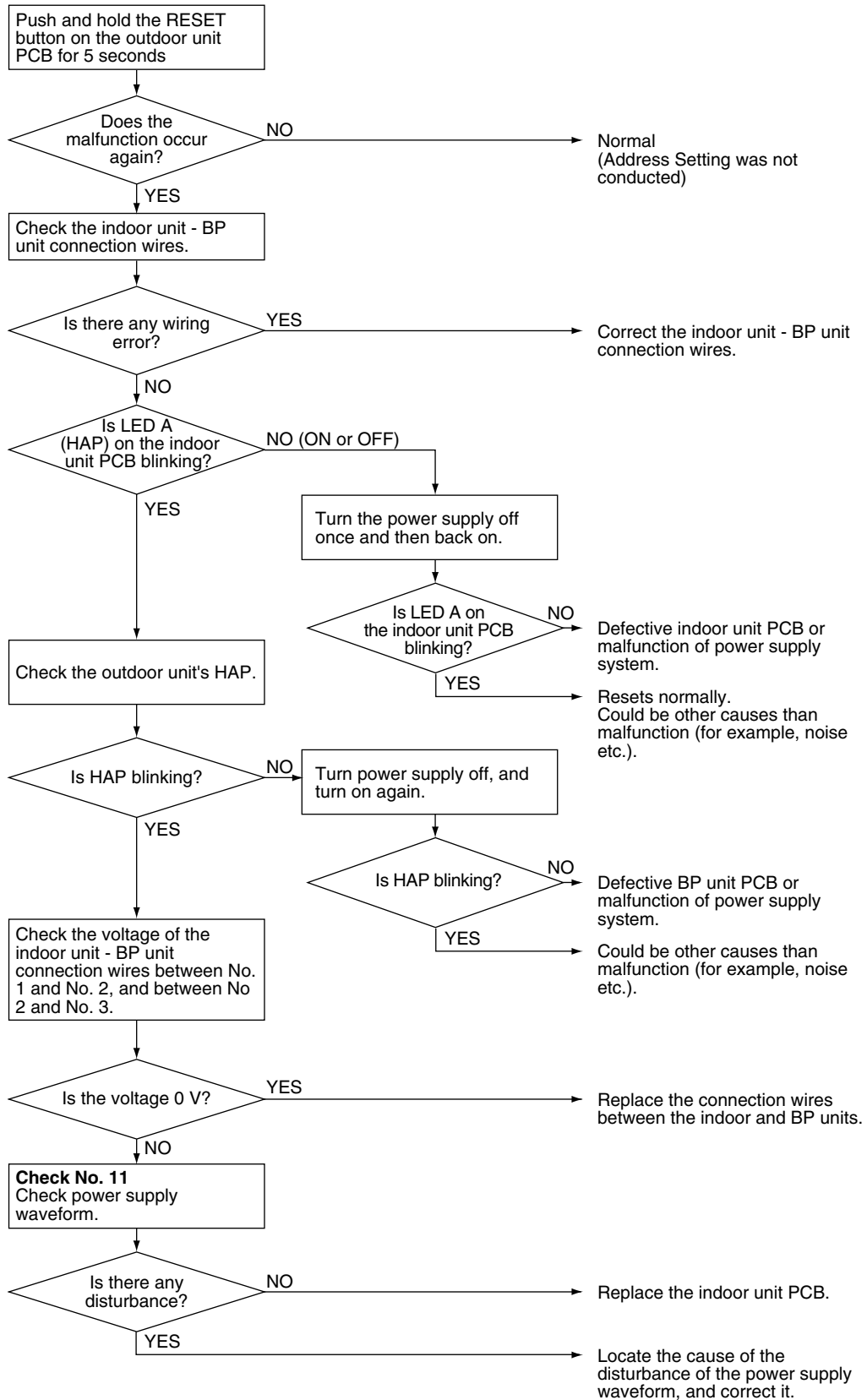
## Troubleshooting



**Check No.11**  
**Refer to P.182**

**Caution**

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15322)



# 6.5 Transmission Error between Outdoor Unit and Branch Provider (BP) Unit

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | UJ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Method of Error Detection | Transmission error is detected when the outdoor unit could not received the data from BP unit correctly.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the data from BP unit could not be correctly received continuously for 10 minutes                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Incorrect connection of transmission wire</li> <li>■ Faulty outdoor unit power supply</li> <li>■ Defective BP unit PCB</li> <li>■ Defective outdoor unit PCB</li> <li>■ Distortion of power supply waveform</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting

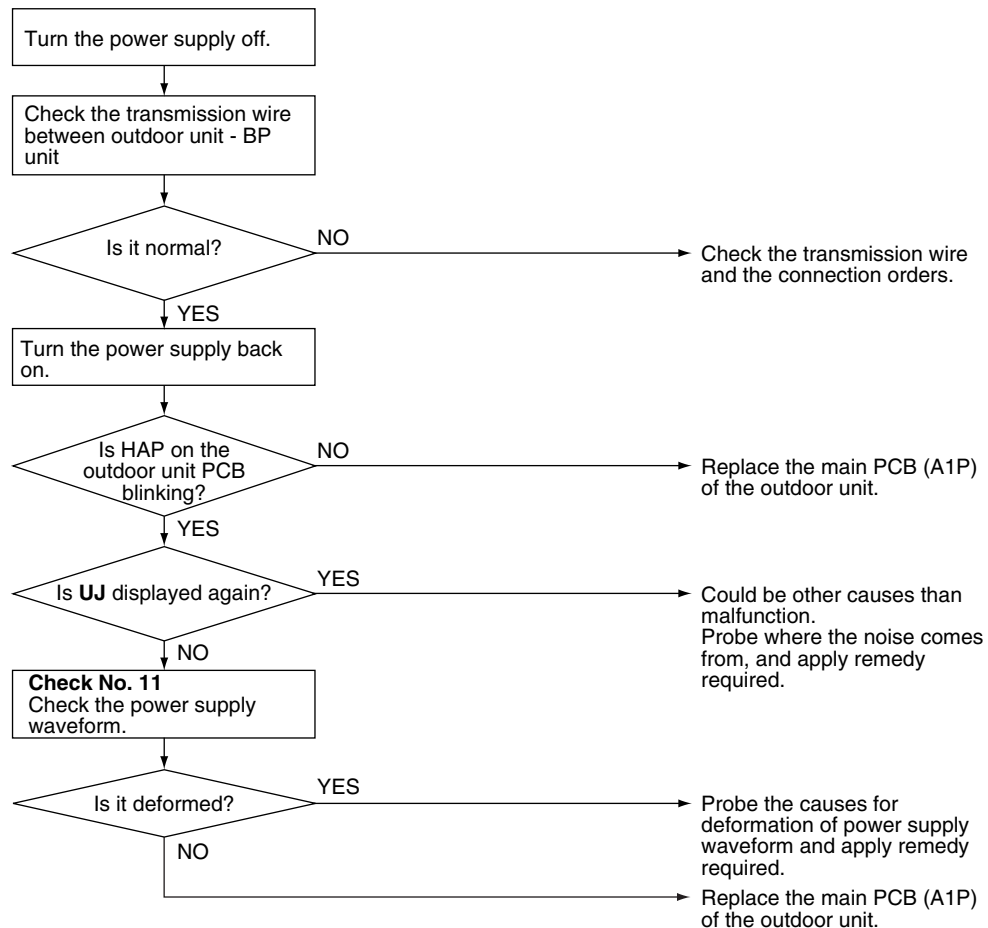


Check No.11  
Refer to P.182



### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15586)



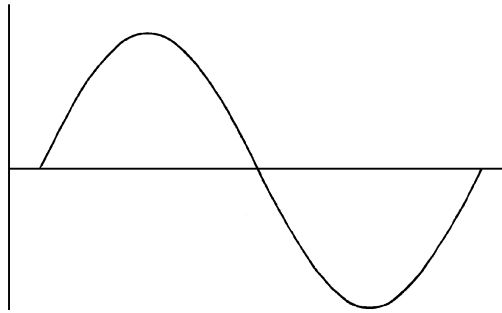
## 6.6 Check for Branch Provider (BP) Unit

### 6.6.1 Power Supply Waveforms Check

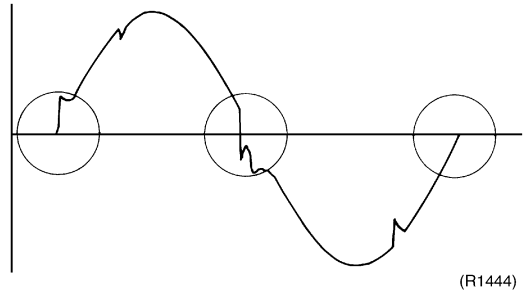
**Check No.11**

Measure the power supply waveform between the pins 1 and 3 on the terminal board, and check the waveform disturbance.

- Check to see if the power supply waveform is a sine wave (Fig.1).
- Check to see if there is waveform disturbance near the zero cross (sections circled in Fig.2)

**Fig.1**

(R1736)

**Fig.2**

(R1444)



# 7. Troubleshooting for Outdoor Unit

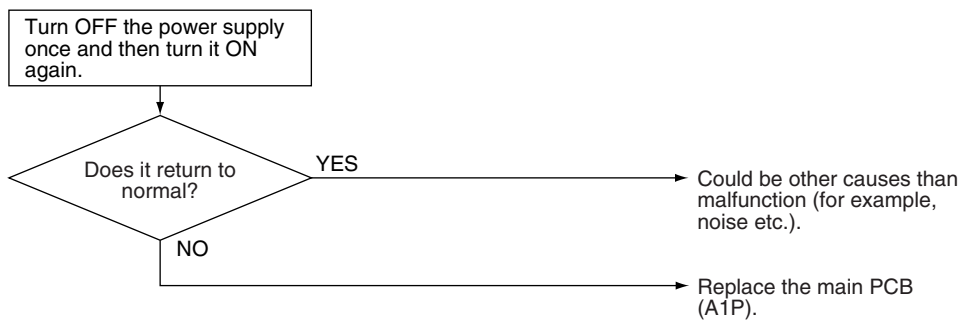
## 7.1 Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>E1</b>                                                                                                                                                            |
| Method of Error Detection | Check data from EEPROM                                                                                                                                               |
| Error Decision Conditions | When data could not be correctly received from the EEPROM<br>EEPROM: Type of nonvolatile memory. Maintains memory contents even when the power supply is turned off. |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Defective main PCB (A1P)</li> </ul>                                                                                           |
| Troubleshooting           |                                                                                                                                                                      |



### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15335)



## 7.2 Actuation of High Pressure Switch

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>E3</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Method of Error Detection | Abnormality is detected when the contact of the high pressure switch opens.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the high pressure switch activation count reaches the number specific to the operation mode (Reference)<br>Operating pressure: 4.0 MPa (1338 ftAq)<br>Reset pressure: 3.0 MPa (1004 ftAq)                                                   |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Actuation of high pressure switch</li><li>■ Defective high pressure switch</li><li>■ Defective outdoor unit PCB</li><li>■ Instantaneous power failure</li><li>■ Defective high pressure sensor</li></ul> |



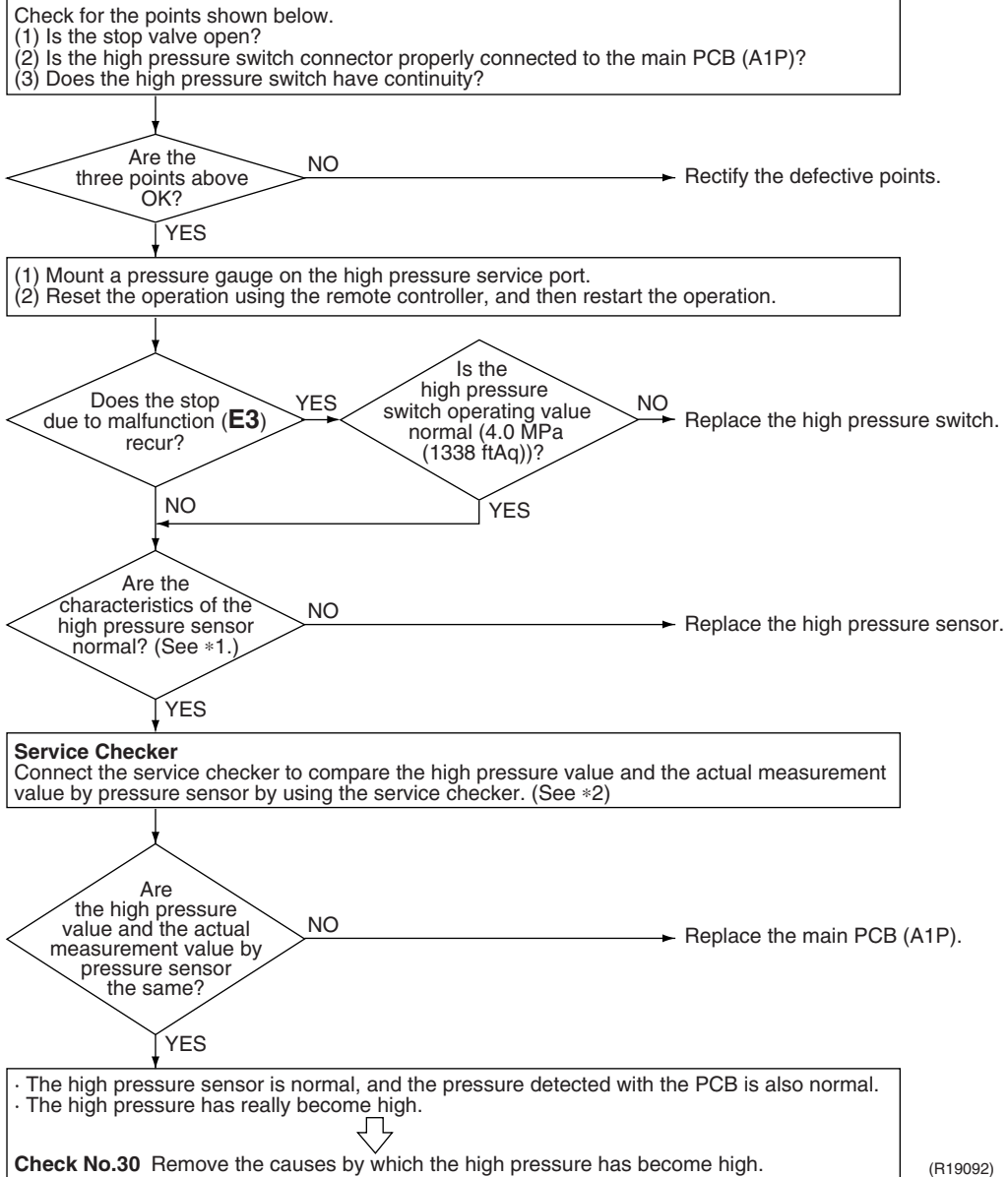
Troubleshooting



**Check No.30**  
**Refer to P.220**



**Caution** Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

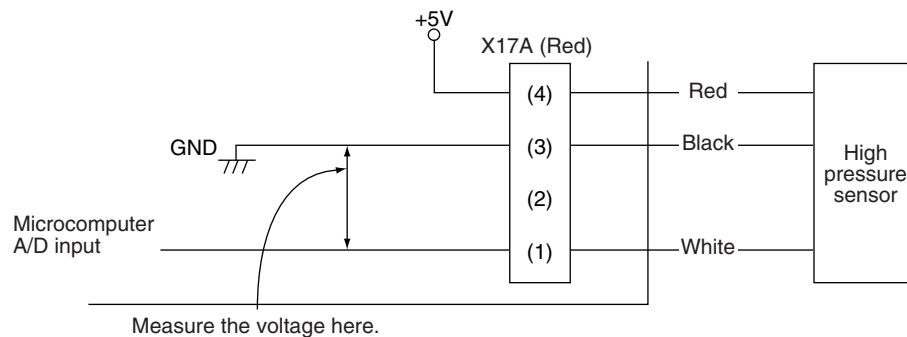


(R19092)

\*1: Compare the voltages of the pressure sensor and the pressure gauge.

(For the voltage of the pressure sensor, measure the voltage at the connector, and then convert it to pressure, referring to page 226.)

\*2: Measure the voltage of the pressure sensor.



(R19189)



## 7.3 Actuation of Low Pressure Sensor

**Error Code****E4****Method of Error Detection**

Detection by the pressure value with the low pressure sensor

**Error Decision Conditions**When the low pressure is dropped under specific pressure  
Operating pressure: 0.07 MPa (23 ftAq)**Supposed Causes**

- Abnormal drop of low pressure (Lower than 0.07 MPa (23 ftAq))
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective outdoor unit PCB
- Stop valve is not opened.



# Troubleshooting

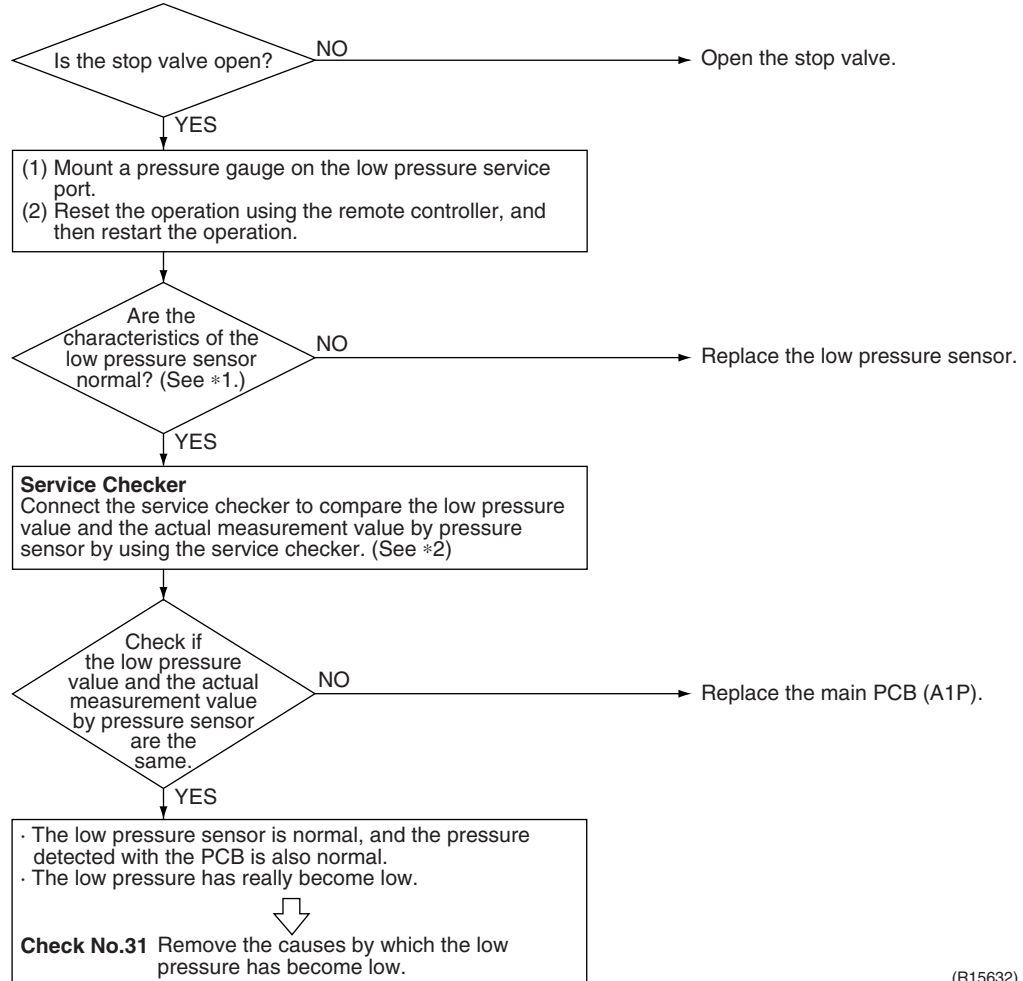


**Check No.31**  
**Refer to P.221**



## Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

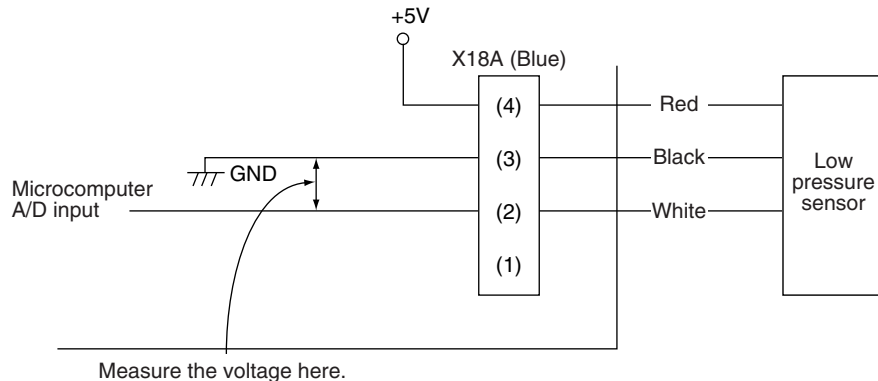


(R15632)

\*1: Compare the voltages of the pressure sensor and the pressure gauge.

(For the voltage of the pressure sensor, measure the voltage at the connector, and then convert it to pressure, referring to page 226.)

\*2: Measure the voltage of the pressure sensor.



(R15587)



## 7.4 Compressor Motor Lock

### Error Code

# E5

### Method of Error Detection

The position signal is taken from UVW line, and the malfunction is detected when any abnormality is observed in the phase-current waveform.

### Error Decision Conditions

When the compressor motor does not start up even in forced startup mode

### Supposed Causes

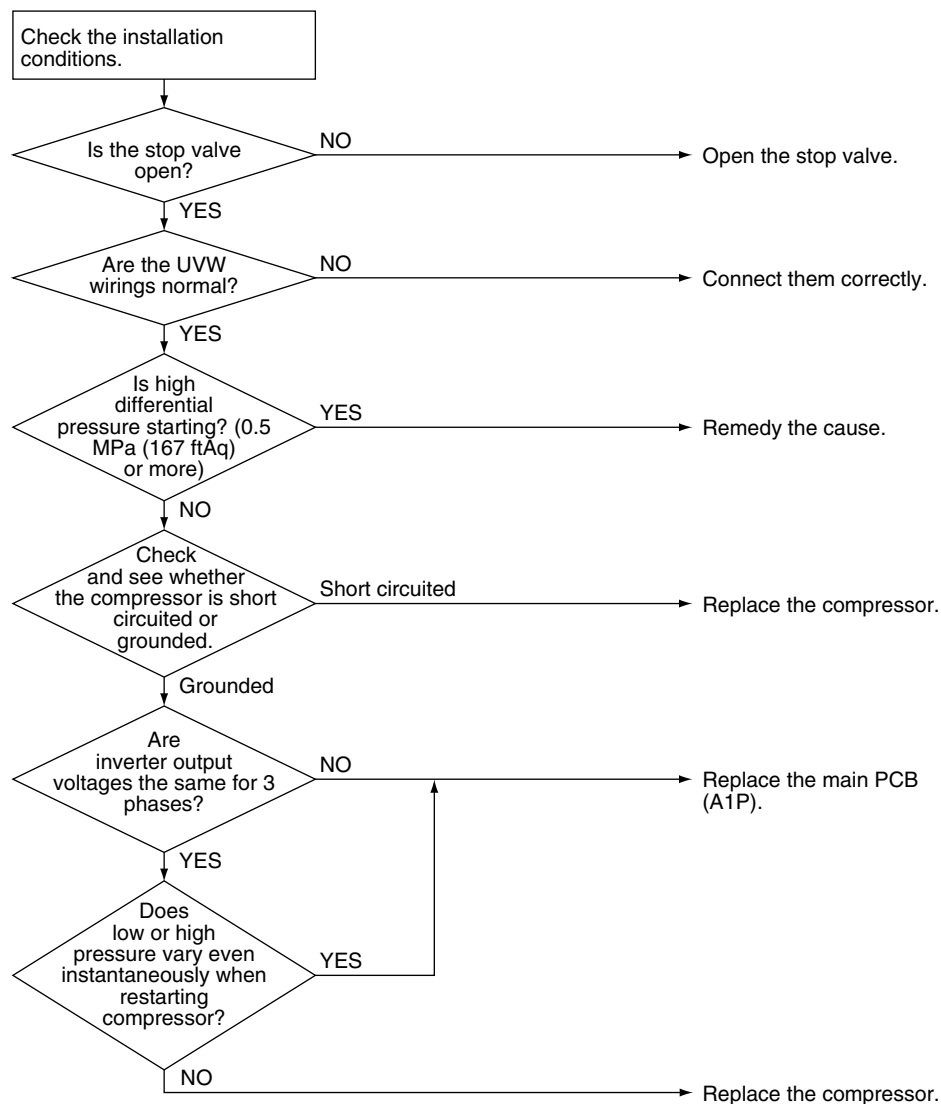
- Compressor lock
- High differential pressure (0.5 MPa (167 ftAq) or more)
- Incorrect UVW wiring
- Defective outdoor unit PCB
- Stop valve is left closed.

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19093)



# 7.5 Outdoor Fan Motor Abnormality

## Error Code

**E7**

## Method of Error Detection

The error is determined according to the fan speed detected by Hall IC when the fan motor runs.

## Error Decision Conditions

- When the fan runs with speed less than a specified one for 6 seconds or more when the fan motor running conditions are met
- When the error is generated 4 times, the system shuts down.
- Clearing condition: Operate for 5 minutes (normal)

## Supposed Causes

- Defective fan motor
- Disconnection of connector
- Fan does not rotate due to tangled foreign matters

## Troubleshooting

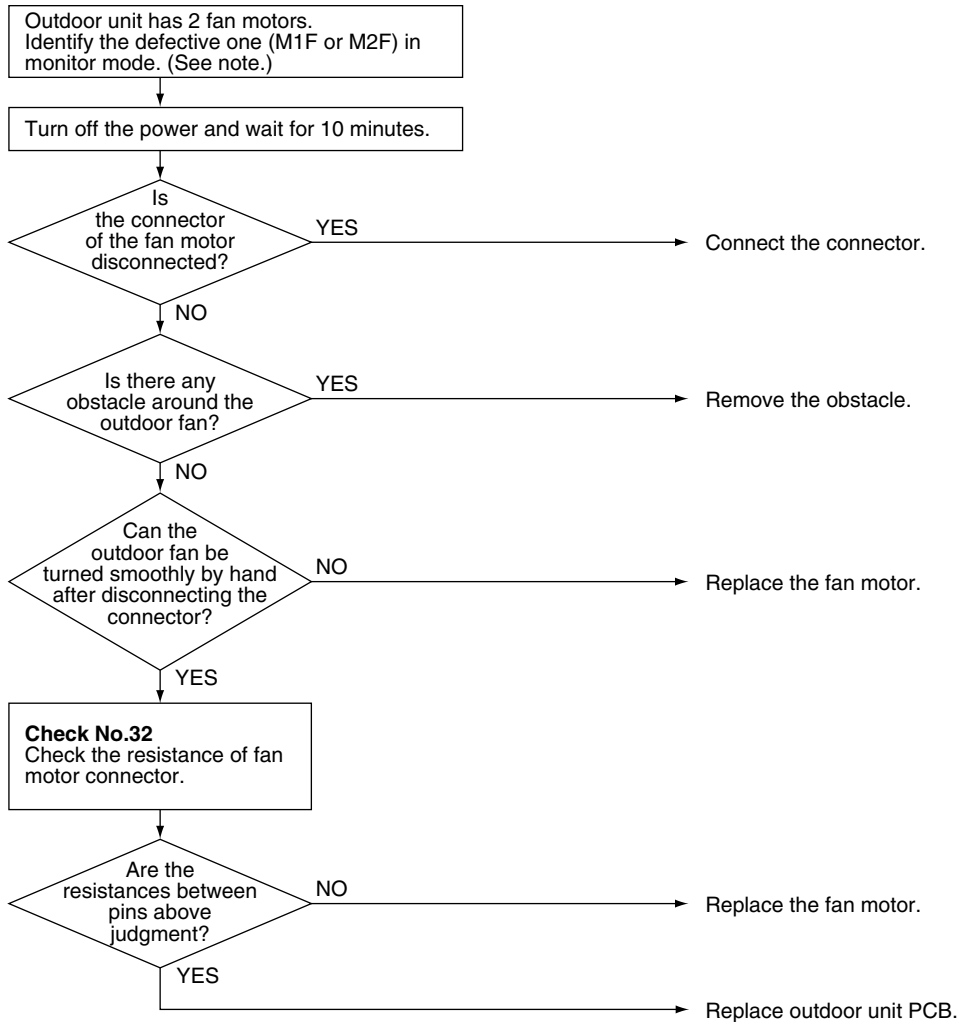


**Check No.32**  
Refer to P.222



### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15332)



**Note:** Refer to page 139 for detail about monitor mode.

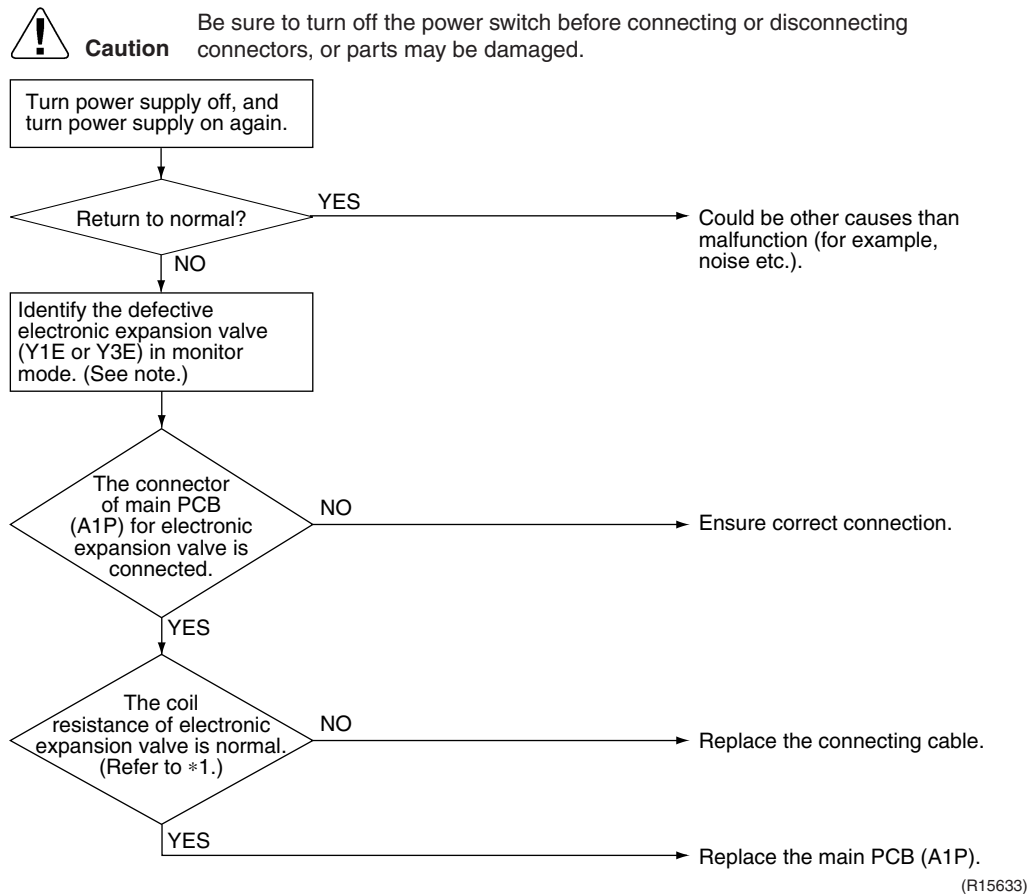


## 7.6 Moving Part of Electronic Expansion Valve (Y1E, Y3E) Abnormality

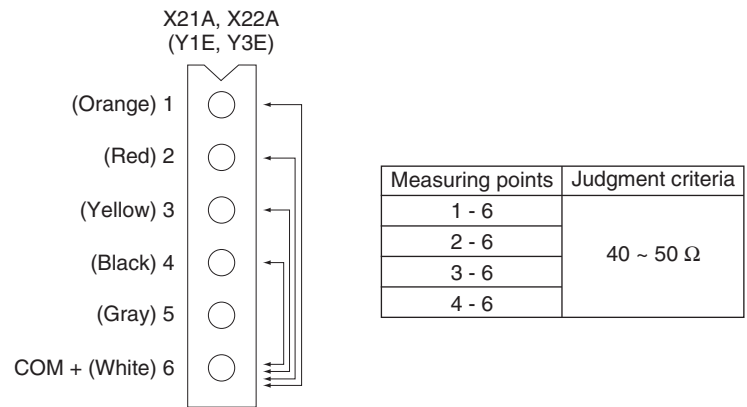
|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>E9</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Method of Error Detection | System checks if the connector is disconnected, and the detection is based on the continuity of electronic expansion valve coil.                                                                                         |
| Error Decision Conditions | No current is detected in the common (COM +) when power supply is ON.                                                                                                                                                    |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Disconnection of connectors for electronic expansion valve Y1E or Y3E</li><li>■ Defective moving part of electronic expansion valve</li><li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li></ul> |



Troubleshooting



\* 1. Make measurement of resistance between the connector pins, and then make sure the resistance falls in the range of 40 to 50 Ω.



(R15616)



**Note:** Refer to page 139 for detail about monitor mode.



## 7.7 Discharge Pipe Temperature Abnormality

### Error Code

# F3

### Method of Error Detection

The temperature detected by the discharge pipe thermistor determines the error.

### Error Decision Conditions

- When the discharge pipe temperature rises to an abnormally high level (135 °C (275°F) and above)
- When the discharge pipe temperature rises suddenly (120 °C (248°F) and above for 10 successive minutes)

### Supposed Causes

- Defective discharge pipe thermistor
- Disconnection of discharge pipe thermistor (R2T)
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



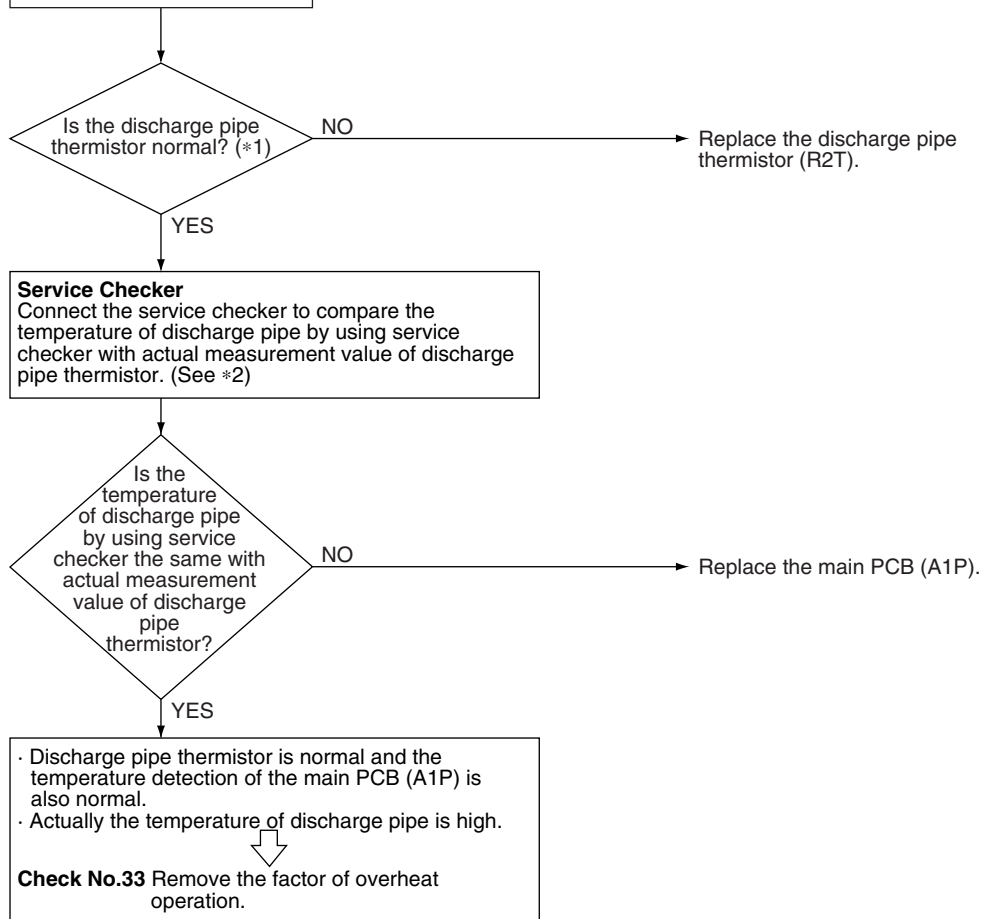
**Check No.33**  
Refer to P.223



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

Connect the service checker.  
Press reset and start operation again.



(R15427)



\*1: Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 2 on page 225.

\*2: Compare the resistance value of discharge pipe thermistor and the value based on the surface thermometer.



# 7.8 Refrigerant Overcharged

## Error Code

**F6**

## Method of Error Detection

Excessive charging of refrigerant is detected during check operation by using outdoor temperature, outdoor heat exchanger temperature, and liquid pipe temperature.

## Error Decision Conditions

When the amount of refrigerant, which is calculated during check operation by using outdoor temperature, outdoor heat exchanger temperature, and liquid pipe temperature, exceeds the standard.

## Supposed Causes

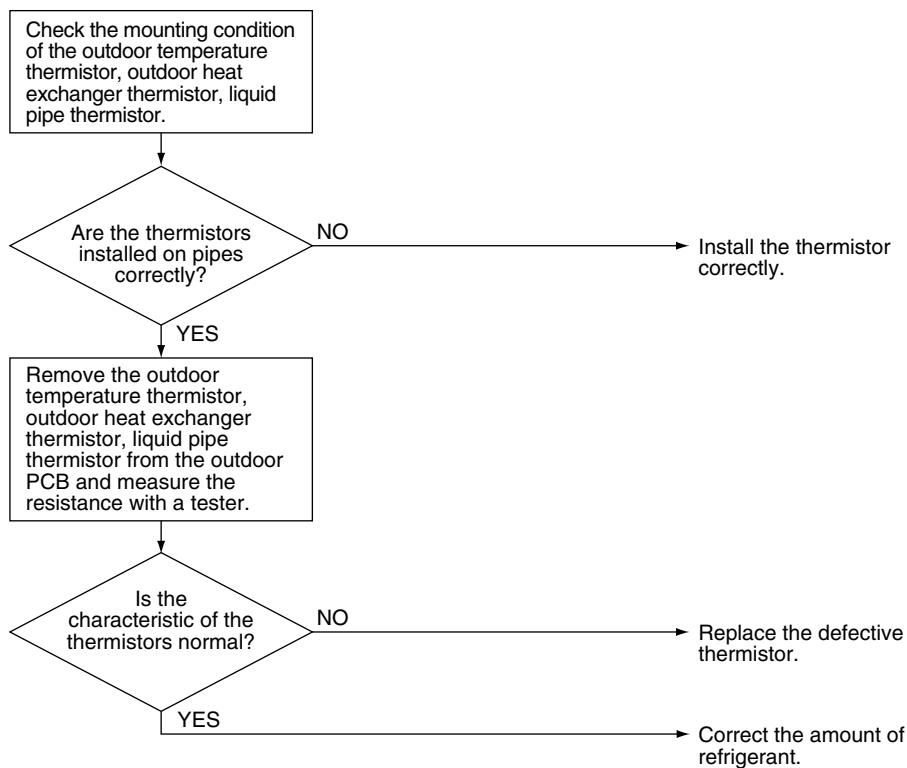
- Refrigerant overcharge
- Incorrect installation of outdoor temperature thermistor, outdoor heat exchanger thermistor, liquid pipe thermistor (R1T, R4T, R7T)
- Defective outdoor temperature thermistor, outdoor heat exchanger thermistor, liquid pipe thermistor (R1T, R4T, R7T)

## Troubleshooting



### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R13024)



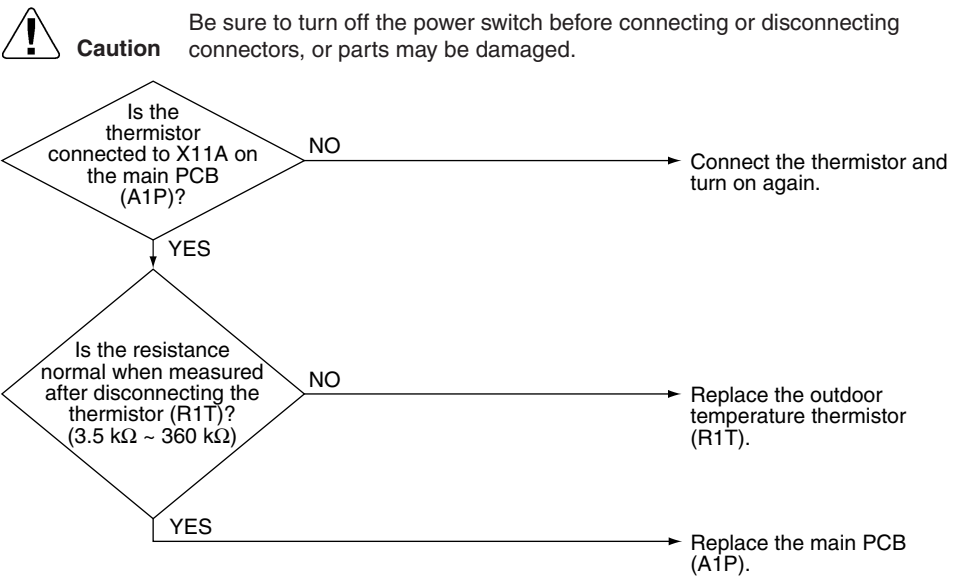
Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



## 7.9 Outdoor Temperature Thermistor (R1T) Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | H9                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Method of Error Detection | The temperature detected by the outdoor temperature thermistor determines the error.                                                                                        |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the outdoor temperature thermistor has short circuit or open circuit                                                                                                   |
| Supposed Causes           | <div><div></div>■ Disconnection of thermistor</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective outdoor temperature thermistor (R1T)</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</div> |

### Troubleshooting



(R15642)



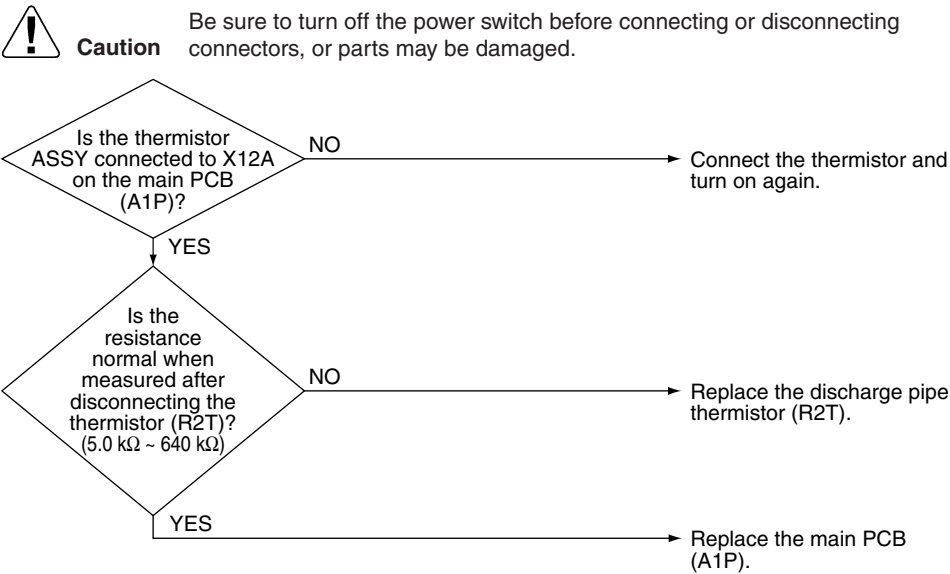
Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



# 7.10 Discharge Pipe Thermistor (R2T) Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | J3                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Method of Error Detection | The temperature detected by discharge pipe thermistor determines the error.                                                                                            |
| Error Decision Conditions | When a short circuit or an open circuit in the discharge pipe thermistor is detected                                                                                   |
| Supposed Causes           | <div><div></div>■ Disconnection of thermistor</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective discharge pipe thermistor (R2T)</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</div> |

## Troubleshooting



(R13026)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 2 on page 225.



## 7.11 Suction Pipe Thermistor (R3T, R5T) Abnormality

### Error Code

# J5

### Method of Error Detection

The temperature detected by the suction pipe thermistor determines the error.

### Error Decision Conditions

When a short circuit or an open circuit in the suction pipe thermistor is detected

### Supposed Causes

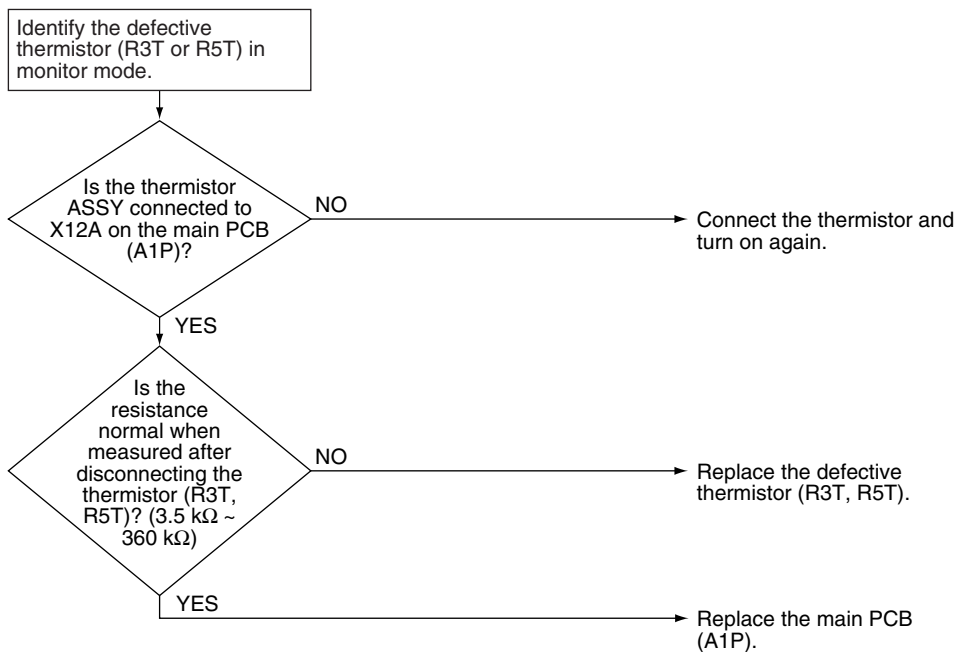
- Disconnection of thermistor
- Defective suction pipe thermistor (R3T, R5T)
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R18082)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



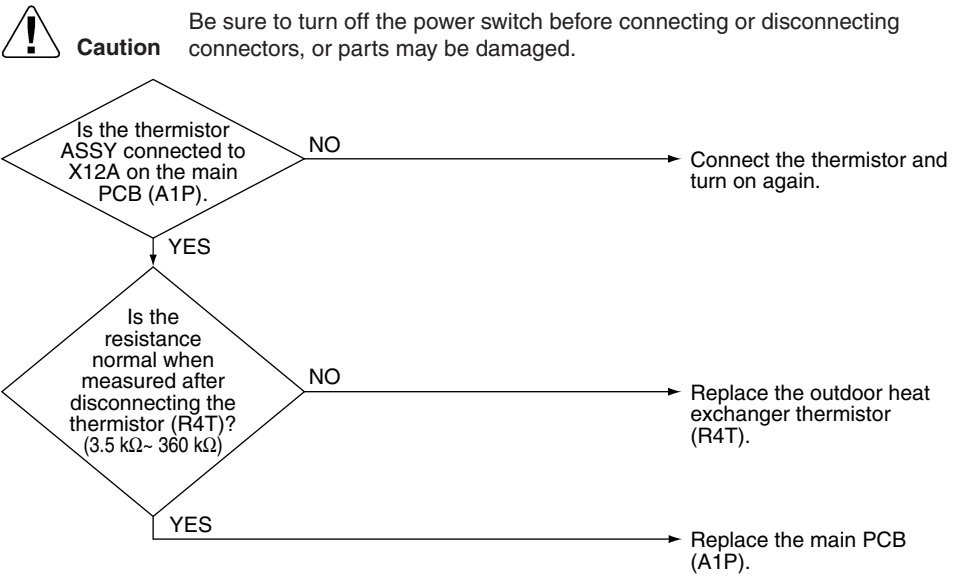
Refer to page 139 for detail about monitor mode.



# 7.12 Outdoor Heat Exchanger Thermistor (R4T) Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | J6                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Method of Error Detection | The temperature detected by the outdoor heat exchanger thermistor determines the error.                                                                                        |
| Error Decision Conditions | When a short circuit or an open circuit in the outdoor heat exchanger thermistor is detected                                                                                   |
| Supposed Causes           | <div><div></div>■ Disconnection of thermistor</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective outdoor heat exchanger thermistor (R4T)</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</div> |

## Troubleshooting



(R13028)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



## 7.13 Outdoor Liquid Pipe Thermistor (R7T) Abnormality

### Error Code

# J7

### Method of Error Detection

The temperature detected by the outdoor liquid pipe thermistor determines the error.

### Error Decision Conditions

When a short circuit or an open circuit in the outdoor liquid pipe thermistor is detected

### Supposed Causes

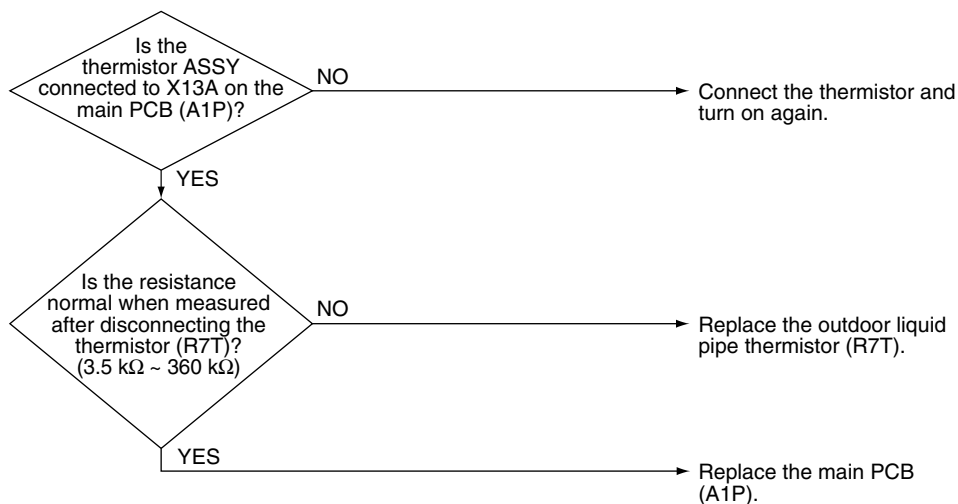
- Disconnection of thermistor
- Defective outdoor liquid pipe thermistor (R7T)
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R13029)



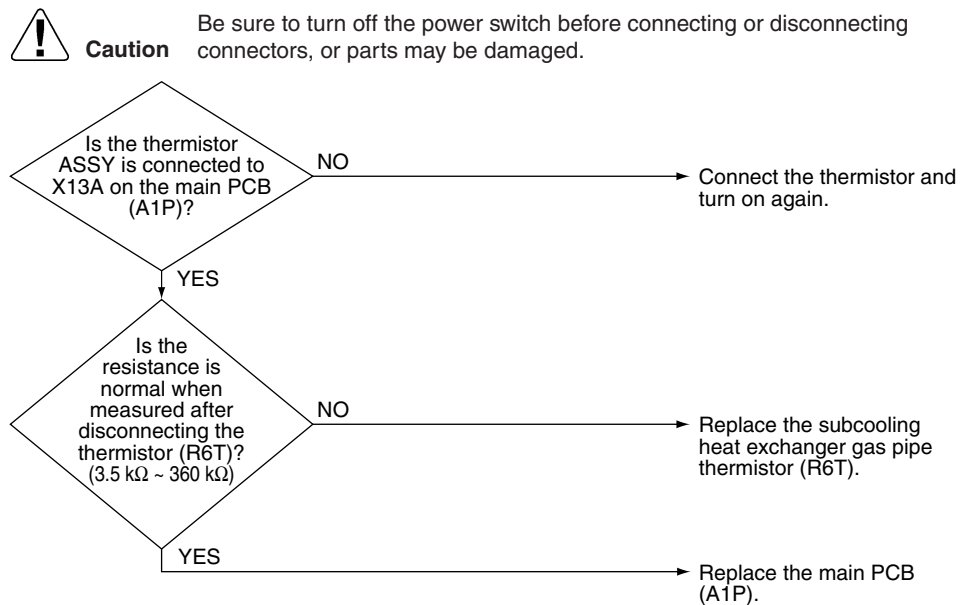
Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



# 7.14 Subcooling Heat Exchanger Gas Pipe Thermistor (R6T) Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>J9</b>                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Method of Error Detection | The temperature detected by subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe thermistor determines the error.                                                                                              |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe thermistor is short circuited or open                                                                                                            |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Disconnection of thermistor</li> <li>■ Defective subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe thermistor (R6T)</li> <li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting



(R13030)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



## 7.15 High Pressure Sensor Abnormality

### Error Code

**JA**

### Method of Error Detection

The pressure detected by high pressure sensor determines the error.

### Error Decision Conditions

When the high pressure sensor is short circuit or open circuit

### Supposed Causes

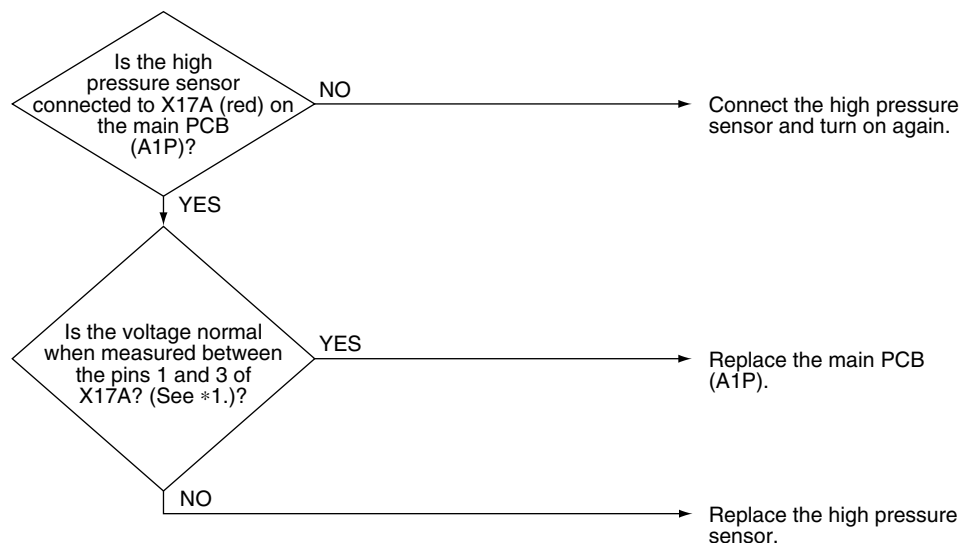
- Defective high pressure sensor
- Wrong connection with low pressure sensor
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



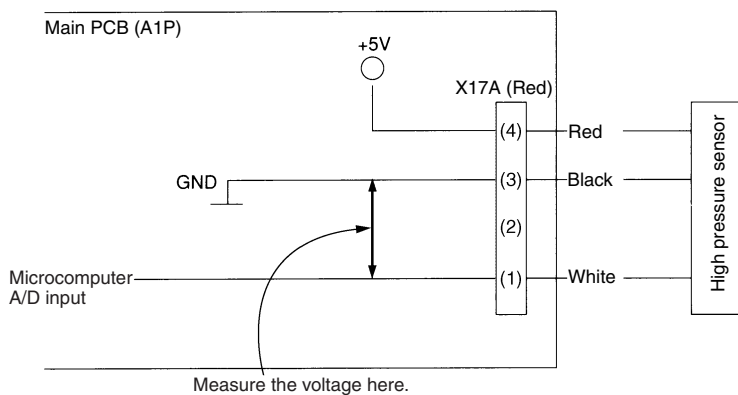
#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15428)

#### \*1: Voltage measurement point



(R13032)



For pressure / voltage characteristics graph, refer to Pressure Sensor on page 226.



# 7.16 Low Pressure Sensor Abnormality

Error Code **JC**

**Method of Error Detection** The pressure detected by low pressure sensor determines the error.

**Error Decision Conditions** When the low pressure sensor is short circuit or open circuit

**Supposed Causes**

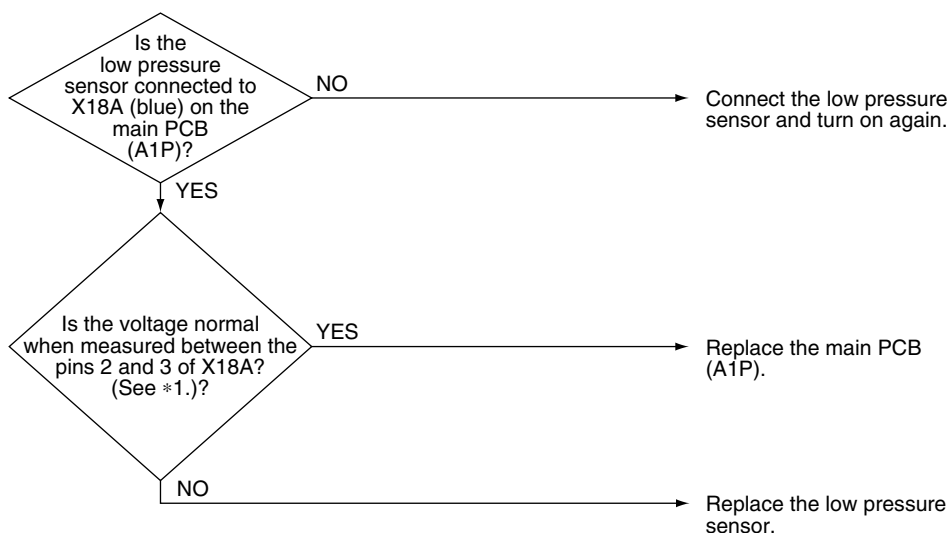
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Wrong connection with high pressure sensor
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

## Troubleshooting



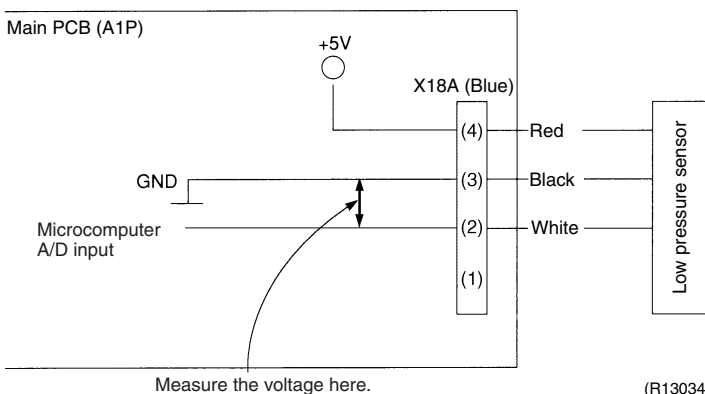
### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R15429)

\*1: Voltage measurement point



(R13034)



For pressure / voltage characteristics graph, refer to Pressure Sensor on page 226.



## 7.17 Outdoor Unit PCB Abnormality

### Error Code

# L1

### Method of Error Detection

- The error is detected based on the current value during waveform output before starting compressor.
- The error is detected based on the value from current sensor during synchronous operation when starting the unit.

### Error Decision Conditions

- Overcurrent (OCP) flows during waveform output.
- Malfunction of current sensor during synchronous operation
- IPM failure

### Supposed Causes

- Defective main PCB (A1P)
  - IPM failure
  - Current sensor failure
  - Failure of IGBT or drive circuit

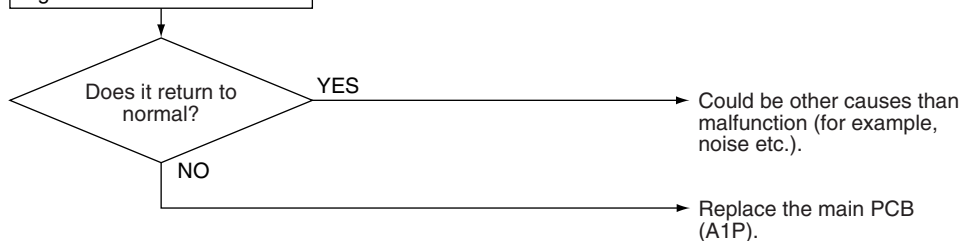
### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

Turn OFF the power supply once and then turn it ON again.



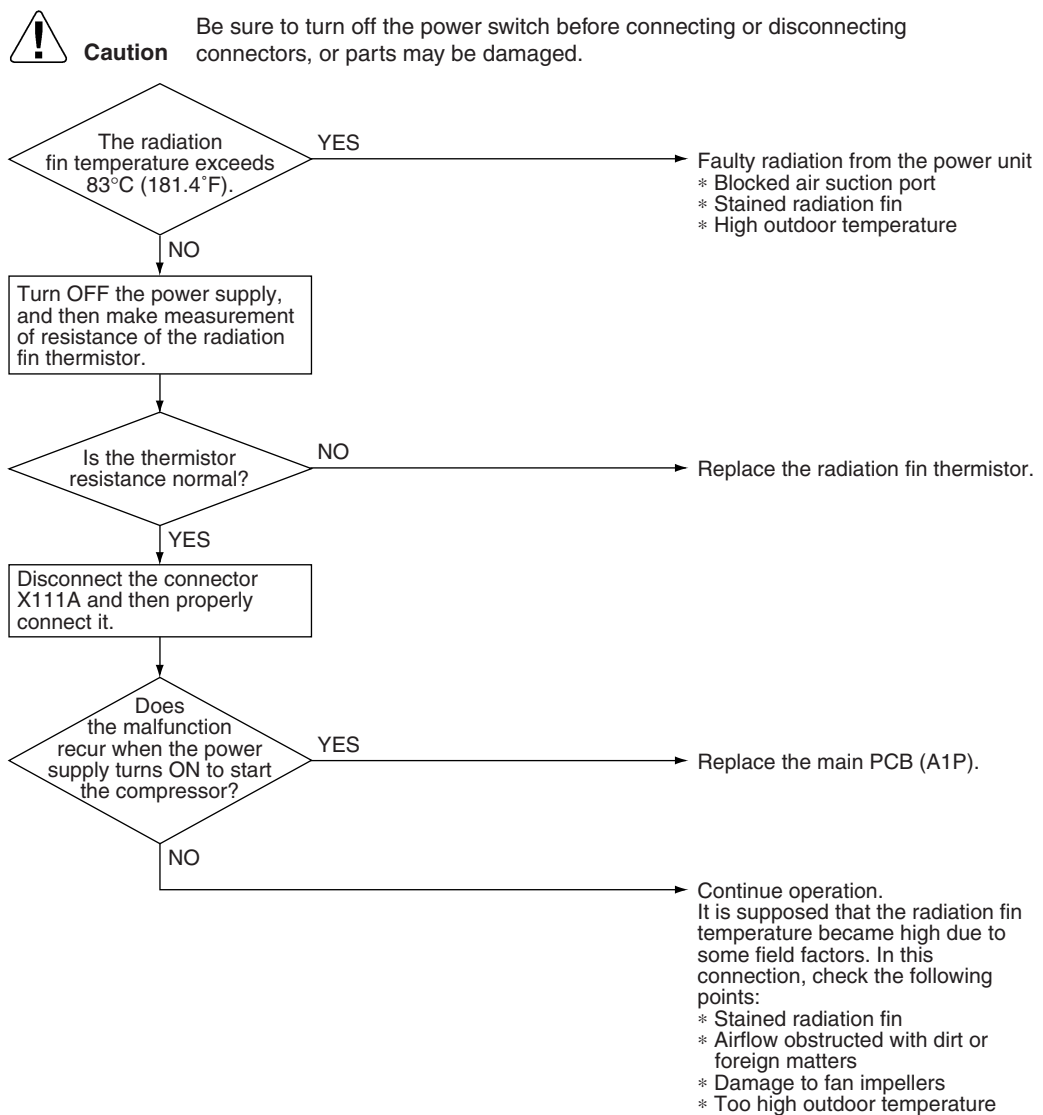
(R15335)



# 7.18 Radiation Fin Temperature Rise

|                           |                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>L4</b>                                                                                                                          |
| Method of Error Detection | Fin temperature is detected by the thermistor of the radiation fin.                                                                |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the radiation fin temperature increases above 83°C (181.4°F)                                                                  |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li> <li>■ Defective radiation fin thermistor (FINTH)</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting



(R19094)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 2 on page 225.



## 7.19 Inverter Compressor Abnormality

### Error Code

# L5

### Method of Error Detection

The error is detected from current flowing in the power transistor.

### Error Decision Conditions

When an excessive current flows in the power transistor  
(Instantaneous overcurrent also causes activation.)

### Supposed Causes

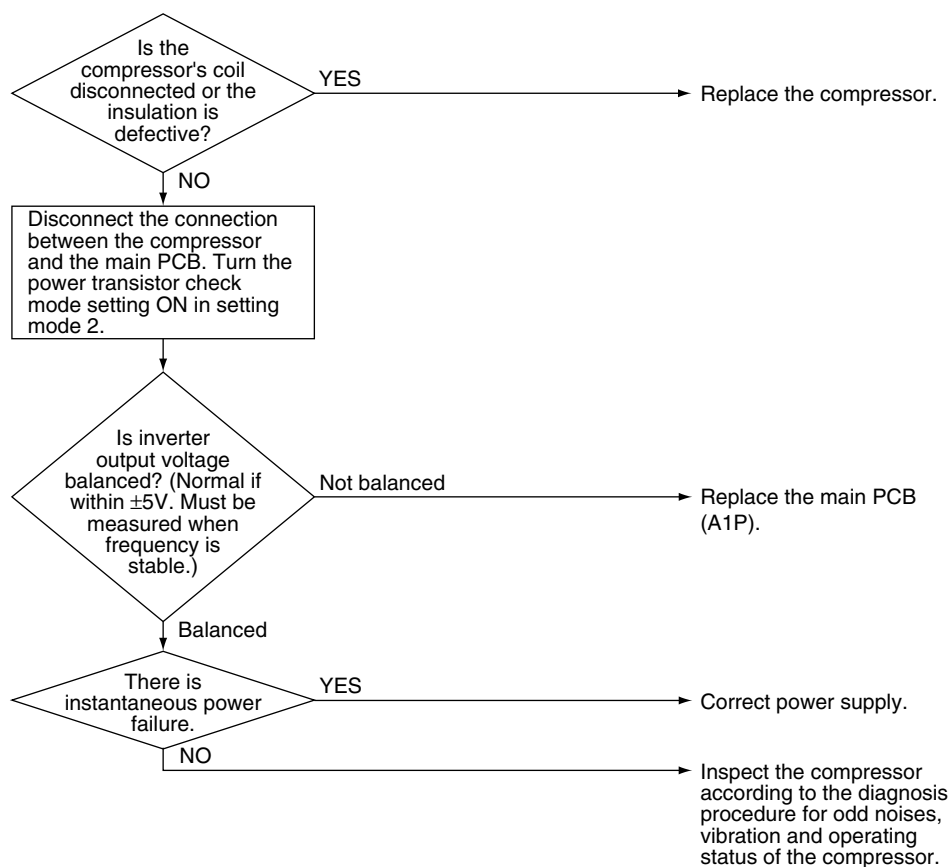
- Defective compressor coil (disconnected, defective insulation)
- Compressor start-up malfunction (mechanical lock)
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19190)



**Note:** Higher voltage than actual is displayed when the inverter output voltage is checked by tester.



# 7.20 Inverter Current Abnormality

## Error Code

**L8**

## Method of Error Detection

The error is detected by current flowing in the power transistor.

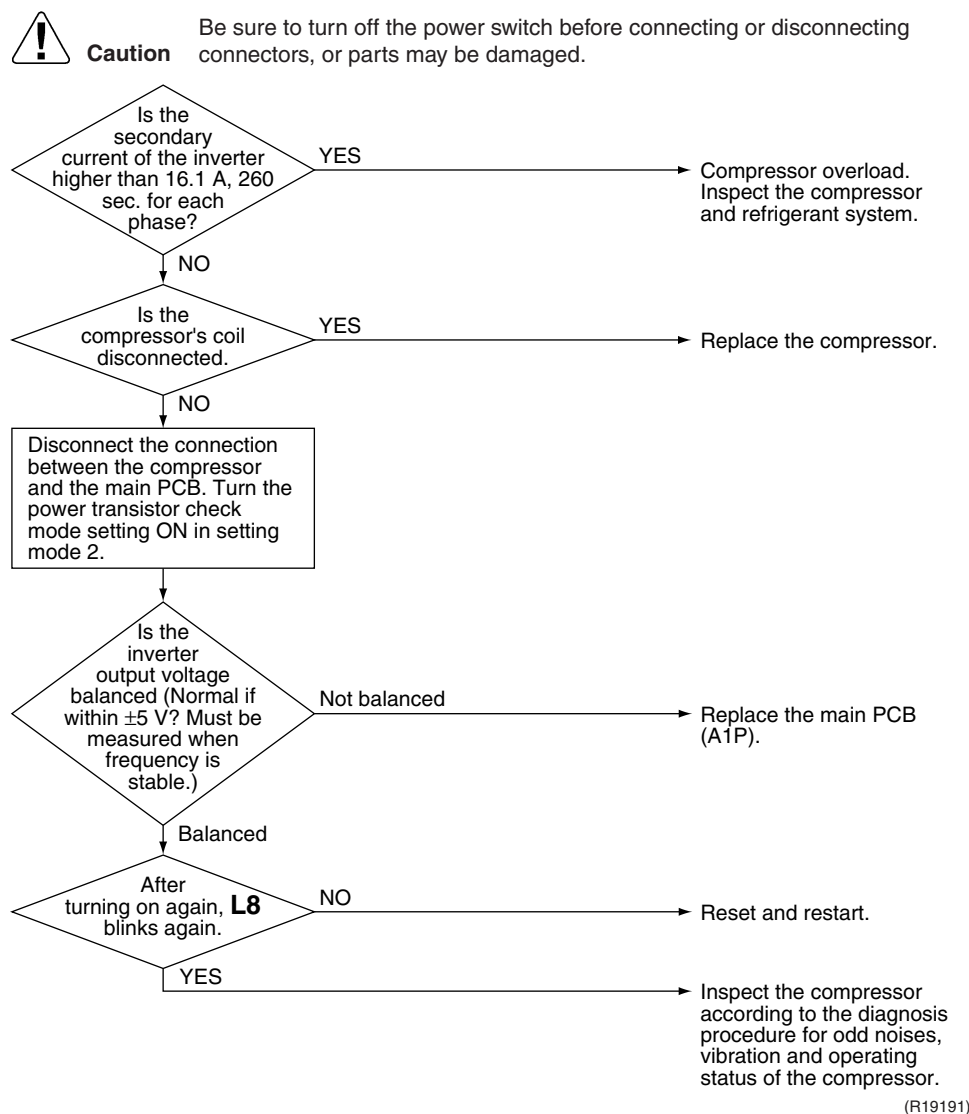
## Error Decision Conditions

When overload in the compressor is detected. (Inverter secondary current 16.1 A)  
 (1) 19.0 A and over continues for 5 seconds.  
 (2) 16.1 A and over continues for 260 seconds.

## Supposed Causes

- Compressor overload
- Compressor coil disconnected
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

## Troubleshooting





## 7.21 Compressor Start-up Error

### Error Code

# L9

### Method of Error Detection

The error is detected from current flowing in the power transistor.

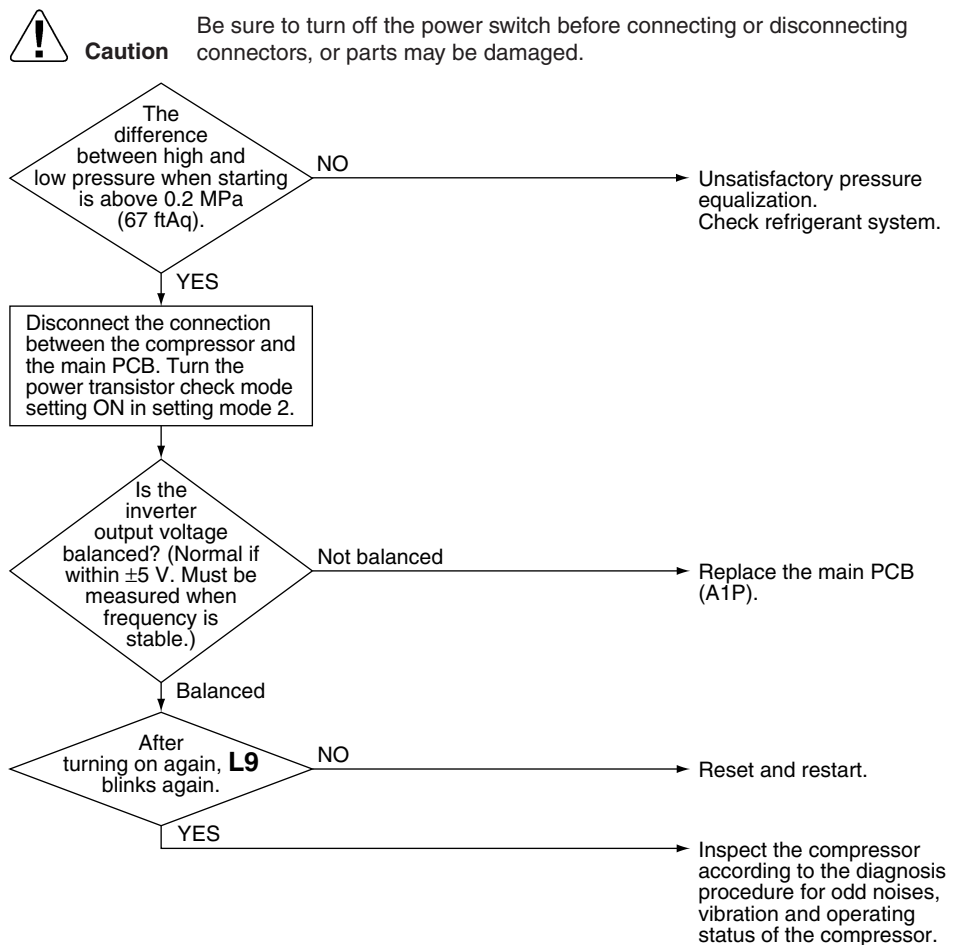
### Error Decision Conditions

Starting control of the compressor does not complete.

### Supposed Causes

- Defective compressor
- Large pressure difference before starting the compressor
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



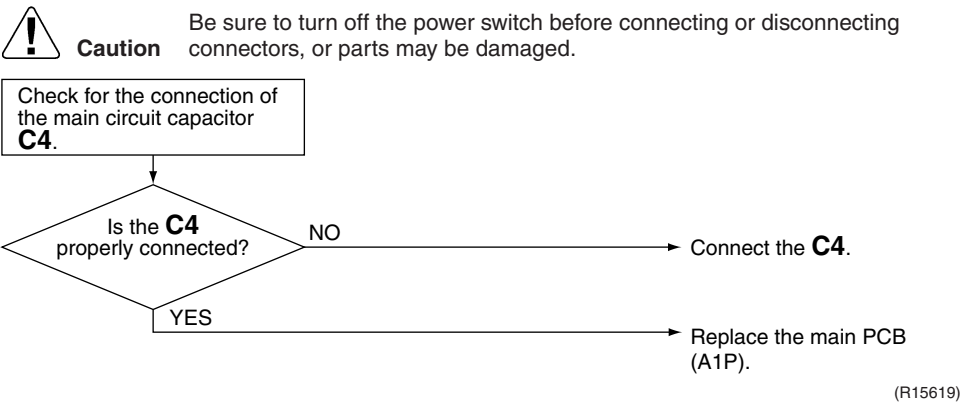
(R19095)



# 7.22 High Voltage of Capacitor in Main Inverter Circuit

|                           |                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | P1                                                                                                                                                          |
| Method of Error Detection | The error is detected according to the voltage waveform of main circuit capacitor built in the inverter.                                                    |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the voltage waveform becomes identical with the waveform of the power supply open phase                                                                |
| Supposed Causes           | <div><div></div> Defective main circuit capacitor</div> <div><div></div> Improper main circuit wiring</div> <div><div></div> Defective main PCB (A1P)</div> |

## Troubleshooting





## 7.23 Radiation Fin Thermistor Abnormality

### Error Code

**P4**

### Method of Error Detection

Resistance of radiation fin thermistor is detected when the compressor is not operating.

### Error Decision Conditions

When the resistance value of thermistor becomes a value equivalent to open or short circuited status

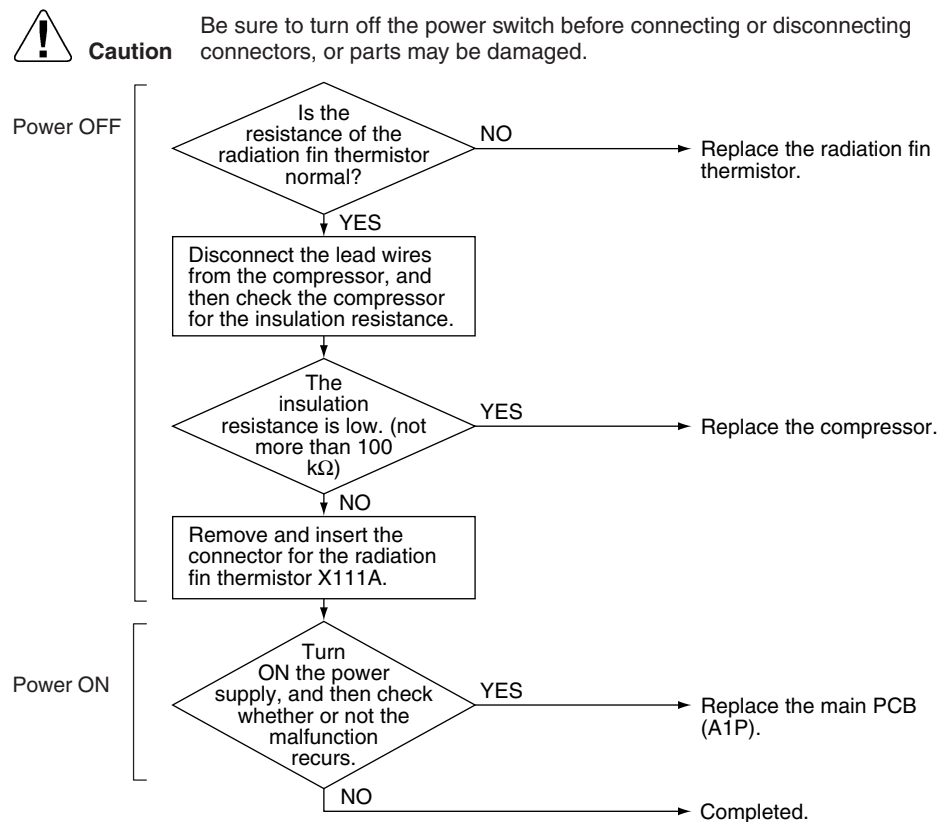
★ Malfunction is not decided while the unit operation is continued.

**P4** is displayed by pressing the inspection button.

### Supposed Causes

- Defective radiation fin thermistor (FINTH)
- Defective main PCB (A1P)

### Troubleshooting



(R17943)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 2 on page 225.



## 7.24 Low Pressure Drop due to Refrigerant Shortage or Electronic Expansion Valve Abnormality

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>U0</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Method of Error Detection | Refrigerant shortage is detected by discharge pipe thermistor and low pressure saturation temperature.                                                                                                                                   |
| Error Decision Conditions | Microcomputer judge and detect if the system is short of refrigerant.<br>★The error is not decided while the operation continues.                                                                                                        |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Refrigerant shortage or refrigerant system clogging (incorrect piping)</li><li>■ Defective low pressure sensor</li><li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li><li>■ Defective thermistor (R3T)</li></ul> |

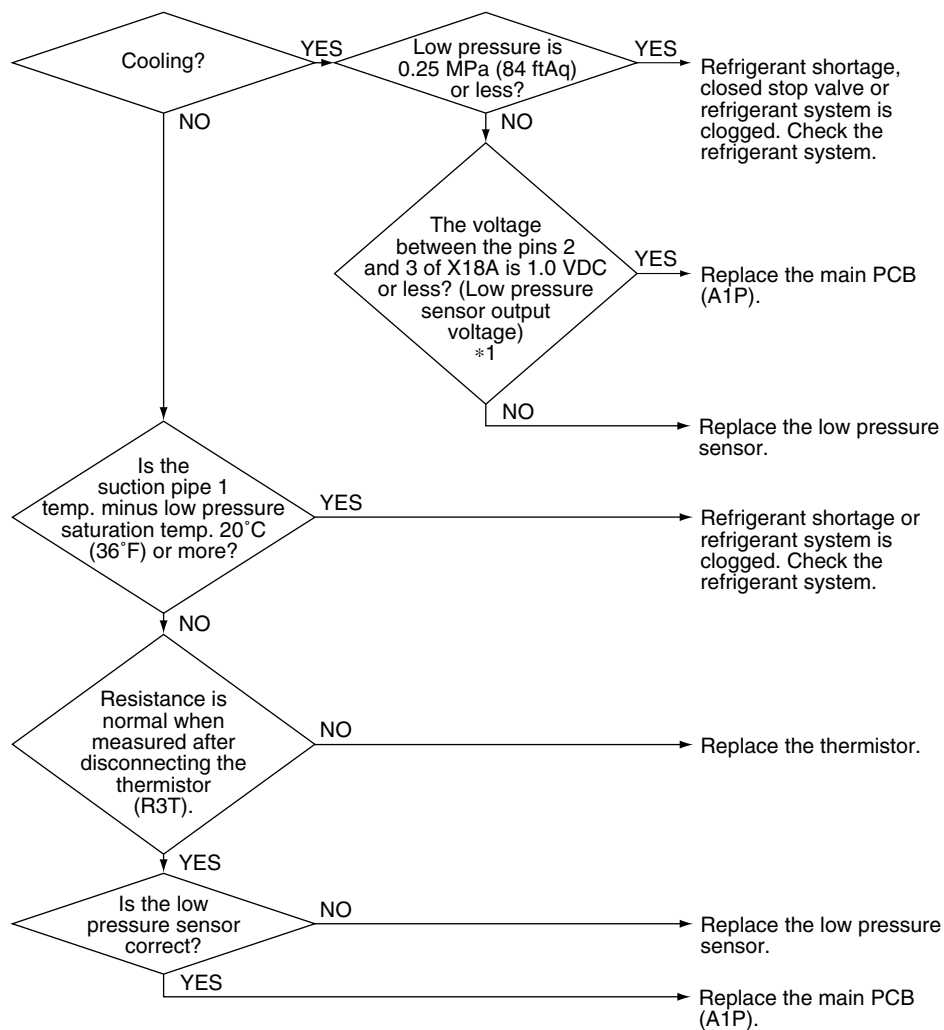


## Troubleshooting



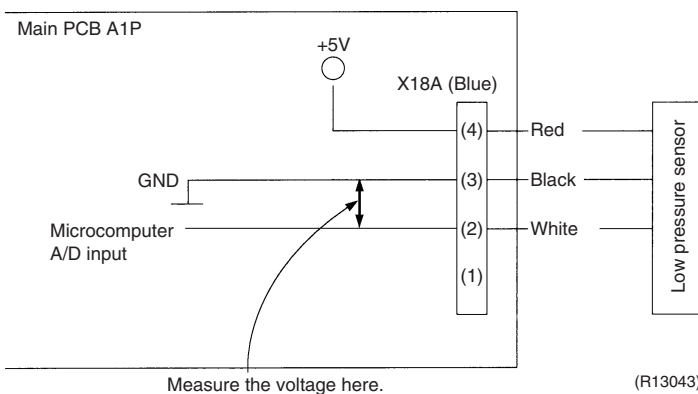
### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R19096)

\*1: Voltage measurement point



(R13043)



Refer to Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics table 1 on page 224.



For pressure / voltage characteristics graph, refer to Pressure Sensor on page 226.

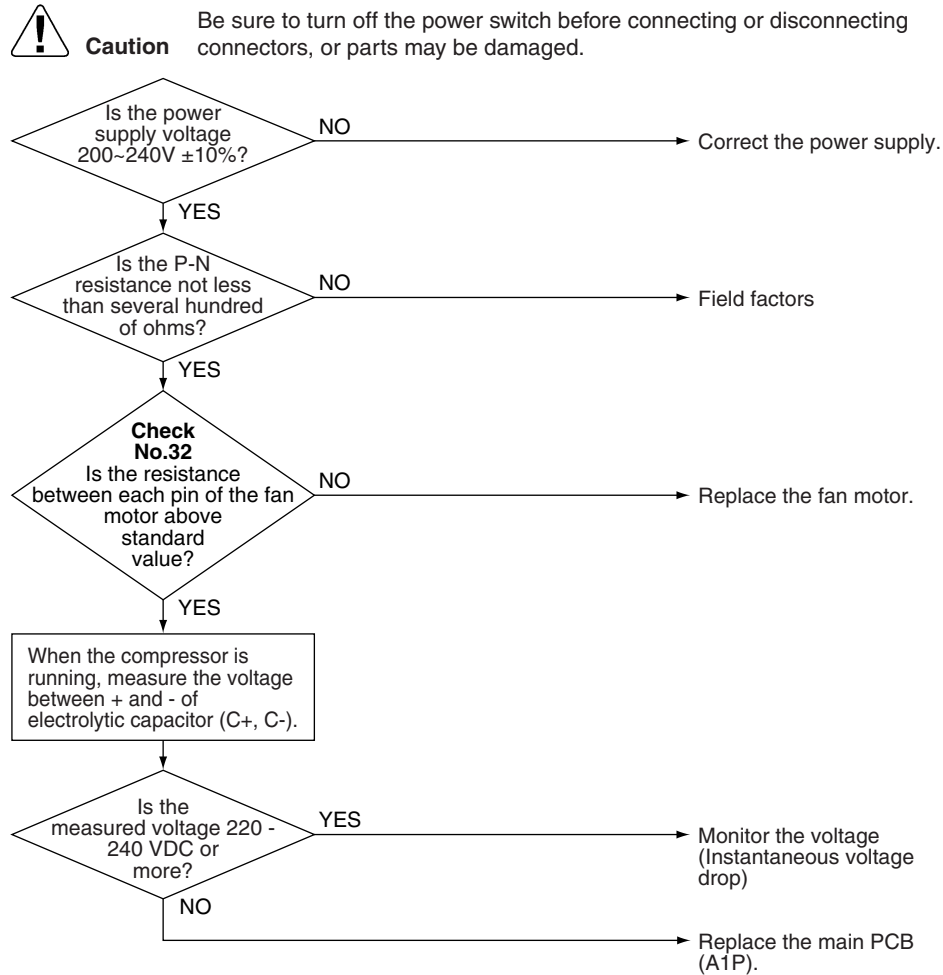


# 7.25 Power Supply Insufficient or Instantaneous Failure

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | U2                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Method of Error Detection | Detection of voltage of main circuit capacitor built in the inverter and power supply voltage.                                                                                                  |
| Error Decision Conditions | When the abnormal voltage of main circuit capacitor built in the inverter and abnormal power supply voltage are detected                                                                        |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Power supply insufficient</li> <li>■ Instantaneous power failure</li> <li>■ Defective outdoor fan motor</li> <li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting

 **Check No.32**  
Refer to P.222



(R19139)



## 7.26 Check Operation is not Conducted

### Error Code

# U3

### Method of Error Detection

Check operation is executed or not

### Error Decision Conditions

When the unit starts operation without check operation

### Supposed Causes

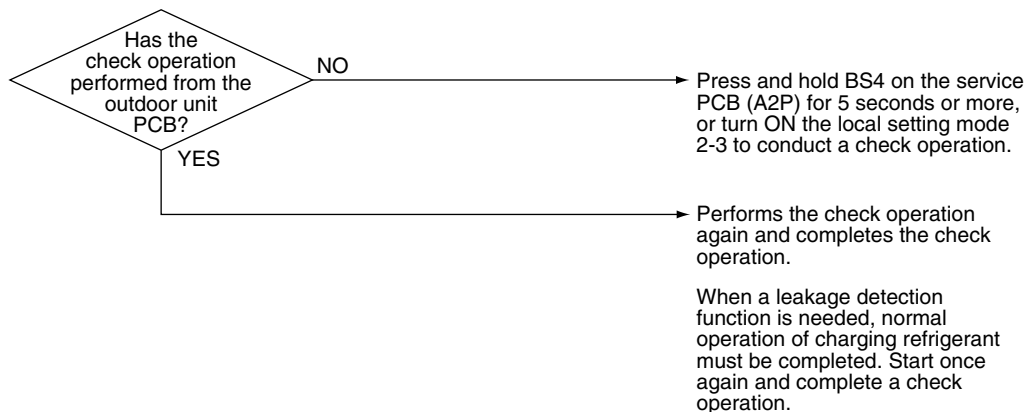
Check operation is not executed.

### Troubleshooting



#### Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



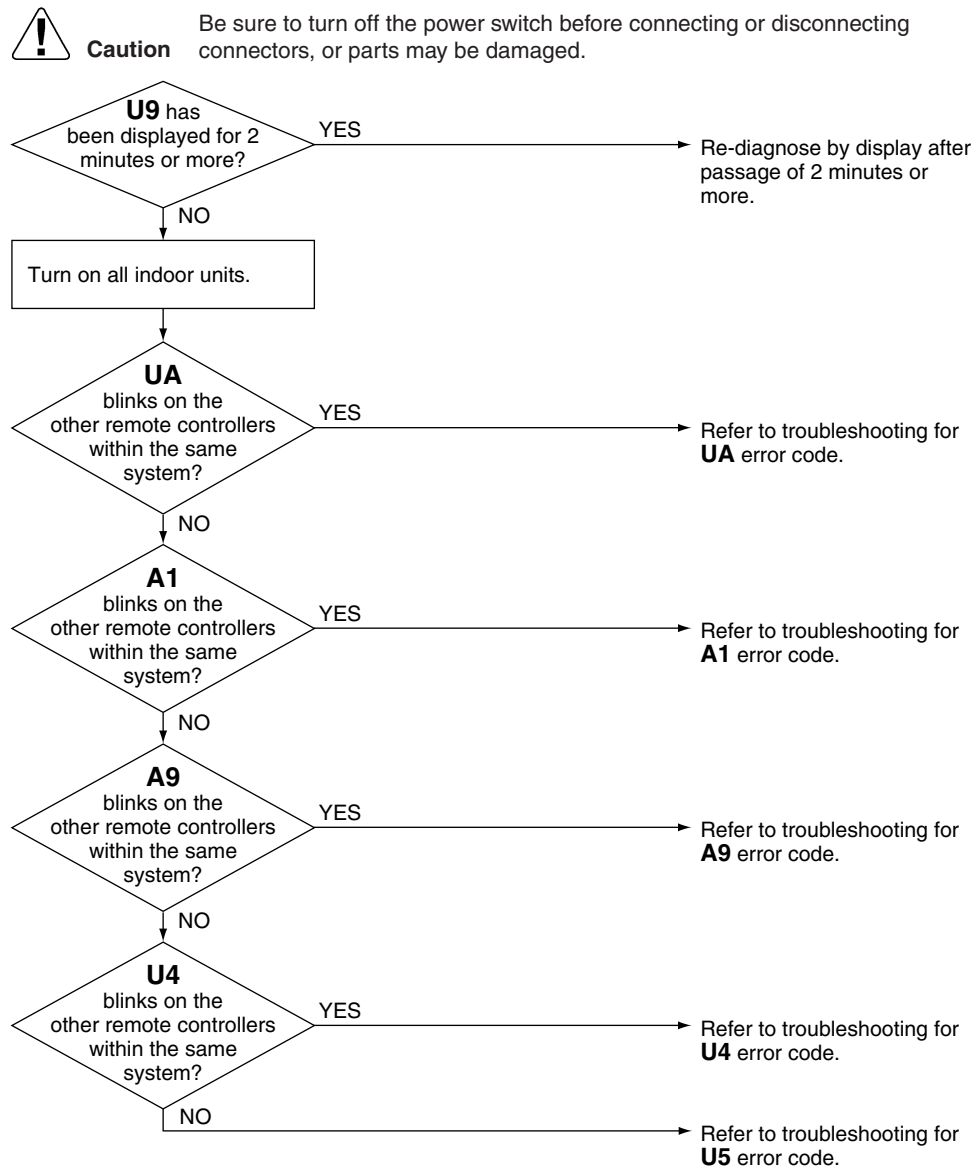
(R13045)



# 7.27 Signal transmission Error between Indoor Unit and Outdoor Unit in the Same System

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>U9</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Method of Error Detection |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Error Decision Conditions |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Signal transmission error within system</li> <li>■ Defective electronic expansion valve in indoor unit of other system</li> <li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB in other system</li> <li>■ Improper connection of transmission wiring between indoor and outdoor unit</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting



(R19192)



## 7.28 Excessive Number of Indoor Units

### Error Code

# UA

### Method of Error Detection

- A difference occurs in data by the type of refrigerant between indoor and outdoor units.
- The number of indoor units is out of the allowable range.
- Incorrect signals are transmitted among the indoor unit, BP unit, and outdoor unit.

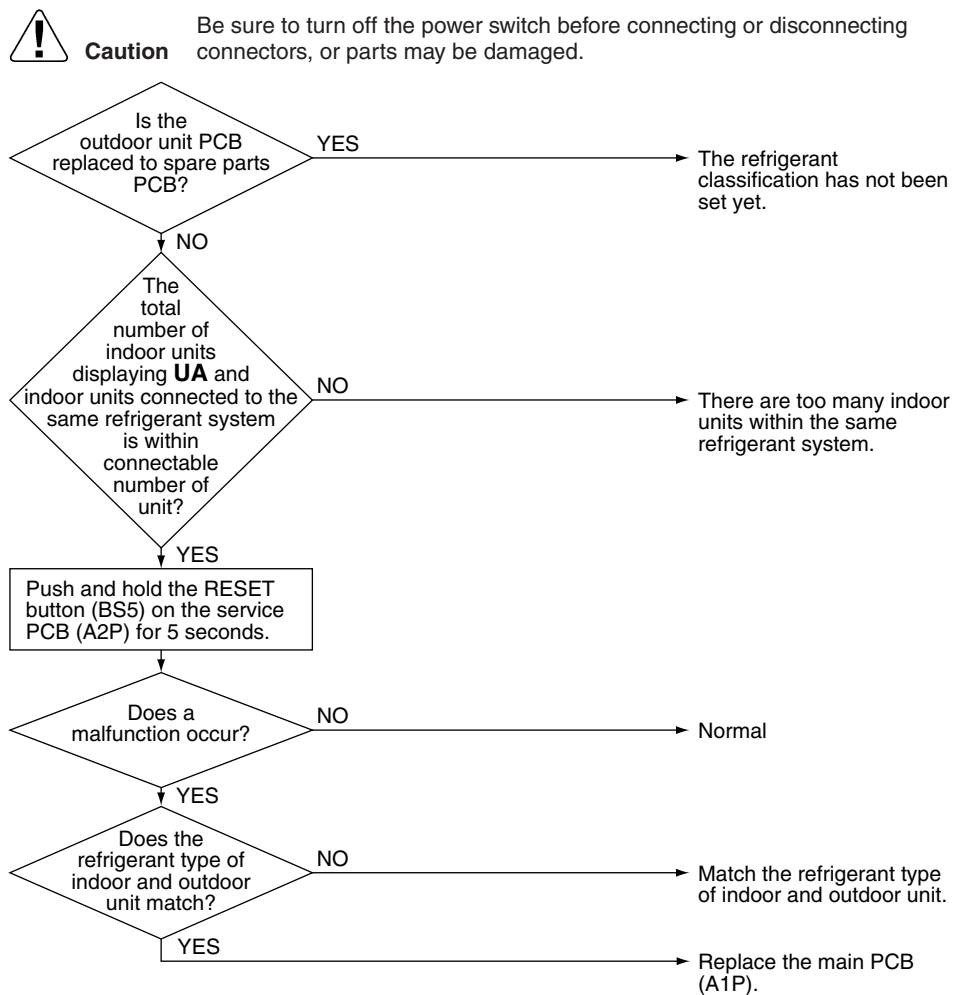
### Error Decision Conditions

The malfunction decision is made as soon as either of the abnormalities is detected.

### Supposed Causes

- Excess of connected indoor units
- Defective main PCB (A1P)
- Mismatching of the refrigerant type of indoor and outdoor unit.
- Setting of outdoor unit PCB was not conducted after replacing to spare parts PCB.

### Troubleshooting



(R15591)



# 7.29 Address Duplication of Central Remote Controller

|                           |                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | UC                                                                                                                             |
| Method of Error Detection | The principal indoor unit detects the same address as that of its own on any other indoor unit.                                |
| Error Decision Conditions | The malfunction decision is made as soon as the abnormality is detected.                                                       |
| Supposed Causes           | <div><div></div>■ Address duplication of centralized remote controller</div> <div><div></div>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</div> |

## Troubleshooting



**Caution**

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.

The centralized address is duplicated.

Make setting change so that the centralized address is not be duplicated.

(R13051)



## 7.30 Transmission Error between Centralized Remote Controller and Indoor Unit

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | <b>UE</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Method of Error Detection | Microcomputer checks if transmission between indoor unit and centralized remote controller is normal.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Error Decision Conditions | When transmission is not carried out normally for a certain amount of time                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Transmission error between optional controllers for centralized control and indoor unit</li><li>■ Connector for setting master controller is disconnected.</li><li>■ Defective PCB of centralized remote controller</li><li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li></ul> |

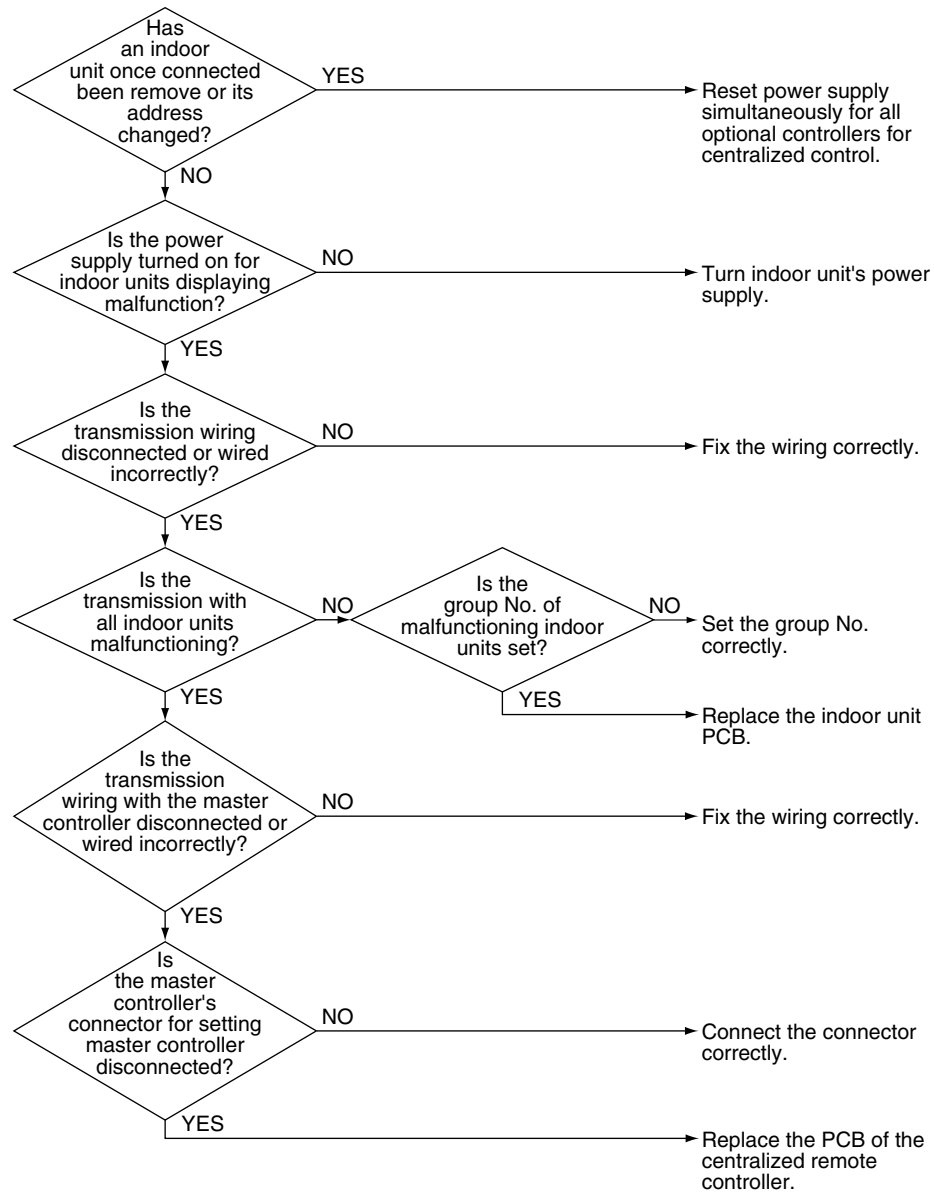


# Troubleshooting



## Caution

Be sure to turn off the power switch before connecting or disconnecting connectors, or parts may be damaged.



(R13052)



## 7.31 System is not Set yet

### Error Code

**UF**

### Method of Error Detection

On check operation, the number of indoor units in terms of transmission is not corresponding to that of indoor units that have made changes in temperature.

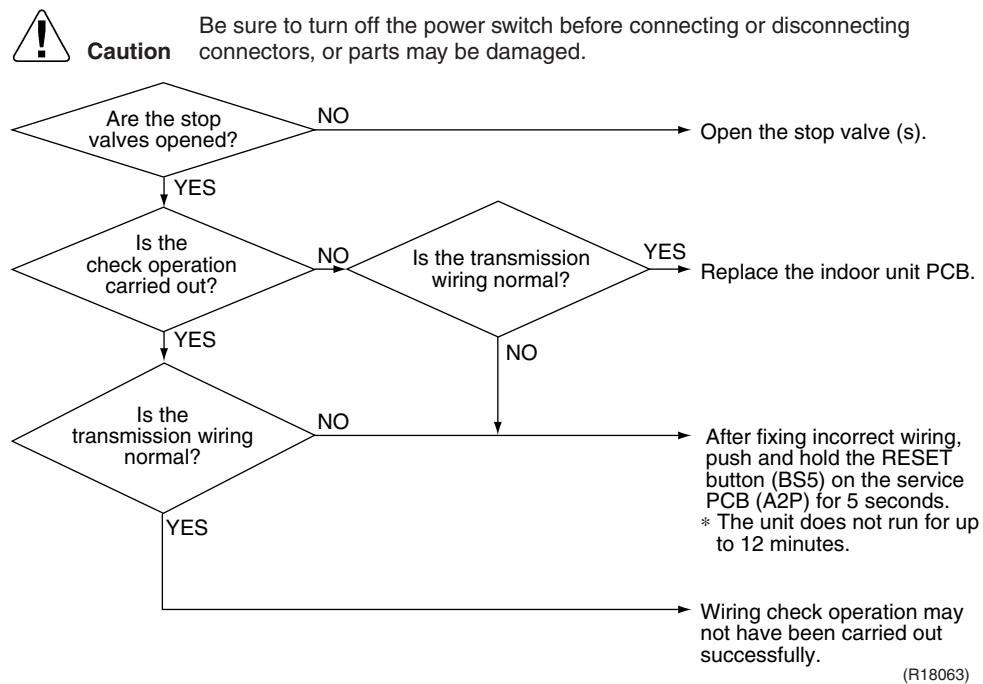
### Error Decision Conditions

The malfunction is determined as soon as the abnormality aforementioned is detected through checking the system for any erroneous connection of units on the check operation.

### Supposed Causes

- Improper connection of transmission wiring between indoor unit - outdoor unit
- Failure to execute check operation
- Defective indoor unit PCB
- Stop valve is left closed

### Troubleshooting



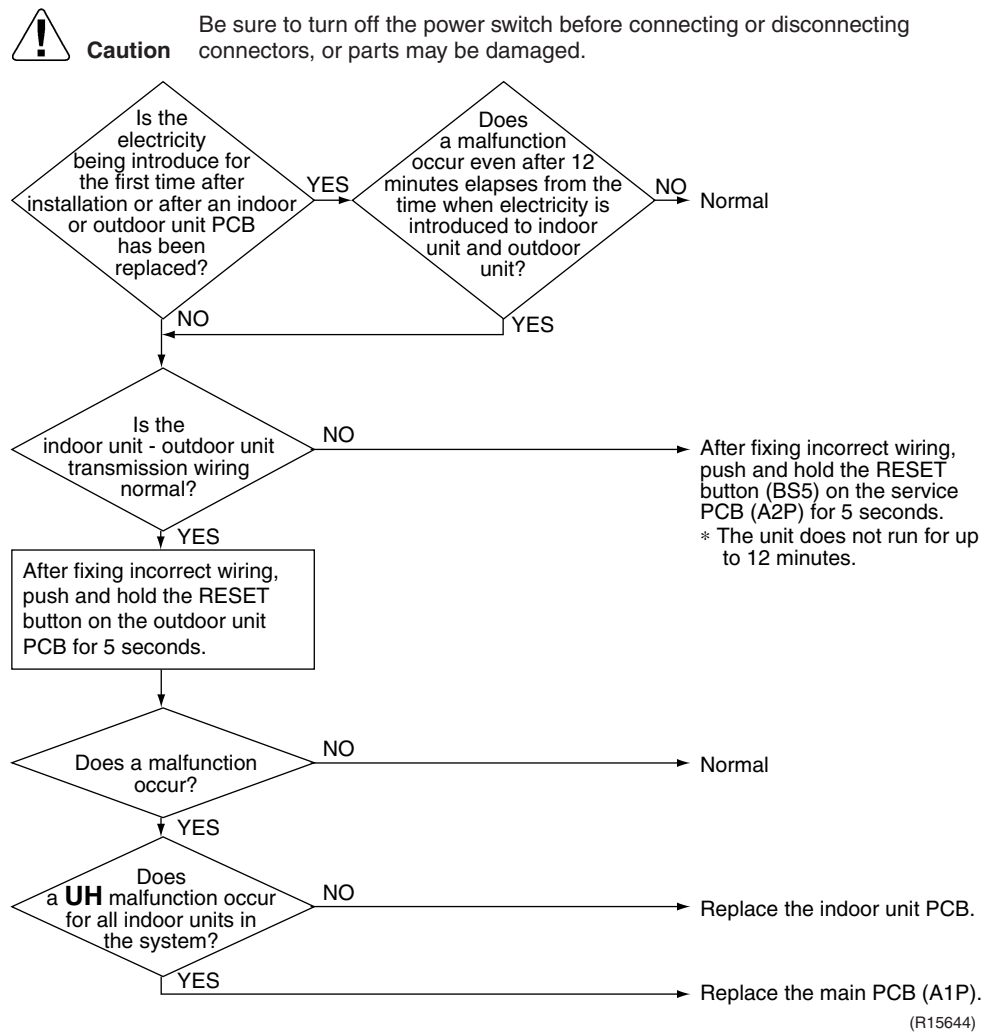
**Note:** Wiring check operation may not be successful if carried out after the outdoor unit has been off for more than 12 hours, or if it is not carried out after running all connected indoor units in the fan mode for at least an hour.



# 7.32 System Abnormality, Refrigerant System Address Undefined

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Error Code                | UH                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Method of Error Detection | The system detects an indoor unit to which auto address has not been assigned.                                                                                                                          |
| Error Decision Conditions | The malfunction decision is made as soon as the abnormality is detected.                                                                                                                                |
| Supposed Causes           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Improper connection of transmission wiring between indoor and outdoor unit</li> <li>■ Defective indoor unit PCB</li> <li>■ Defective main PCB (A1P)</li> </ul> |

## Troubleshooting



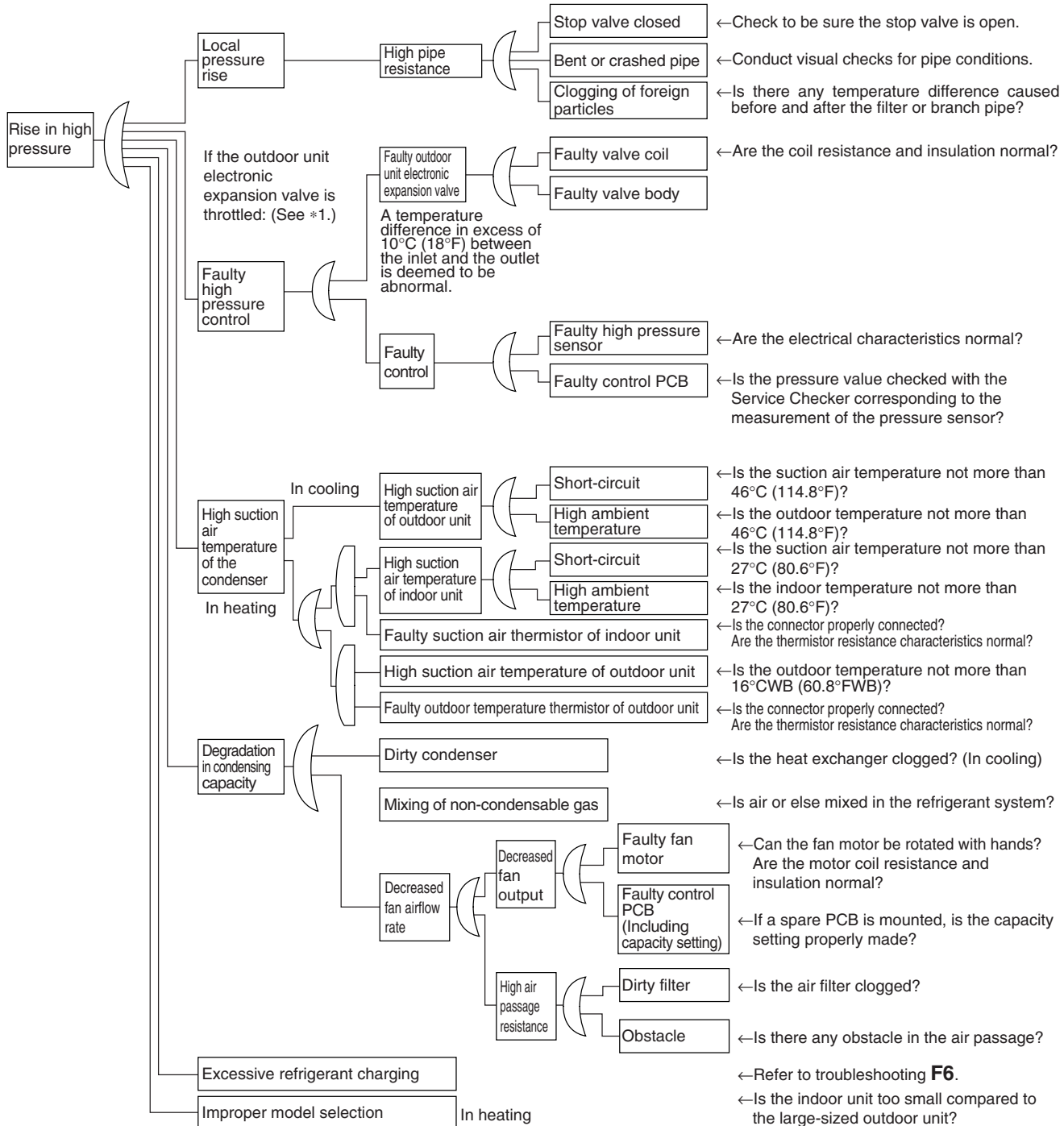


## 7.33 Check for Outdoor Unit

### 7.33.1 Check for Causes of Rise in High Pressure

#### Check No.30

Referring to the Fault Tree Analysis (FTA) shown below, probe the faulty points.



\*1: In cooling, it is normal if the outdoor unit electronic expansion valve (Y1E) is fully open.

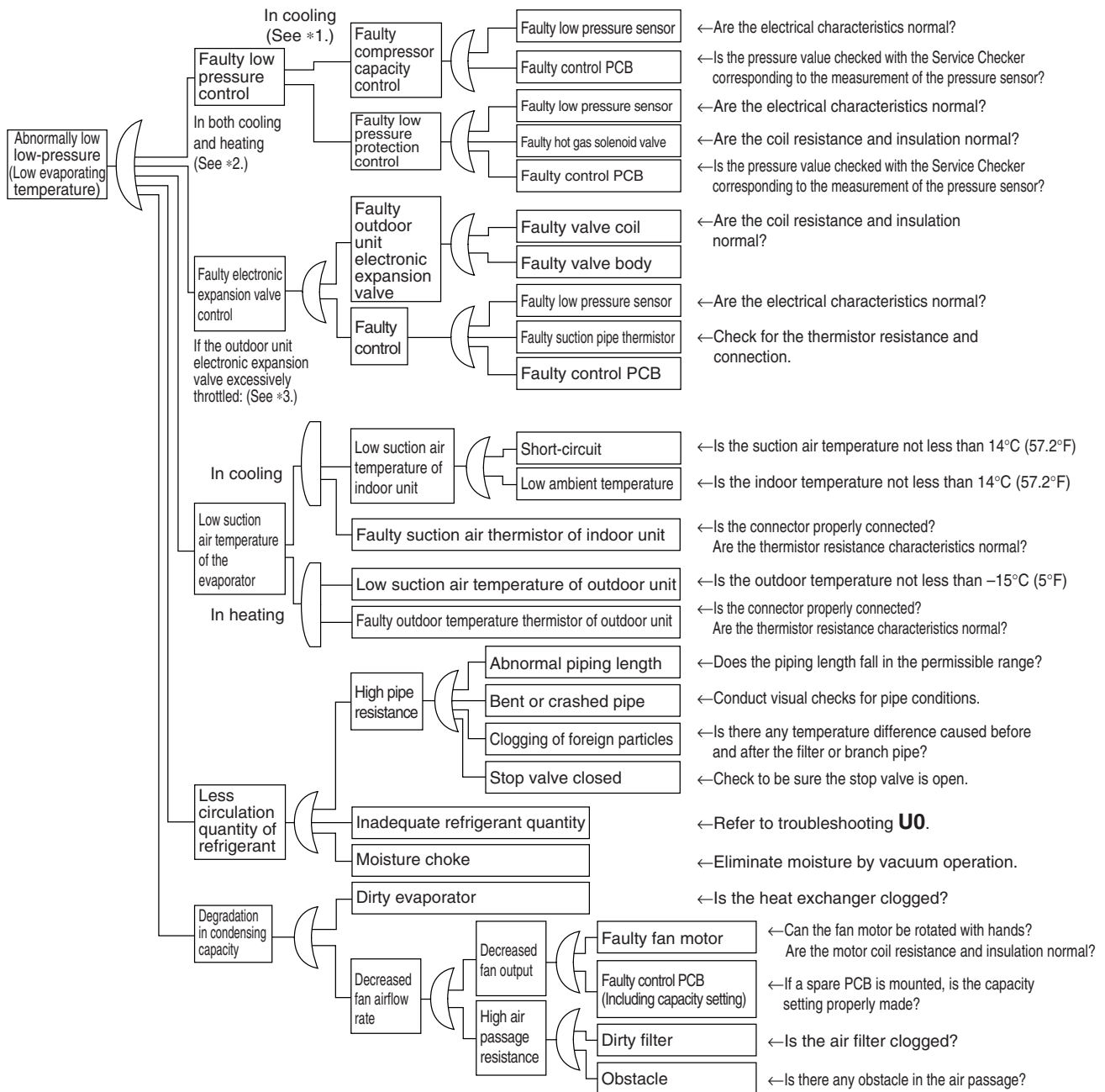
(R19097)



## 7.33.2 Check for Causes of Drop in Low Pressure

### Check No.31

Referring to the Fault Tree Analysis (FTA) shown below, probe the faulty points.



\*1: For details of the compressor capacity control while in cooling, refer to Compressor PI Control.

\*2: The Low Pressure Protection Control includes low pressure protection control and hot gas bypass control.

\*3: In heating, the outdoor unit electronic expansion valve (Y1E) is used for superheated degree control of outdoor unit heat exchanger. (For details, refer to Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control.)

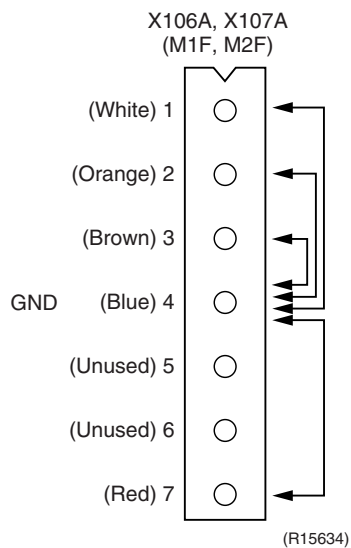
(R19098)



### 7.33.3 Fan Motor Connector Check

**Check No. 32**

- (1) Turn the power supply off.
- (2) With the fan motor connector disconnected, measure the resistance between each pin, then make sure that the resistance is more than the value mentioned in the following table.



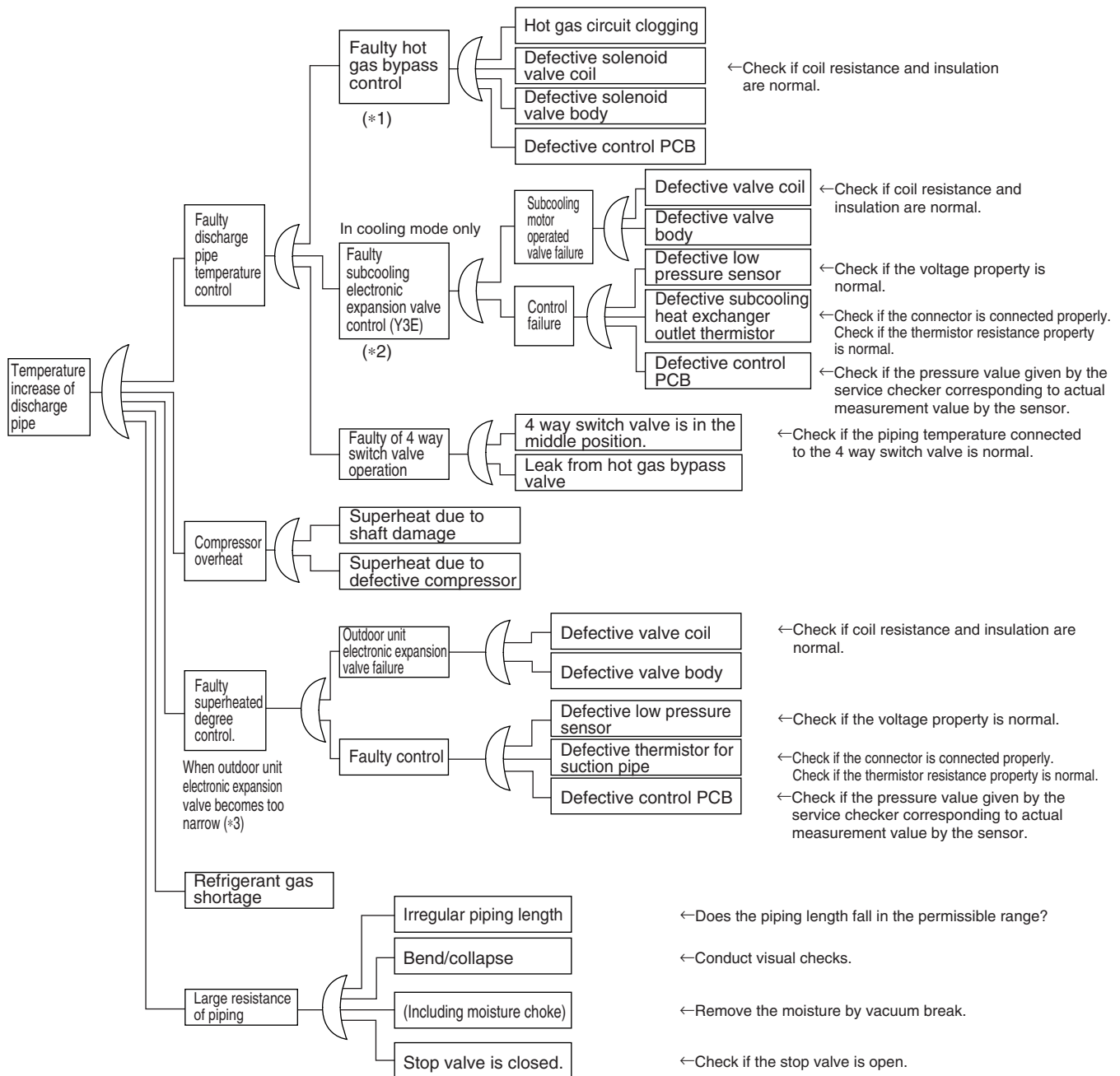
| Measurement point | Judgment       |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 - 4             | 1 MΩ or more   |
| 2 - 4             | 100 kΩ or more |
| 3 - 4             | 100 Ω or more  |
| 4 - 7             | 100 kΩ or more |



## 7.33.4 Check for the Factors of Overheat Operation

### Check No. 33

Identify the defective points referring to the failure factor analysis (FTA) as follows.



\*1: Refer to Low Pressure Protection Control for hot gas bypass control.

\*2: Refer to Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control for subcooling electronic expansion valve control.

\*3: Superheating temperature control in heating operation is conducted by outdoor unit electronic expansion valve. (Refer to Electronic Expansion Valve PI Control).

\*4: Judgment criteria of superheat operation:

(1) Suction gas superheated degree: 10°C (18°F) and over.

(2) Discharge gas superheated degree: 45°C (81°F) and over, except for immediately after starting and drooping control, etc..

(Use the above stated values as a guide. Depending on the other conditions, the unit may be normal despite the values within the above scope.)

(R19140)



## 8. Thermistor Resistance / Temperature Characteristics

Table 1

| Applicable thermistor             | Indoor unit<br>R2T: Indoor heat exchanger 1 (liquid pipe)<br>R3T: Indoor heat exchanger 2<br><b>Outdoor unit</b><br>R3T: Suction pipe 1<br>R4T: Outdoor heat exchanger<br>R5T: Suction pipe 2<br>R6T: Subcooling heat exchanger gas pipe<br>R7T: Liquid pipe | Indoor unit<br>R1T: Room temperature | Outdoor unit<br>R1T: Outdoor temperature | BP unit<br>DGA - DGC: Gas pipe<br>DLA - DLC: Liquid pipe |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Thermistor temperature<br>°C (°F) | Resistance (kΩ)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Resistance (kΩ)                      | Resistance (kΩ)                          | Resistance (kΩ)                                          |
| −30 (−22)                         | 363.8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 361.7719                             | 362.4862                                 | 363.3                                                    |
| −25 (−13)                         | 266.8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 265.4704                             | 265.9943                                 | 266.6                                                    |
| −20 (−4)                          | 197.8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 196.9198                             | 197.3083                                 | 197.8                                                    |
| −15 (5)                           | 148.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 147.5687                             | 147.8597                                 | 148.2                                                    |
| −10 (14)                          | 112.0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 111.6578                             | 111.8780                                 | 112.1                                                    |
| −5 (23)                           | 85.52                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 85.2610                              | 85.4291                                  | 85.60                                                    |
| 0 (32)                            | 65.84                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 65.6705                              | 65.8000                                  | 65.93                                                    |
| 5 (41)                            | 51.05                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 50.9947                              | 51.0954                                  | 51.14                                                    |
| 10 (50)                           | 39.91                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 39.9149                              | 39.9938                                  | 39.99                                                    |
| 15 (59)                           | 31.44                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 31.4796                              | 31.5417                                  | 31.52                                                    |
| 20 (68)                           | 24.95                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 25.0060                              | 25.0554                                  | 25.02                                                    |
| 25 (77)                           | 19.94                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 20.0000                              | 20.0395                                  | 20.00                                                    |
| 30 (86)                           | 16.04                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 16.1008                              | 16.1326                                  | 16.10                                                    |
| 35 (95)                           | 12.99                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 13.0426                              | 13.0683                                  | 13.04                                                    |
| 40 (104)                          | 10.58                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 10.6281                              | 10.6490                                  | 10.62                                                    |
| 45 (113)                          | 8.669                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 8.7097                               | 8.7269                                   | 8.707                                                    |
| 50 (122)                          | 7.143                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 7.1764                               | 7.1905                                   | 7.176                                                    |
| 55 (131)                          | 5.918                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 5.9407                               | 5.9524                                   | 5.947                                                    |
| 60 (140)                          | 4.928                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4.9439                               | 4.9536                                   | 4.953                                                    |
| 65 (149)                          | 4.123                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 4.1352                               | 4.1434                                   | 4.146                                                    |
| 70 (158)                          | 3.467                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 3.4757                               | 3.4825                                   | 3.487                                                    |
| 75 (167)                          | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 2.9349                               | 2.9407                                   | 2.946                                                    |
| 80 (176)                          | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 2.4894                               | 2.4943                                   | 2.499                                                    |
| 85 (185)                          | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 2.1205                               | 2.1247                                   | 2.130                                                    |
| 90 (194)                          | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1.8138                               | 1.8173                                   | 1.822                                                    |
| 95 (203)                          | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1.5575                               | 1.5605                                   | 1.565                                                    |
| 100 (212)                         | 1.339                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 1.3425                               | 1.3451                                   | 1.349                                                    |
| 105 (221)                         | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1.1614                               | 1.1636                                   | 1.167                                                    |
| Drawing No.                       | 3SA48002, 3SA48004<br>(AD94A045)                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 3SA48001<br>(AD87A001)               | 3PA50504<br>(AD87A001)                   | 3P150006<br>(ED97B002, ED01B012)                         |

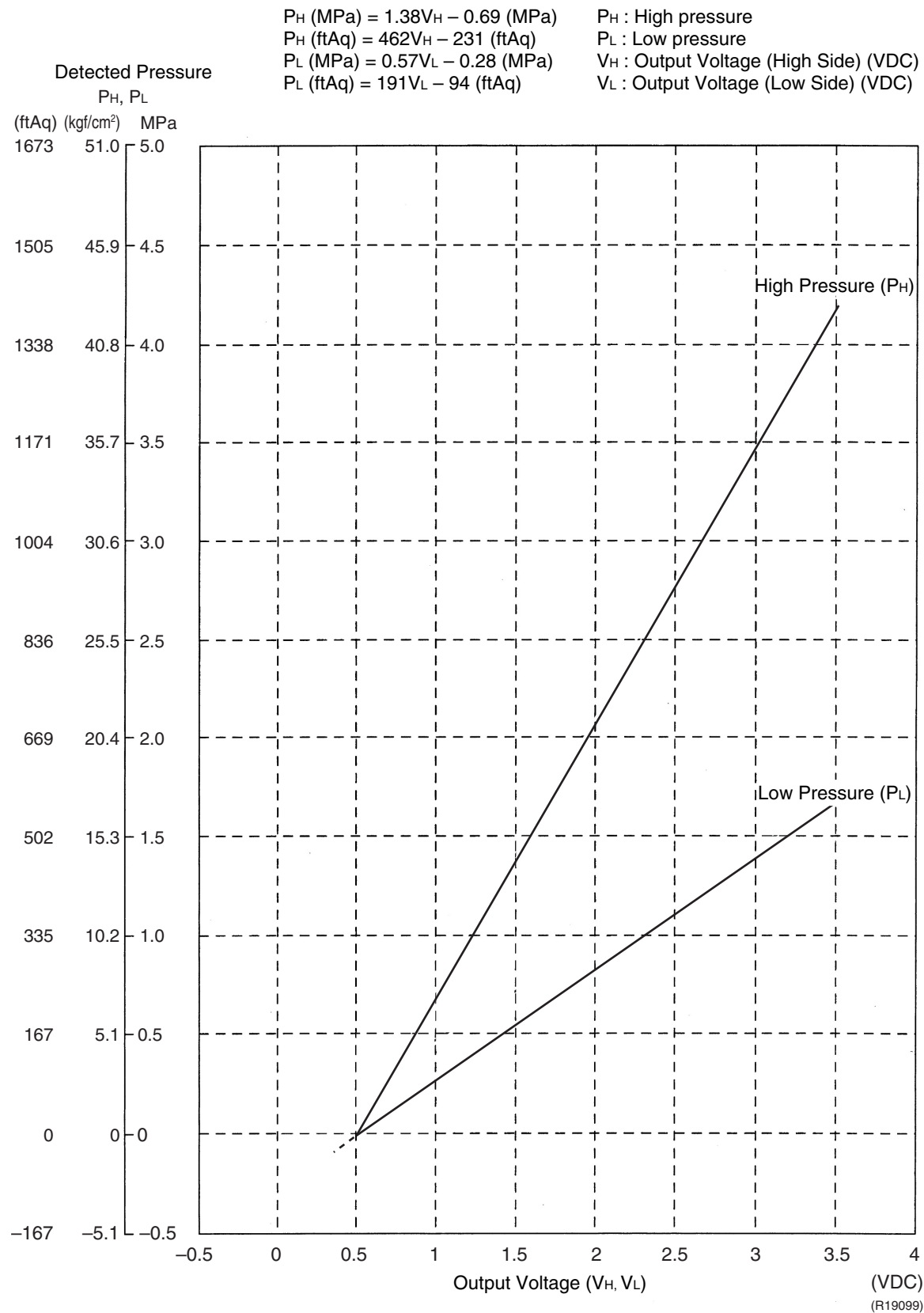


Table 2

| Applicable thermistor             | Outdoor unit<br>FINTH: Radiation fin | Outdoor unit<br>R2T: Discharge pipe |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Thermistor temperature<br>°C (°F) | Resistance (kΩ)                      | Resistance (kΩ)                     |
| −30 (−22)                         | 354.1                                | 4759                                |
| −25 (−13)                         | 259.7                                | 3454                                |
| −20 (−4)                          | 192.6                                | 2534                                |
| −15 (5)                           | 144.2                                | 1877                                |
| −10 (14)                          | 109.1                                | 1404                                |
| −5 (23)                           | 83.25                                | 1059                                |
| 0 (32)                            | 64.10                                | 806.5                               |
| 5 (41)                            | 49.70                                | 618.9                               |
| 10 (50)                           | 38.85                                | 478.8                               |
| 15 (59)                           | 30.61                                | 373.1                               |
| 20 (68)                           | 24.29                                | 292.9                               |
| 25 (77)                           | 19.41                                | 231.4                               |
| 30 (86)                           | 15.61                                | 184.1                               |
| 35 (95)                           | 12.64                                | 147.4                               |
| 40 (104)                          | 10.30                                | 118.7                               |
| 45 (113)                          | 8.439                                | 96.13                               |
| 50 (122)                          | 6.954                                | 78.29                               |
| 55 (131)                          | 5.761                                | 64.10                               |
| 60 (140)                          | 4.797                                | 52.76                               |
| 65 (149)                          | 4.014                                | 43.63                               |
| 70 (158)                          | 3.375                                | 36.26                               |
| 75 (167)                          | 2.851                                | 30.27                               |
| 80 (176)                          | 2.418                                | 25.38                               |
| 85 (185)                          | 2.060                                | 21.37                               |
| 90 (194)                          | 1.762                                | 18.06                               |
| 95 (203)                          | 1.513                                | 15.33                               |
| 100 (212)                         | 1.304                                | 13.06                               |
| 105 (221)                         | 1.128                                | 11.17                               |
| 110 (230)                         | 0.9790                               | 9.585                               |
| 115 (239)                         | 0.8527                               | 8.254                               |
| 120 (248)                         | 0.7450                               | 7.131                               |
| 125 (257)                         | 0.6530                               | 6.181                               |
| 130 (266)                         | 0.5741                               | 5.374                               |
| 135 (275)                         | —                                    | 4.686                               |
| 140 (284)                         | —                                    | 4.098                               |
| 145 (293)                         | —                                    | 3.594                               |
| 150 (302)                         | —                                    | 3.161                               |
| Drawing No.                       | 3PA61998<br>(AD92A057)               | 3SA48009<br>(AD970175)              |



# 9. Pressure Sensor





## 10.Method of Replacing Inverter's Power Transistors Modules

Check the power semiconductors mounted on the main PCB (A1P) with a multiple tester.

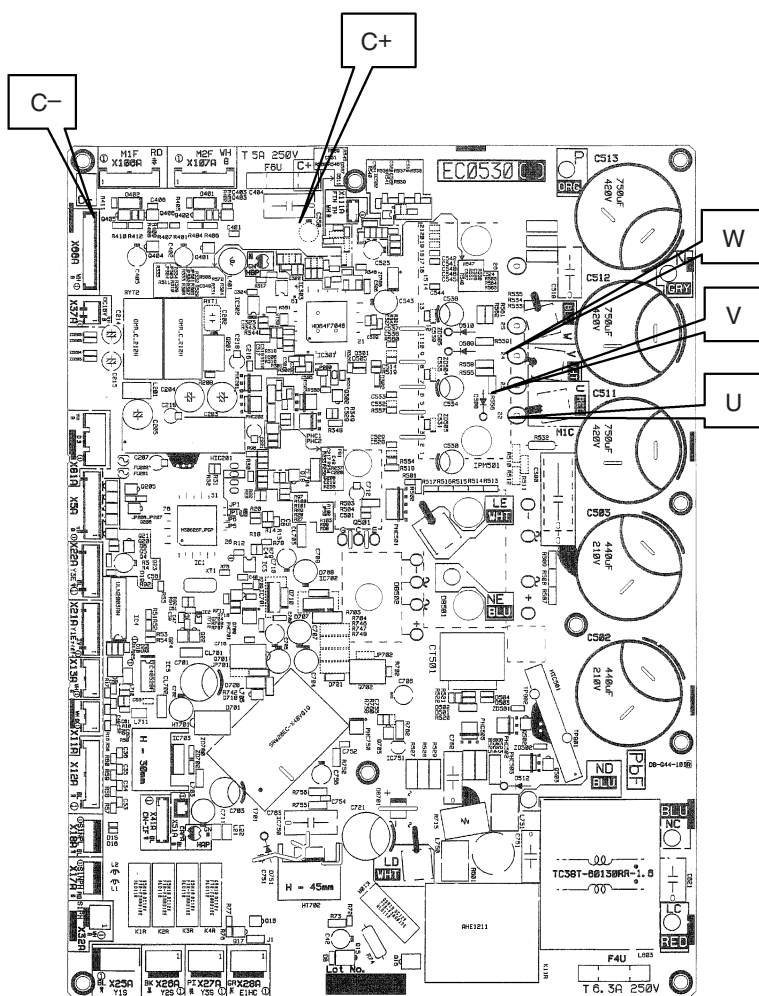
**<Items to be prepared>**

- **Multiple tester :** Prepare the digital type of multiple tester with diode check function.

### <Preparation>

- Turn OFF the power supply. Then, after a lapse of 10 minutes or more, make measurement of resistance.
- To make measurement, disconnect all connectors and terminals.

## Main PCB (A1P)



(R13060)



**Power module checking**

When using the digital type of multiple tester, make measurement in diode check mode.

| Tester terminal |    | Criterion                                     | Remark                                                                           |
|-----------------|----|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| +               | —  |                                               |                                                                                  |
| C+              | U  | Not less than 0.3 V<br>(including $\infty$ )* | It may take time to<br>determine the voltage due<br>to capacitor charge or else. |
|                 | V  |                                               |                                                                                  |
|                 | W  |                                               |                                                                                  |
| U               | C— | Not less than 0.3 V<br>(including $\infty$ )* |                                                                                  |
| V               |    |                                               |                                                                                  |
| W               |    |                                               |                                                                                  |
| U               | C+ | 0.3 ~ 0.7 V<br>(including $\infty$ )*         |                                                                                  |
| V               |    |                                               |                                                                                  |
| W               |    |                                               |                                                                                  |
| C—              | U  | 0.3 ~ 0.7 V<br>(including $\infty$ )*         |                                                                                  |
|                 | V  |                                               |                                                                                  |
|                 | W  |                                               |                                                                                  |

\*There needs to be none of each value variation.

The following abnormalities are also doubted besides the PCB abnormality.

- Defective compressor (ground fault, ground leakage)
- Defective fan motor (ground leakage)



# Part 9

# Appendix

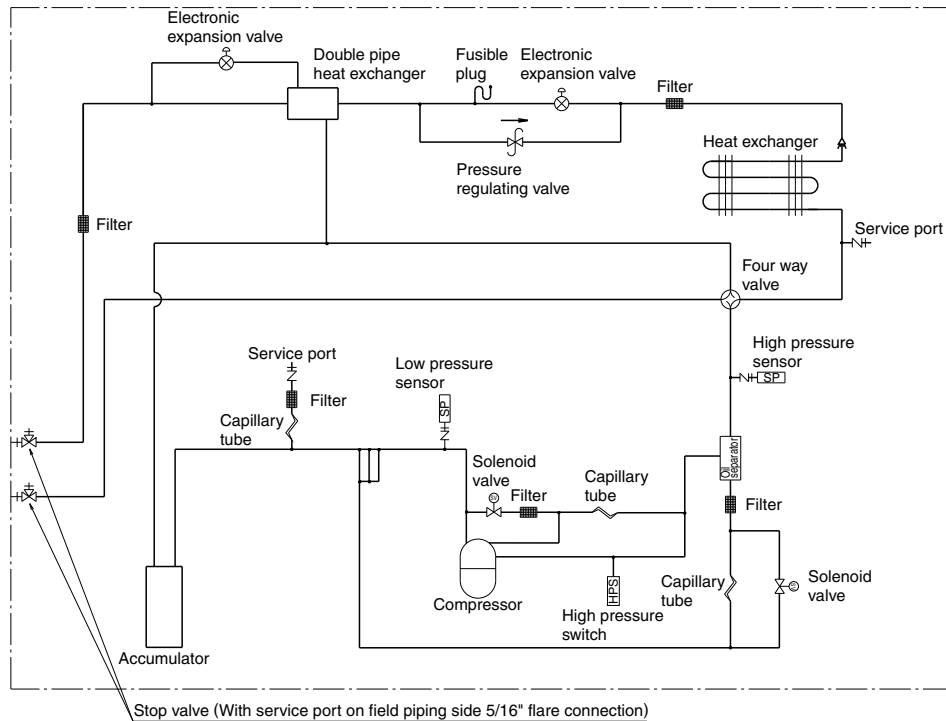
- 1. Piping Diagrams.....226
  - 1.1 Outdoor Unit ..... 226
  - 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 227
  - 1.3 Indoor Unit..... 228
- 2. Wiring Diagrams.....230
  - 2.1 Outdoor Unit ..... 230
  - 2.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit..... 231
  - 2.3 Indoor Unit..... 232
- 3. Removal Procedure (Booklet No.) .....235



# 1. Piping Diagrams

## 1.1 Outdoor Unit

RMXS48LVJU

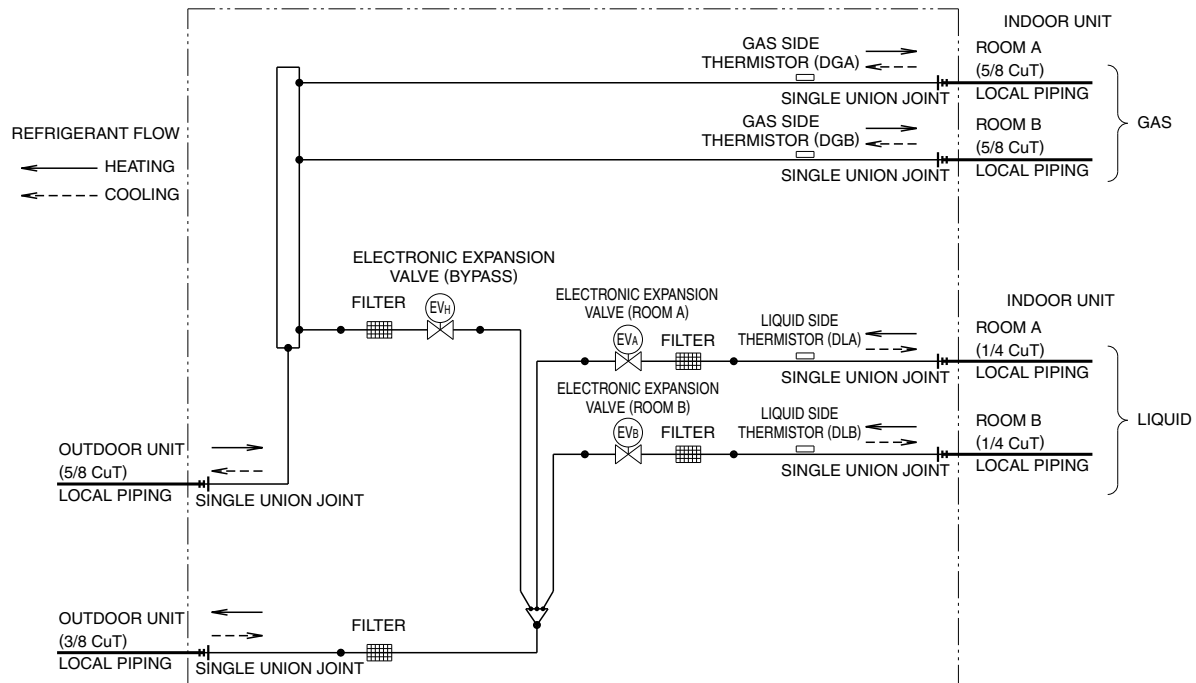


3D080741



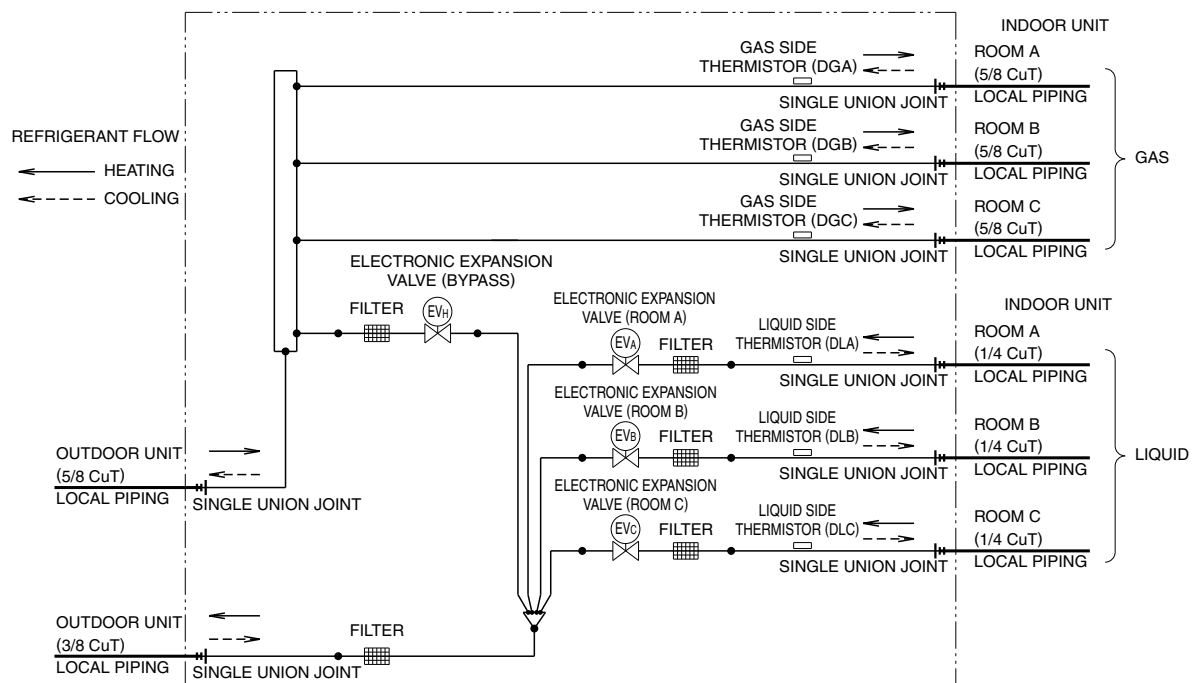
## 1.2 Branch Provider (BP) Unit

**BPMKS048A2U**



3D080438

**BPMKS049A3U**

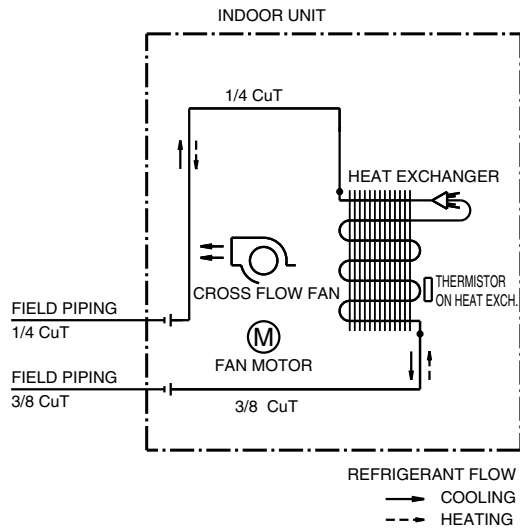


3D080437



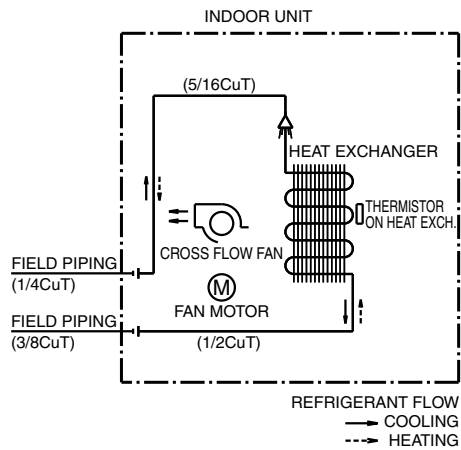
1.3 Indoor Unit

CTXS07LVJU



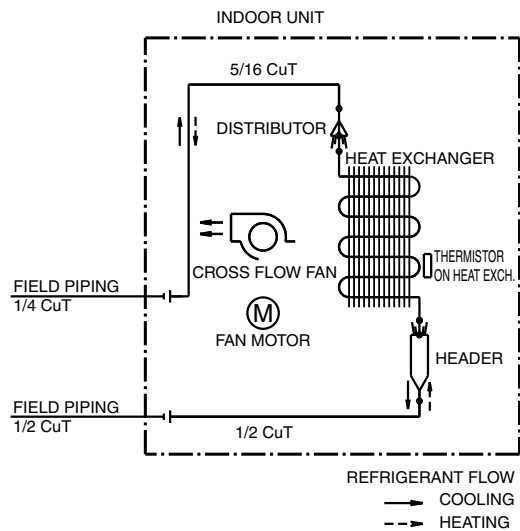
4D074606

CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU



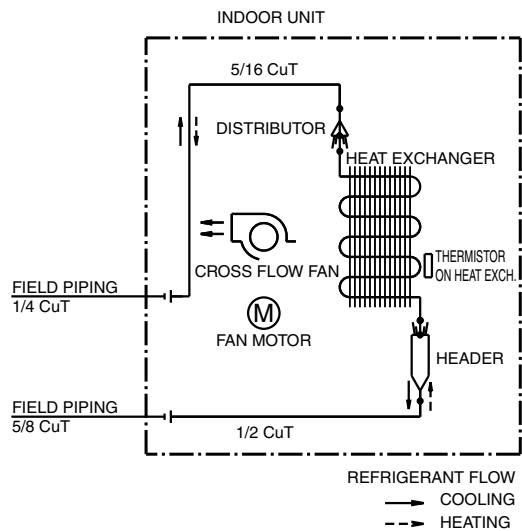
4D048251C

FTXS15/18LVJU



4D074609

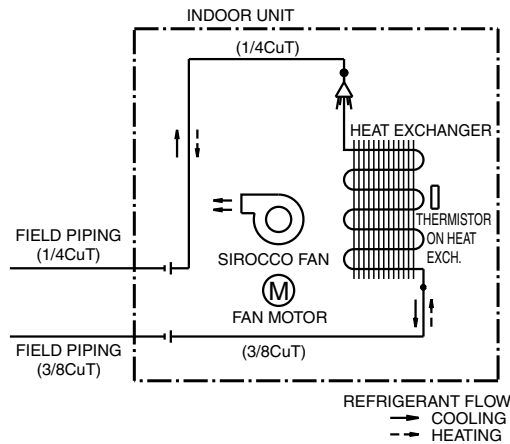
FTXS24LVJU



4D074608

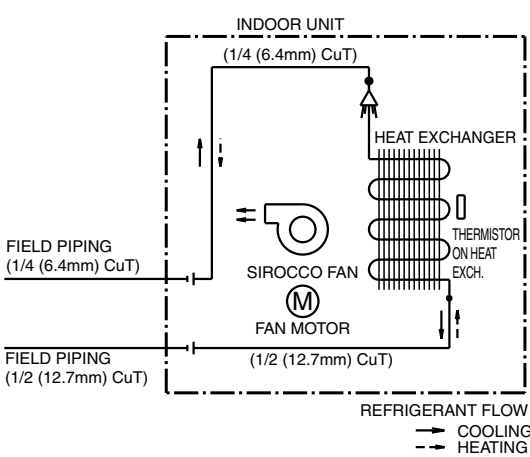


FDXS09/12LVJU



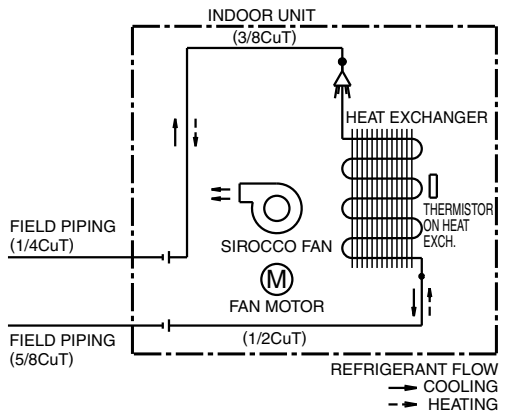
4D074621

CDXS15/18LVJU



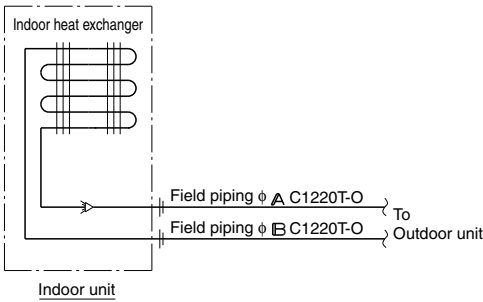
4D075271

CDXS24LVJU



4D080593

FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU



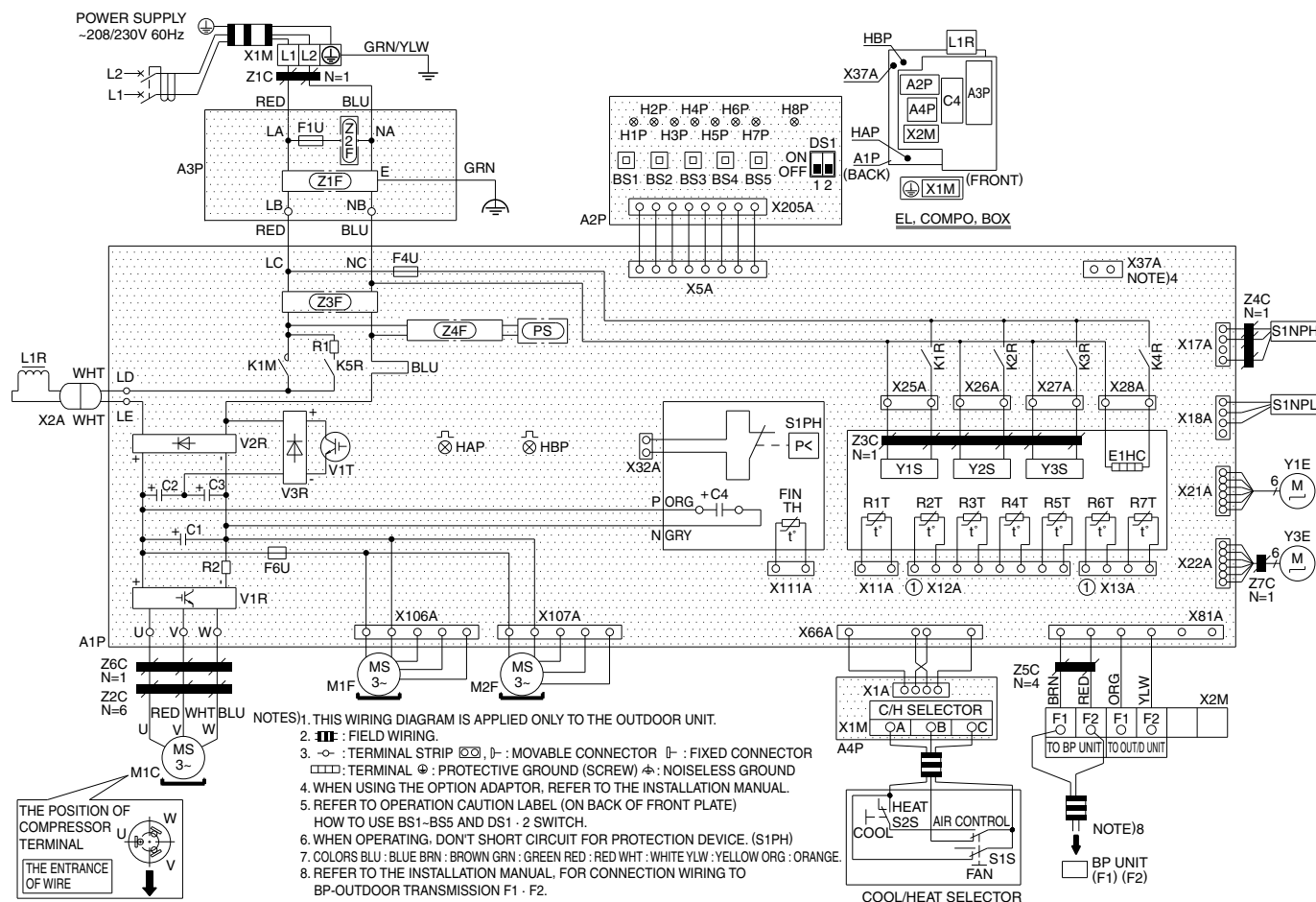
| MODEL          | A         | B          |
|----------------|-----------|------------|
| FFQ09 · 12LVJU | 1/4 (6.4) | 3/8 (9.5)  |
| FFQ15 · 18LVJU | 1/4 (6.4) | 1/2 (12.7) |

4D080624



## 2. Wiring Diagrams

## 2.1 Outdoor Unit

**RMXS48LVJU**

|          |                                                                                                            |        |                            |                             |                                       |                        |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
|          | L1-RED                                                                                                     | L2-BLU | K2R                        | MAGNETIC RELAY (Y2S)        | S1PH                                  | PRESSURE SWITCH (HIGH) |
| A1P      | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (MAIN)                                                                               | K3R    | MAGNETIC RELAY (Y3S)       | V1R                         | POWER MODULE                          |                        |
| A2P      | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (SERVICE)                                                                            | K4R    | MAGNETIC RELAY (E1HC)      | V2R, V3R                    | DIODE MODULE                          |                        |
| A3P      | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (NOISE FILTER)                                                                       | K5R    | MAGNETIC RELAY             | V1T                         | IGBT                                  |                        |
| A4P      | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (C/H SELECTOR)                                                                       | L1R    | REACTOR                    | X1M                         | TERMINAL STRIP (POWER SUPPLY)         |                        |
| BS1-5    | PUSH BUTTON SWITCH<br>(MODE, SET, RETURN, TEST, RESET)                                                     | M1C    | MOTOR (COMPRESSOR)         | X2M                         | TERMINAL STRIP (CONTROL)              |                        |
|          |                                                                                                            | M1F    | MOTOR (FAN) (UPPER)        | X1M                         | TERMINAL STRIP (C/H SELECTOR) (A4P)   |                        |
| C1-4     | CAPACITOR                                                                                                  | M2F    | MOTOR (FAN) (LOWER)        | Y1E                         | ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE (MAIN)     |                        |
| DS1      | DIP SWITCH                                                                                                 | PS     | POWER SUPPLY               | Y3E                         | ELECTRONIC EXPANSION VALVE (SUB COOL) |                        |
| E1HC     | CRANKCASE HEATER                                                                                           | R1     | RESISTOR                   | Y1S                         | SOLENOID VALVE (4 WAY VALVE)          |                        |
| F1U, F4U | FUSE (T 6.3A/250V)                                                                                         | R2     | RESISTOR                   | Y2S                         | SOLENOID VALVE (HOT GAS)              |                        |
| F6U      | FUSE (T 5.0A/250V)                                                                                         | R1T    | THERMISTOR (AIR)           | Y3S                         | SOLENOID VALVE (U/L CIRCUIT)          |                        |
| H1P-8P   | PILOT LAMP (SERVICE MONITOR-ORANGE)<br>H2P: PREPARE, TEST-----FLICKERING<br>MALFUNCTION DETECTION-LIGHT UP | R2T    | THERMISTOR (M1C DISCHARGE) | Z1C-7C                      | NOISE FILTER (FERRITE CORE)           |                        |
|          |                                                                                                            | R3T    | THERMISTOR (SUCTION1)      | Z1F-4F                      | NOISE FILTER                          |                        |
|          |                                                                                                            | R4T    | THERMISTOR (COIL)          |                             | C/H SELECTOR                          |                        |
| HAP      | OPERATION PILOT LAMP<br>(SERVICE MONITOR-GREEN) (A1P)                                                      | R5T    | THERMISTOR (SUCTION2)      | S1S                         | SELECTOR SWITCH (FAN/COOL - HEAT)     |                        |
|          |                                                                                                            | R6T    | THERMISTOR (SUBCOOL)       | S2S                         | SELECTOR SWITCH (COOL/HEAT)           |                        |
| HBP      | INV. PILOT LAMP<br>(SERVICE MONITOR-GREEN) (A1P)                                                           | R7T    | THERMISTOR (LIQUID)        | CONNECTOR OF OPTION ADAPTOR |                                       |                        |
|          |                                                                                                            | FINTH  | THERMISTOR (FIN)           | X37A                        | CONNECTOR                             |                        |
| K1M      | MAGNETIC CONTACTOR                                                                                         | S1NPH  | PRESSURE SENSOR (HIGH)     | NOTE)4                      | (OPTION ADAPTOR POWER SUPPLY)         |                        |
| K1R      | MAGNETIC RELAY (Y1S)                                                                                       | S1NPL  | PRESSURE SENSOR (LOW)      |                             |                                       |                        |



**BPMKS048A2U**

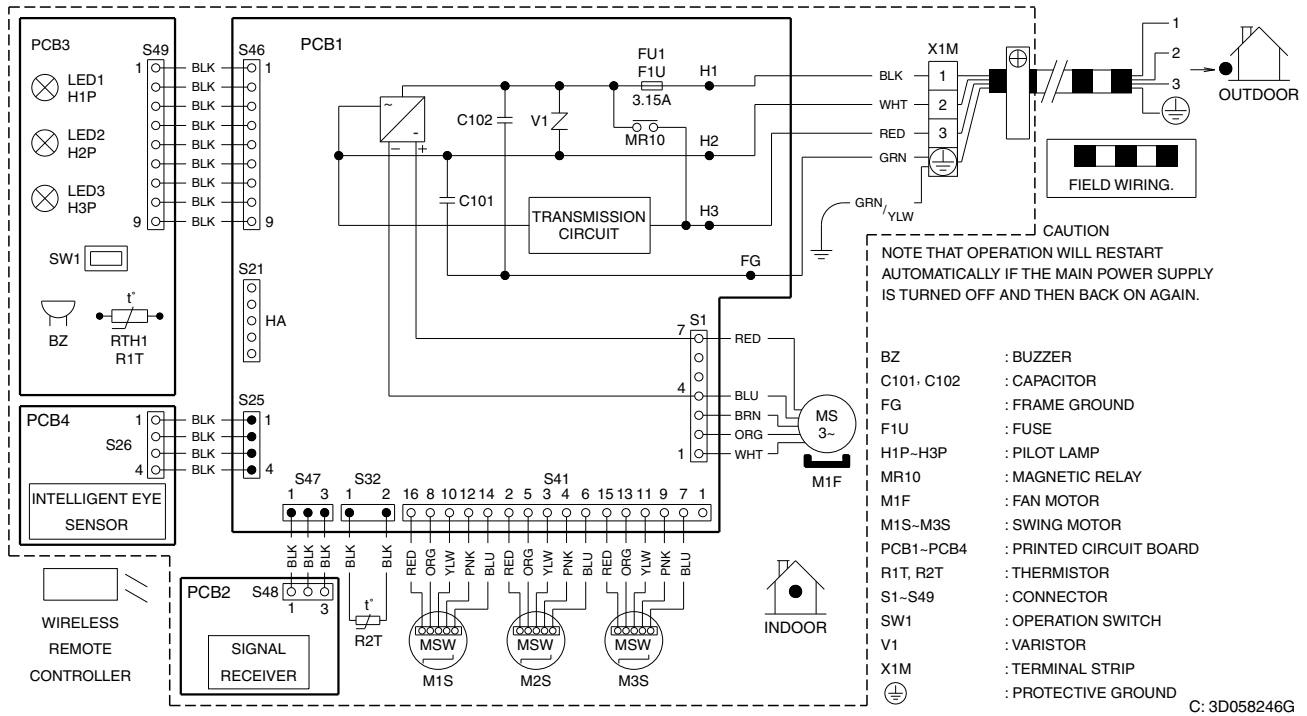


## 3D079640

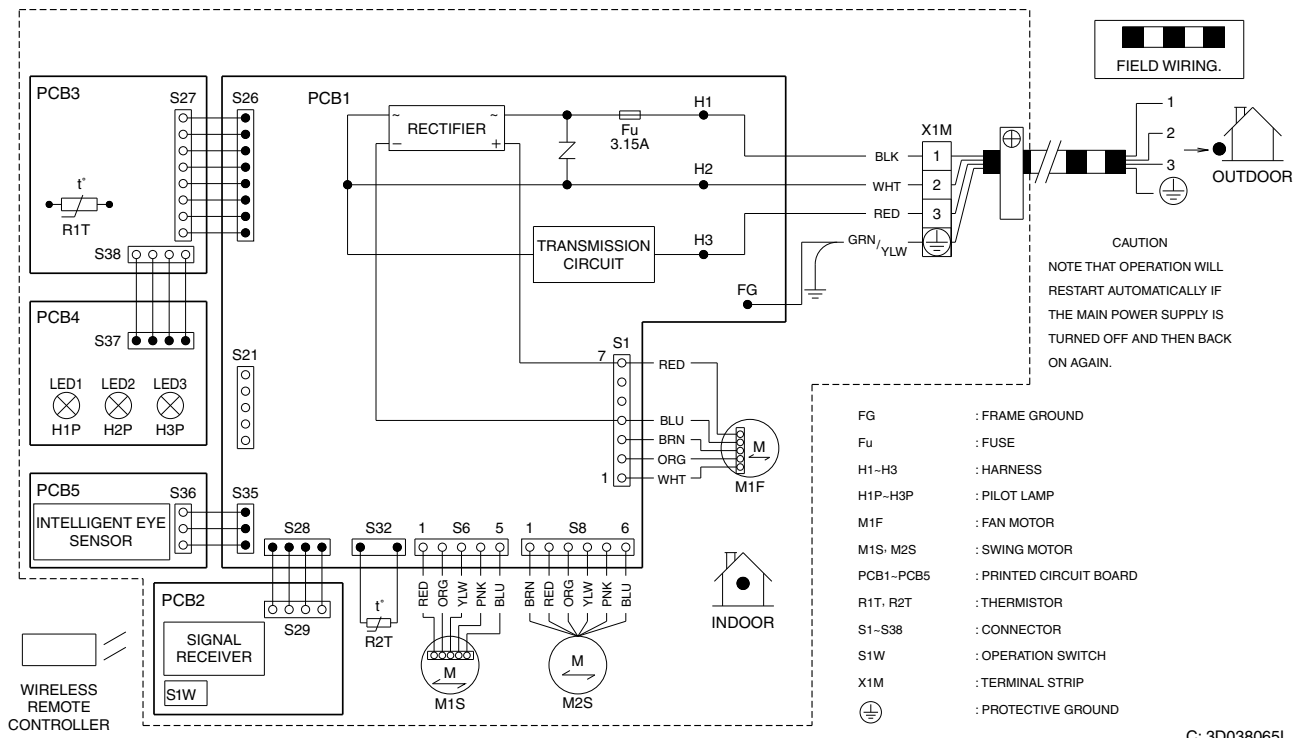


## 2.3 Indoor Unit

### CTXS07LVJU

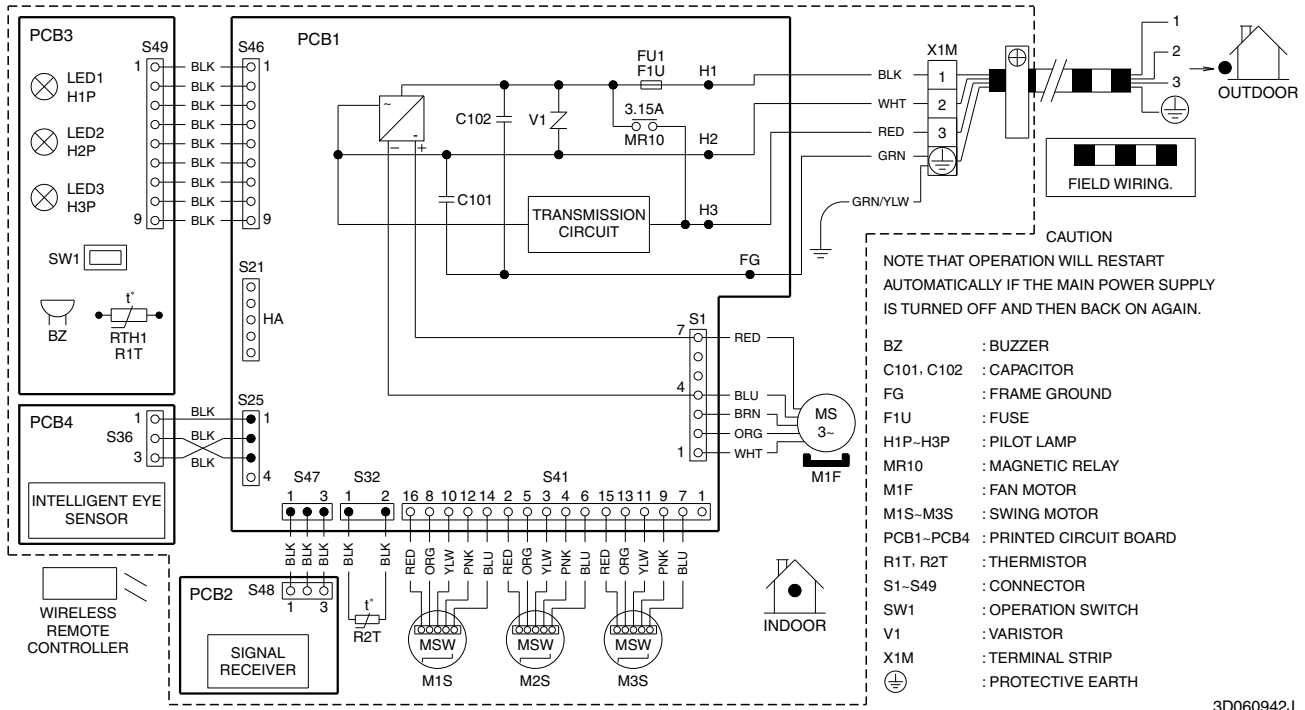


### CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU

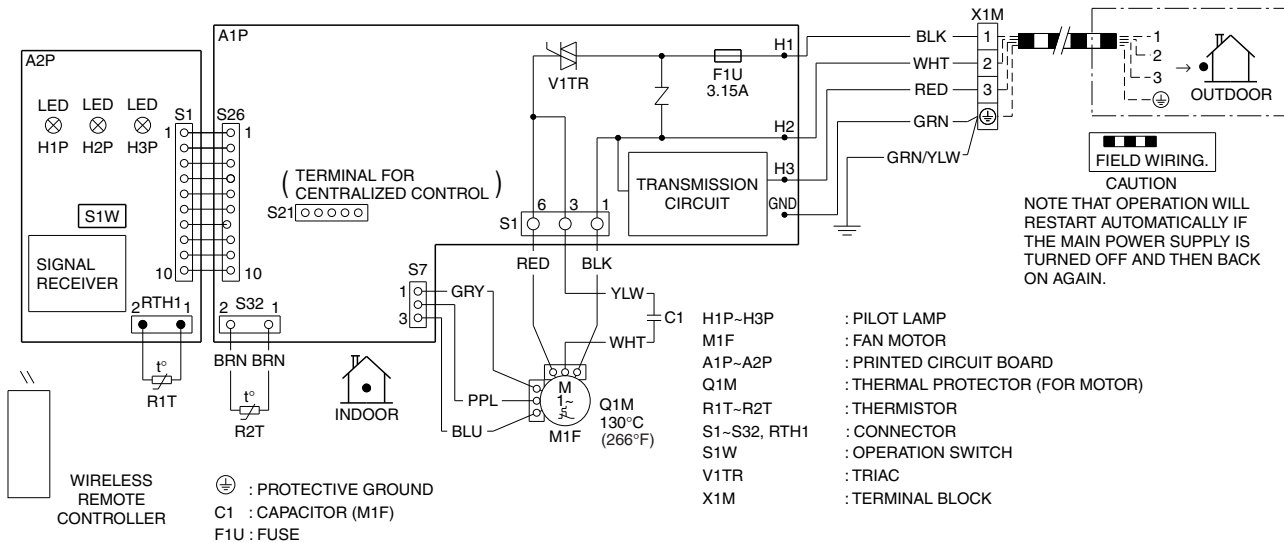




## FTXS15/18/24LVJU



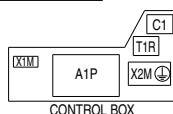
## FDXS09/12LVJU, CDXS15/18/24LVJU





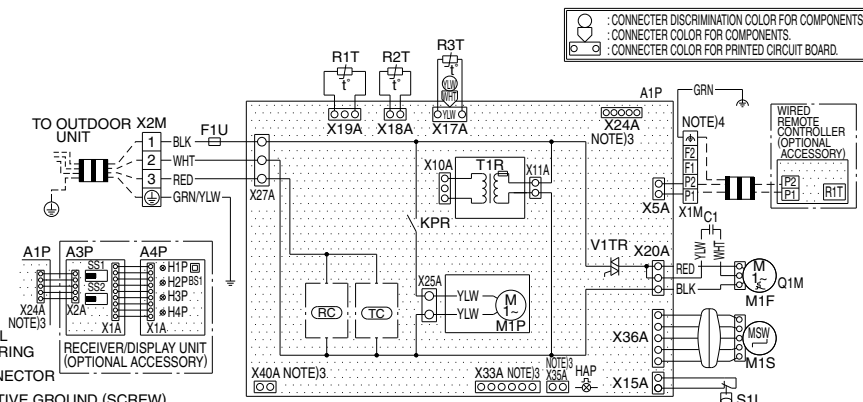
## FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU

|                                                 |                                    |      |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|----------------------------------------|
| A1P                                             | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD              | H1P  | PILOT LAMP (ON-RED)                    |
| C1                                              | CAPACITOR (M1P)                    | H2P  | PILOT LAMP (TIMER-GREEN)               |
| F1U                                             | FUSE (F. 5A. 250V)                 | H3P  | PILOT LAMP (FILTER SIGN-RED)           |
| HAP                                             | PILOT LAMP (SERVICE MONITOR GREEN) | H4P  | PILOT LAMP (DEFROST-ORANGE)            |
| KPR                                             | MAGNETIC RELAY (M1P)               | SS1  | SELECTOR SWITCH (MAIN/SUB)             |
| M1P                                             | FAN MOTOR                          | SS2  | SELECTOR SWITCH (WIRELESS ADDRESS SET) |
| M1P                                             | DRAIN PUMP MOTOR                   | X24A | CONNECTOR FOR OPTIONAL PARTS           |
| M1S                                             | SWING LOUVER MOTOR                 | X24A | CONNECTOR (WIRELESS REMOTE CONTROLLER) |
| Q1M                                             | THERMAL PROTECTOR FOR MOTOR        | X33A | CONNECTOR (ADAPTOR FOR WIRING)         |
| R1T                                             | THERMISTOR (AIR)                   | X35A | CONNECTOR (GROUP CONTROL ADAPTOR)      |
| R2T                                             | THERMISTOR (COIL-1)                | X40A | CONNECTOR (ON/OFF INPUT FROM OUTSIDE)  |
| R3T                                             | THERMISTOR (COIL-2)                |      |                                        |
| S1L                                             | FLOAT SWITCH                       |      |                                        |
| T1R                                             | TRANSFORMER (208-230V/25V)         |      |                                        |
| V1TR                                            | TRIAC                              |      |                                        |
| X1M                                             | TERMINAL BLOCK                     |      |                                        |
| X2M                                             | TERMINAL BLOCK                     |      |                                        |
| (RC)                                            | SIGNAL RECEIVER CIRCUIT            |      |                                        |
| (TC)                                            | SIGNAL TRANSMISSION CIRCUIT        |      |                                        |
| WIRED REMOTE CONTROLLER (RECEIVER/DISPLAY UNIT) |                                    |      |                                        |
| A3P                                             | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD              |      |                                        |
| A4P                                             | PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD              |      |                                        |
| BS1                                             | PUSH BUTTON SWITCH (ON/OFF)        |      |                                        |



- NOTES)
1. □ : TERMINAL  
= : FIELD WIRING  
□ : CONNECTOR  
⊕ : PROTECTIVE GROUND (SCREW)  
⚡ : NOISELESS GROUND

2. IN CASE USING CENTRAL REMOTE CONTROLLER, CONNECT IT TO THE UNIT IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE ATTACHED INSTALLATION MANUAL.
3. X24A, X33A, X35A AND X40A ARE CONNECTED WHEN THE OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES ARE USED.
4. GROUND THE SHIELD OF THE REMOTE CONTROLLER CORD TO THE INDOOR UNIT (IN CASE OF USING SHIELD WIRE).
5. SYMBOLS SHOW AS FOLLOWS: RED: RED BLK: BLACK WHT: WHITE YLW: YELLOW GRN: GREEN BLU: BLUE







C: 3D080351A



### 3. Removal Procedure (Booklet No.)

Refer to the following booklets for removal procedure.

|                                                         |                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| *RMSX48LVJU, BPMKS048A2U, BPMKS049A3U                   |  Refer to <b>Si181296_A</b> . |
| *CTXS07LVJU                                             |  Refer to <b>Si041252_B</b> . |
| *CTXS07JVJU, CTXS09/12HVJU                              |  Refer to <b>Si041253_A</b> . |
| *FTXS15/18/24LVJU                                       |  Refer to <b>Si041351</b> .   |
| *FDXS09/12LVJU,<br>CDXS15/18/24LVJU, FFQ09/12/15/18LVJU | N/A                                                                                                              |







Warning



Daikin Industries, Ltd.'s products are manufactured for export to numerous countries throughout the world. Daikin Industries, Ltd. does not have control over which products are exported to and used in a particular country. Prior to purchase, please therefore confirm with your local authorized importer, distributor and/or retailer whether this product conforms to the applicable standards, and is suitable for use, in the region where the product will be used. This statement does not purport to exclude, restrict or modify the application of any local legislation.

Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install this product. Do not try to install the product yourself. Improper installation can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire, or explosion.

Use only those parts and accessories supplied or specified by Daikin. Ask a qualified installer or contractor to install those parts and accessories. Use of unauthorized parts and accessories or improper installation of parts and accessories can result in water or refrigerant leakage, electrical shock, fire, or explosion.

Read the User's Manual carefully before using this product. The User's Manual provides important safety instructions and warnings. Be sure to follow these instructions and warnings.

If you have any inquiries, please contact your local importer, distributor, or retailer.



**Intertek**

**CAUTIONS ON PRODUCT CORROSION:**

1. Air conditioners should not be installed in areas where corrosive gases, such as acid gas or alkaline gas, are produced.
2. If the outdoor unit is to be installed close to the seashore, direct exposure to the sea breeze should be avoided. If you need to install the outdoor unit close to the seashore, contact your local distributor.

Daikin, and its design, VRV, REFNET, and Quaternity, Daikin Altherma are trademarks of Daikin Industries, Limited.

Dealer



Our continuing commitment to quality products may mean a change in specifications without notice.  
© 2013 **DAIKIN NORTH AMERICA LLC** • Houston, TX • USA • [www.daikinac.com](http://www.daikinac.com)

©All rights reserved

• Specifications, designs and other content appearing in this brochure are current as of November 2013 but subject to change without notice.

SiUS181305E  
Printed in U.S.A. 11/2013 B AK